

VISIT...

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

Corso d'italiano

Handbook



LINGUAPHONE

Corso d'italiano

Handbook

Explanatory Notes
Vocabularies

Linguaphone Institute Limited
Carlton Plaza
111 Upper Richmond Road
London SW15 2TJ

© MCMLXXVII Linguaphone Institute Limited, London

All rights reserved. No part of this publication, or related recorded material, may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of Linguaphone Institute Limited.

This impression 1997

LSN GITENH10

Printed and bound in Great Britain by
Biddles Ltd, Guildford and King's Lynn

Course approved by: Mirko Tavoni, Dott. Lettere Moderne, Scuola Normale Superiore e Università di Pisa; Prof. Filologia Italiana, Università della Calabria.

Written by: Paola Rosa-Clot, Dott.ssa Lingue e Letterature Straniere, Università di Torino.

Recorded by: Fabio Bartoli Annamaria Grecas
Marisa Bubani Giovanna Mogil
Giancarlo Ciccone Augusto Zucconi
Gigi Gatti

Under the supervision of: Mirko Tavoni

Illustrated by: Elena Samperi

This handbook written by: Jennifer Goodwin, B.A.

CD reference numbers

These numbers, in the left-hand margins of the textbook and spoken exercises book, are for users of the compact disc version only. Others should ignore them.

CD	Compact Disc
CD 1 etc	Compact Disc number 1, etc
1, 2, 3 etc	Track point where that part of the recording begins
«	Listen only
««	Listen and repeat
«»	Listen and respond

Note: The prices and situations in this course, current at the time of writing, may not necessarily reflect present-day values and conditions.

The Linguaphone Academic Advisory Committee

Chairman :

Professor the Lord Quirk, D.Litt., FBA, Chairman of the British Library Advisory Committee; Past President of the British Academy; sometime Vice-Chancellor, University of London; formerly Quain Professor of English, University College London; Hon. Fil. Dr (Lund, Uppsala); Hon. Doct. d'Univ. (Paris, Liège, Nijmegen); Hon. LL D (Reading); Hon. D.Litt. (Leicester, Salford, Newcastle, Durham, Glasgow, Bar Ilan, Southern California, Brunel); Hon. D.U. (Bath, Essex, Open); Hon. D.Sc. (Aston); Fellow of the Royal Belgian Academy of Sciences, of the Royal Swedish Academy, of the Finnish Academy of Sciences, and of the Academia Europaea.

Members :

Sir John Daniel, MA, D ès Sc, ATh, Hon. D.Litt, Hon. LL D, Hon. D.Sc., Hon. D.Ed., Officier, Ordre des Palmes Académiques, Vice-Chancellor, The Open University, Trustee: Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching, Member: Council of Foundation, The International Baccalaureate.

Professor Ian T M Gow, MA, Ph.D., Dip Jap, FIL(Hon.), Director, School of East Asian Studies, University of Sheffield; Member: Office of Science and Technology's Asia Pacific Advisory Group, UK-Japan 2000 Education Committee; formerly Director, Scottish Centre for Japanese Studies and Deputy Principal, University of Stirling.

Professor Nigel B R Reeves, OBE, MA, D.Phil., FIL, FRSA, CIE, Goethe Medaille of the Goethe Institute, Professor of German and Head of the Department of Modern Languages, Aston University, Member of Board, Institute of Germanic Studies, University of London, Vice President, Institute of Linguists.

Professor Albert Sonnenfeld, AM, Ph.D. (Princeton), Officier, Ordre des Palmes Académiques, Officier, Ordre des Arts et des Lettres, Marion Frances Chevalier Professor of French and Comparative Literature, Chairman, Department of French and Italian, University of Southern California; formerly Professor of French and Chairman, Department of Romance Languages and Literatures, Princeton University.

Sir William Taylor, CBE, Ph.D., Hon. D.Sc (Aston), Hon. Litt.D.(Leeds), Hon. DCL (Kent), Hon. D. Univ (Open), Hon. D.Litt. (Loughborough), Hon. LL D (Hull), Hon. D.Ed. (Kingston, Oxford Brookes, Plymouth, UWE), Chairman of Convocation of the University of London, Visiting Professor of Education in the University of Oxford, sometime Vice-Chancellor of the University of Hull, formerly Director of the University of London Institute of Education.

Professor J C Wells, MA (Cantab), Ph.D. (London), Professor of Phonetics in the University of London.

Christine Wilding, BA, Secretary General of the Association for Language Learning, Chevalier, Ordre des Palmes Académiques.

Contents

Introduction	1
Explanatory notes	2
New words in Sounds section	272
Appendix	273
1 Articles	273
2 Plural of nouns	273
3 Pronouns	274
4 Adjectives	274
5 Adverbs	276
6 Notes on tenses	276
7 The subjunctive	277
8 Avere and essere	278
9 The model regular verbs	278
10 Irregular verbs	289
11 Numbers	290
Italian vocabulary	292

Introduction

Part one

- 1 What's this? It's a pencil
- 2 What's this? It's a passport.
- 3 What's this? It's a bottle.
- 4 What's this? It's a plane.

- 5 What's this? It's a mountain.
- 6 What's this? It's a bill.
- 7 What's this? It's a bag.
- 8 What's this? It's a fish.

Part two

- 1 Have you got a bottle?
- 2 Have you got a car?
- 3 Have you got a packet of cigarettes?
- 4 Have you got a shower?
- 5 Have you got a briefcase?
- 6 Have you got a newspaper?
- 7 Have you got a flat tyre?
- 8 Have you got a flower?
- 9 Are these bags?
- 10 Are these roses?
- 11 Are these palaces?
- 12 Are these beach shoes?
- 13 Are these glasses?
- 14 Is this small change?
- 15 Are these telephone tokens?
- 16 Is this spaghetti?

Yes, I've got a bottle.
Yes, I've got a car.
Yes, I've got a packet of cigarettes.
Yes, I've got a shower.
Yes, I've got a briefcase.
Yes, I've got a newspaper.
Yes, I've got a flat tyre.
Yes, I've got a flower.
Yes, they're bags.
Yes, they're roses.
Yes, they're palaces.
Yes, they're beach shoes.
Yes, they're glasses.
Yes, it's small change.
Yes, they're telephone tokens.
Yes, it's spaghetti.

Part three

Paolo Tosi Hello.
I'm Mr. Tosi.
I'm Italian.
I'm a lawyer and I work in Holland.
I'm travelling by plane with my wife.
The plane is arriving at Milan.

Maria Teresa I'm Maria Teresa, Paolo's wife.
I'm Italian, from Rome.
I'm going back to Italy with my husband.
We've got two children: a daughter in Turin and a son in Rome.

Giovanna I'm the daughter.
My name is Giovanna.
I'm twenty-three.
I'm studying at the university.
I'm engaged to Marino.
I'm spending these holidays with my family.
We're visiting Italy.

Alberto Hi! I'm Alberto, Giovanna's brother.
I'm nineteen.
I live in Rome with my grandmother.
Dad and mum are arriving in Italy.
We're spending the holidays in the mountains and by the sea.
I like skiing and swimming.

Marino Landucci My name is Marino Landucci.
I'm Giovanna's fiancé.
I'm an architect.
I live and work in Florence.
I like my work a lot.
I want to marry Giovanna this year.

Lezione uno

Lesson one

In aereo

On the plane

Part one: What happens

Paolo Tosi, an Italian lawyer living in Holland, is returning to Italy with his wife Maria Teresa to spend the summer holidays with their two children Giovanna and Alberto. Giovanna, who is twenty-three, is a student at Turin University whilst Alberto, who is nineteen, lives with his grandmother in Rome where he is just finishing school. The plane carrying Paolo and Maria Teresa lands at Linate airport in Milan, where they expect to be met by Emilia, Paolo's sister who lives in Milan, and Giovanna.

Part one: New words

il the (masc.)
 l' the (masc. and fem.)
 la the (fem.)
 una a (fem.)
 l'aereo plane
 l'aeroporto airport
 anni (l'anno) years
 l'avvocato lawyer
 il figlio son
 il liceo senior secondary school

la figlia daughter
 la lezione lesson
 la moglie wife
 la nonna grandmother
 la parte part
 la sorella sister
 l'università university
 la vacanza holiday

bella (bello) beautiful, lovely
 mio, mia my
 prima (primo) first
 principale main

abita (abitare) he/she lives
 atterra (atterrare) is landing
 è (essere) she is

frequenta (frequentare) he/she goes
 to, frequents
 ha (avere) he/she has
 ho (avere) I have
 lavoro (lavorare) I work
 mi chiamo (chiamare) I call myself,
 my name is
 passare to spend
 ritorniamo (ritornare) we're returning
 si chiama (chiamare) she calls herself,
 her name is
 siamo (essere) we are
 sono (essere) I am

io I
 noi we

a at, in
 con with
 di from, of
 fra within
 in in, to

e and
 per in order to

ecco here we are
 finalmente at last, finally
 fra poco soon

ora now
 poco little, a short while

cinquantacinque fifty-five
 diciannove nineteen
 quarantasette forty-seven
 uno one
 ventitre twenty-three

Milano Milan
 Roma Rome
 Torino Turin

Italia Italy
 Olanda Holland

Part one: Notes

- 1 **Io mi chiamo Paolo Tosi.** *My name is Paolo Tosi.*
- a **Io: I** The word for *I* is not always used in Italian.
- b **mi chiamo:** (literally) *I call myself* This is the normal way of giving one's name in Italian. Notice the pronunciation of the letters **chi** in **chiamo**; they sound something like the English word *key*.
- 2 **Ho cinquantacinque anni.** *I'm fifty-five years old* (lit. *I have fifty-five years*).
- a It is not usually necessary to put in the word for *I* in Italian. The word **ho** by itself means *I have*. This is the normal way of expressing age in Italian. Notice too that the **h** of **ho**: *I have* is not pronounced. **H** is never pronounced in Italian.
- b In the New words list, **ho** is followed by **avere**, meaning *to have*; this is the infinitive form from which **ho** is derived.
- c Notice and imitate the pronunciation of **cinquantacinque**. In Italian, the letters **ci** are pronounced like the *chea* sound in the English word *cheap*. **Cinquanta** means *fifty* whilst **cinque** means *five*, giving **cinquantacinque**: *fifty-five*.
- d **Anni** is the plural form of **anno**: *year* (see New words list).
- 3 **Sono di Torino.** *I'm from Turin.*
Sono: *I am* Again, the word for *I* is not necessary. **Sono** alone means *I am*.
- 4 **Sono avvocato e lavoro in Olanda.** *I'm a lawyer and I work in Holland.*
- a Notice how in Italian you do not need to put in a word for *a* or *an* when you are merely stating your profession; thus **sono avvocato**: *I'm a lawyer*.
- b **lavoro:** *I work* Once again, there is no necessity to translate the English *I*.
- c **in Olanda:** *In Holland*
- 5 **Ora sono in aereo con mia moglie.** *Now I'm on a plane with my wife.*
- a **in aereo:** *on a plane* (lit. *in plane*) Listen carefully to the pronunciation of **aereo**.

- b Notice and imitate the pronunciation of the word **moglie**. The group of letters **gli** are pronounced something like the double *l* in the English word *million*.
- 6 **Mia moglie si chiama Maria Teresa.** *My wife's name is Maria Teresa.* (lit. *My wife calls herself Maria Teresa.*)
Compare **si chiama**: *she calls herself* with **mi chiamo**: *I call myself* (Note 1b).
- 7 **Ha quarantasette anni.** *She's forty-seven* (lit. *She has forty-seven years*).
- a **Ha:** (lit.) *She has* As with Note 6, compare **ha**: *she has* with **ho**: *I have* and you will see that a certain pattern begins to emerge, i.e. when Maria Teresa is doing the action, the verb ends with an **a**. Thus, **si chiama**: *she calls herself*; **ha**: *she has*. However, when *I* am doing the action, the verb has an **o** at the end; thus, **mi chiamo**: *I call myself*; **ho**: *I have*. Some further examples that we have seen so far are **sono**: *I am* and **lavoro**: *I work*, both ending in the characteristic **o** and thus showing that it is *I* who am doing the action and not someone else.
- b Notice too that the word for *she* can be left out of the sentence when it is clear from the context and the ending on the verb who is doing the action
- c **quarantasette**: *forty-seven* **Quaranta** means *forty* whilst **sette** means *seven*, giving **quarantasette**: *forty-seven*.
- 8 **Noi ritorniamo in Italia** *We're returning to Italy*
- a **Noi**: *We*
- b **Noi ritorniamo**: *We're returning*
- c **in Italia**: *to Italy* Notice that the Italians use **in** + the name of the country to express *in* or *to* a country. Compare **in Italia** with Note 4c where in **Olanda** means *in Holland*.
- 9 **per passare una bella vacanza con Giovanna e Alberto.** *in order to spend a lovely holiday with Giovanna and Alberto.*
- a **per**: *in order (to)*
- b **passare**: *to spend* This form is called the infinitive of the verb. Notice that there is no extra word for *to* in Italian; *to spend* is all contained in the one Italian word **passare**.
- c **una bella vacanza**: (lit.) *a beautiful holiday* In Italian, both objects and people are considered either masculine or feminine. The word **una** is usually used for *a* or *an* in front of s-called feminine nouns (e.g. **una vacanza**). Many feminine nouns end with the letter **a**, the word **moglie**: *wife* (Note 5b) being an exception to this rule, whilst most masculine nouns end with the letter **o**, e.g. **avvocato**: *lawyer* and **aereo**: *plane*.
- d Notice the pronunciation of the name **Giovanna**. The letter group **gi** is pronounced very similarly to the English letter *j*.
- 10 **Giovanna, mia figlia, ha ventitre anni.** *Giovanna, my daughter, is twenty-three* (lit. *has twenty-three years*).

- a Notice the pronunciation of the word **figlia** and compare it with the word **moglie** in Note 5b. **Figlia** is another obviously feminine noun and ends typically with an **a**.
- b **ventitre**: *twenty-three* **Venti** means *twenty* whilst **tre** means *three*, giving **ventitre**: *twenty-three*.
- 11 **Frequenta l'Università di Torino.** *She goes to Turin University* (lit. *She frequents the University of Turin*).
- a **frequenta**: *she goes to* This verb is used here in the sense of *going to* or *attending* a place of education. Again from the ending on the verb, the **a**, we know that it is Giovanna who is doing the action and not *I* (Note 7a).
- b The word **l'** means *the* when the Italian word following it begins with a vowel, i.e. either **a**, **e**, **i**, **o** or **u**.
- c **l'Università**: *the University* Notice the accent above the letter **à**; this has the effect in speech of indicating that the **à** ending of the word is to be stressed. Be careful too to pronounce the Italian **u** correctly in this word.
- d **di**: *of* This is the most common translation of **di** in English; it can however sometimes be translated otherwise, as in Note 3.
- 12 **Alberto, mio figlio, ha diciannove anni.** *Alberto, my son, is nineteen* (lit. *has nineteen years*).
- a Compare the words **mio figlio**: *my son* with the words **mia figlia**: *my daughter*. The **o** ending on the word **figlio** is again typical of masculine nouns, whilst the **a** ending on the noun **figlia** is characteristic of most feminine nouns (Notes 9c and 10a).
- b Notice too how Italian has two words for *my*, both **mio** and **mia**. If you are referring to a so-called masculine object or person (e.g. **figlio**), the word for *my* must be translated by **mio**, the masculine form of *my*; hence **mio figlio**: *my son*. If, however, you refer to a so-called feminine object or person you must use the feminine form of *my*: **mia**, e.g. **mia figlia**: *my daughter*.
- 13 **Frequenta il liceo a Roma e abita con la nonna.** *He goes to senior secondary school in Rome and lives with his* (lit. *the*) *grandmother*.
- a **Frequenta**: *He goes to* Here it is clear that the verb **frequenta** refers to Alberto, so as with *I* and *she*, we can see that there is normally no need to translate the word for *he* in Italian; the context and the verb ending are sufficient to tell us who is doing the action. Notice how, as in English, the verb ending for when *he* is doing the action is the same as for when *she* is doing the action.
- b **il**: *the* This is the word for *the* that goes in front of nouns classed as masculine provided they do not begin with a vowel (N11b).
- c **liceo**: *senior secondary school* An Italian **liceo** or *senior secondary*

school prepares school-children between the ages of fourteen and nineteen for a University education. On passing an examination which they take on completion of the **liceo** course at about the age of nineteen, the students have the automatic right to study at University. Notice the pronunciation of **liceo**. Just as **ci** has a special pronunciation (Note 2b) so too does the letter group **ce**; it is similar to the sound at the beginning of the English word *chase*.

- d **a Roma**: *in or at Rome* Just as the word **in** is used in Italian to indicate *in, at or to* a country (Notes 4c and 8c), so the word **a** is used to indicate *in, at or to* a town.
- e **la**: *the* This is the word for *the* which is used in front of so-called feminine nouns that do not begin with a vowel.
- 14 **Fra poco siamo a Linate, l'aeroporto principale di Milano.** *Soon we shall be* (lit. *Soon we are*) *at Linate, the main airport of Milan.*
- a **fra poco**: *soon* (lit. *within little, i.e. a short while*)
- b **siamo**: *we shall be* (lit. *we are*) Compare **siamo**: *we are* with **ritorniamo**: *we are returning* (Note 8b) and you will see that both verbs end with the letter group **iamo**. This is the typical ending for verbs in Italian when *we* are doing the action. Because of this, just as with *I, he and she*, it is possible to omit the word for *we* as the verb ending is sufficient to show us that it refers to *we*.
Although **siamo** literally means *we are*, it is translated here by *we shall be*. In English we can often use the present tense to indicate something we intend to do in the future, e.g. *I am visiting Italy next year*. The same happens in Italian; you may often use a simple present tense to indicate something you will do or intend to do in the future. In this way, **siamo** can be translated by both *we are* and *we shall be*.
- c **l'aeroporto principale**: *the main airport* Describing words, or adjectives, very often follow the word they are describing in Italian.
- d Notice again that **di** here means *of* (Note 11d).
- 15 **Mia sorella Emilia abita a Milano.** *My sister Emilia lives in Milan.*
- a **sorella**: *sister* Notice again the typically feminine ending of **a** on this noun.
- b **a Milano**: *in Milan* Compare this usage with **a Roma** in Note 13d.
- 16 **Ora è a Linate con Giovanna.** *Now she is at Linate with Giovanna.*
è: *she is* You will notice in the vocabulary that **è, siamo** and **sono** are all followed by the word **essere** in brackets.
Just as **passare** means *to spend* (Note 9b), so **essere** means *to be*; the forms **è**: *she is*, **siamo**: *we are* and **sono**: *I am* all derive from the infinitive **essere**: *to be*.
- 17 **Ecco, finalmente l'aereo atterra.** *Here we are, at last the plane is landing.*
- a **Ecco**: *Here we are* **Ecco** literally means *here is* or *here are*.

- b **atterra**: *is landing* Notice at this point how the **a** ending on the verb can indicate that either *he, she* or *it* is doing the action. So far we have seen **ha** used for both *she has* (Notes 7a and 10) and for *he has* (Note 12); similarly, **frequenta** is used for both *she goes to* (Note 11a) and *he goes to* (Note 13). Here in the phrase **l'aereo atterra**: *the plane is landing*, **atterra** refers to the plane, i.e. an inanimate object, *it*.

18 **Siamo in Italia.** *We're in Italy.*

Part two: What happens

In volo *In flight*

The stewardess asks Paolo if he would like a newspaper. She gives him a Dutch newspaper but he asks for an Italian one. He enquires at which airport they will be landing and what the weather is like there.

La carta di sbarco *The landing-card*

An Italian girl studying in Holland asks Maria Teresa if she may borrow her pen to fill in the landing-card.

Che cosa portiamo? *What shall we get?*

Paolo and Maria Teresa buy cigarettes, some perfume for Giovanna and a bottle of whisky for Emilia.

Ritorno in Italia *Returning to Italy*

Paolo talks to an engineer who has been travelling abroad on business.

Part two: New words

un a (masc.)

affari (l'affare) business, affairs

il cognome surname

il giornale newspaper

l'indirizzo address

l'ingegnere engineer

l'italiano Italian

liquori (il liquore) spirits

il momento moment

il nome Christian name

il pacchetto packet

il passeggero passenger

profumi (il profumo) perfumes

il ritorno return

signore (il signore) sir

il tempo weather

il volo flight

il whisky whisky

la bottiglia bottle

la carta card

la carta di sbarco landing-card

la città town, city

la cosa thing

l'estate summer

la hostess stewardess

la matita pencil

la montagna mountain

la penna pen

sigarette (la sigaretta) cigarettes

signora (la signora) madam

la signorina young lady, miss
la stampa press

americane (americano) American
buono good
italiano Italian
olandese Dutch
questo this one, this
scozzese Scotch, Scottish
seconda (secondo) second
vero true

atterriamo? (atterrare) are we landing?
compilare to fill in
desidera? (desiderare) do you want?
would you like?
disturbo? (disturbare) am I bothering?
am I disturbing?
(lei) è (essere) you are
è (essere) is, it/he is
fuma (fumare) she smokes
fumo (fumare) I smoke
ha (avere) you have
parla? (parlare) do you speak?
passa (passare) you're spending
portiamo? (portare) shall we get?
porto (portare) I'm getting
ritorna? (ritornare) are you returning?
studio (studiare) I'm studying
viaggia? (viaggiare) are you travelling?
lei you

per for

anche also, too
ma but
o or
se if

all'estero abroad
allora then
bene good
benissimo excellent, very good
certo certainly
in città in town
in montagna in the mountains
in vacanza on holiday
no no
non not
oggi today
per fortuna fortunately
qui here
sì yes
solo only
spesso often

che? which?
che cosa? what?
grazie thank you
per affari on business
per favore please
prego yes, please go ahead
scusi excuse me
va bene that's fine

Part two: Notes

In volo In flight

19 Hostess Stewardess

This is a word that has obviously been borrowed from English. When spoken, the h is not pronounced in Italian and the o is like the o in the English word *lot*.

20 Desidera un giornale? Would you like (lit. Do you want) a newspaper?

- a Desidera?: Do you want? In Italian it is very simple to form a question. In the written version you merely put a question mark after the verb, whilst in the spoken version, the questioning intonation of your voice will indicate that you are asking a question. Listen to how the hostess asks this question. Thus, **desidera** without a question mark means *you*

want, whilst **desidera?** (with a question mark and spoken with a rising intonation) means *do you want?*

- b You will notice that here there is no separate word to translate the English *you*. **Desidera?** alone means *Do you want?* and here it is obvious that the hostess means *you* and not some other person (i.e. *he, she or it*) because she is addressing Paolo Tosi face to face. From this we can see that according to context, the a ending on the verb can also indicate that *you* are doing the action.
- c **un:** a This is the word normally used to translate *a* or *an* in front of nouns classed as masculine.
- d **un giornale:** a newspaper So far, all the masculine words we have seen have ended with an o, e.g. **avvocato:** lawyer, **figlio:** son, **aereo:** plane. Notice this exception, a masculine noun ending with an e.
- 21 **Sì, grazie.** Yes, thank you.
Notice that **sì:** yes has an accent on the letter i. This does not influence the way it is pronounced, but helps to distinguish it from the **si** used in **si chiama** in Note 6.
- 22 **Ecco signore.** Here you are sir.
a **Ecco:** Here you are Compare this use of **ecco** with its use in Part 1 (Note 17a).
b Listen carefully to the pronunciation of the word **signore:** sir. The gn sound is similar to the **ni** sound in the English word *onion*.
- 23 **Ma questo è olandese. Non ha un giornale italiano?** But this one is Dutch. Haven't you got an Italian newspaper?
a **questo:** this or this one
b **è:** is Compare this with Note 16a where **è** means *she is*. From this you can see that **è** means *is* regardless of whether it is *she is* or *it is*.
c **olandese:** Dutch Notice that **olandese** begins with a small letter.
d **Non ha?:** Haven't you got? or Haven't you? We have already seen that **ha** means both *she has* (Note 7a) and *he has* (Note 12). Here it means *you have*. Although once again the word for *you* is not translated in Italian, it is here obviously *you* and not *he, she or it* because Paolo Tosi is speaking directly to the stewardess.
e **Non:** Not In English we put *not* after the verb to make it negative; in Italian you must put **non** in front of the verb. Thus: **ha:** you have; **non ha:** you have not; **non ha?:** haven't you?
f **un giornale italiano?:** an Italian newspaper? All adjectives of nationality begin with a small letter and follow the word they describe.
- 24 **Certo. Ecco "La Stampa".** Certainly. Here is "La Stampa".
a Notice again the useful word **ecco** (Notes 17a and 22).
b "La Stampa" is a well-known Italian daily newspaper published in Turin. Its name literally means *The Press*.

- 25 **Un momento, scusi signorina. A che aeroporto atterriamo?** *Just a moment, excuse me (lit. excuse me miss). At which airport are we landing?*
- a **scusi:** *excuse me* This is the normal polite way of attracting someone's attention, or of excusing oneself.
- b **signorina:** (lit.) *miss* When addressing the stewardess, an unmarried lady whose name he does not know, Paolo calls her **signorina**. In English, the word *miss* is both incorrect and unnecessary in these circumstances; in Italian, **signorina** is both correct and a mark of respect. Notice too how she in addressing him calls him **signore: sir** (Note 22).
- c **che aeroporto?:** *which airport?* Try to imitate the pronunciation of **che** which sounds similar to the beginning of the English word *chemist*.
- d **atterriamo?:** *are we landing?* Notice again the typical **iamo** ending on the verb, showing that it is *we* who are doing the action.
- 26 **A Linate, signore.** *At Linate, sir.*
- 27 **Il tempo è bello a Linate?** *Is the weather fine in Linate?* (lit. *The weather is beautiful in Linate?*)
Il tempo: *The weather* We have already seen how masculine nouns tend to end with the letter **o**, e.g. **avvocato**, **figlio**, **liceo** etc. In Italian, the word describing these nouns must take on a masculine or feminine form too according to whether the noun is masculine or feminine. The word **bello** is a good example. In Note 9c we saw **una bella vacanza:** *a lovely holiday*; the word **vacanza** is classed as a feminine noun and therefore the adjective had to take on its feminine form and end with an **a**. In this case however, the word **tempo** is classed as a masculine noun and **bello** must consequently take on its masculine form **bello**.
- 28 **Sì, oggi è bello, per fortuna.** *Yes, today it's fine, fortunately.*

La carta di sbarco *The landing card*

- 29 **Signorina** *Young lady*
 We have already seen how **signorina** means *miss* and is used when addressing an unmarried woman; here **signorina** means *young lady*. Because unmarried women are often young, **una signorina** has come to have the meaning not only of an unmarried woman, but also that of a young lady.
- 30 **Scusi signora, lei parla italiano?** *Excuse me madam, do you speak Italian?*
- a **signora:** *madam* We have already seen that to address an unmarried woman one should say **signorina** (Note 25b) and that to a man one should say **signore** (Note 22 and 26). **Signora**, however, is the correct way of addressing a married woman in a normal formal situation.
- b **lei:** *you* Here for the first time we see the Italian word for *you*: **lei**.

- As with **io:** *I* and **noi:** *we*, it is often necessary to use this word in normal conversation.
- c **lei parla?:** *do you speak?* (lit. *you speak?*) Notice once again how the **a** ending indicates the *you* form of the verb.
- 31 **Sì signorina, sono italiana.** *Yes, (lit. Yes miss) I'm Italian.*
 As it is a woman speaking, she must say **italiana** (ending with an **a**) when she is referring to herself, with the adjective **italiano** taking on its feminine form (Note 27).
- 32 **Ah bene. Ha una penna per favore?** *Ah good. Have you a pen please?*
- a **Ah bene:** *Ah good* (lit. *well*)
- b **una penna:** *a pen* This is another example of a feminine noun ending with the characteristic **a**. Notice how the feminine form of **a:** **una** is used before it (Note 9c).
- c **per favore:** *please* Learn and practise this phrase.
- 33 **No, ho solo una matita.** *No, I've only got* (lit. *I have only*) *a pencil.*
No: *No* Pay careful attention to the pronunciation of **no** in Italian; it is similar to the sound of the first two letters in the English word *not*.
- 34 **Va bene. È solo per compilare la carta di sbarco:** *That's fine. It's only to fill in the landing card:*
- a **Va bene:** *That's fine.* Learn and remember this useful phrase; Italians use it in a wide variety of contexts.
- b **È:** *It is* Notice that it is not necessary to translate the word for *it* in this case.
- c **per:** *in order to*
- d **compilare:** *to fill in* This again is what is known as the infinitive form of the verb (Note 9b). Compare **compilare:** *to fill in* with **passare:** *to spend*. Notice that both of them end with the final letters **re**, the typical infinitive ending, and that in both there is no extra word to translate the English *to*.
- e **la:** *the* As we saw in Note 13e, **la** is the word for *the* used in front of feminine nouns. Remember to use **il** in front of masculine nouns (Note 13b) when you want to say *the*, and **l'** in front of both masculine and feminine nouns when the word begins with a vowel (Note 11c).
- 35 **nome ... cognome ... indirizzo ... Che indirizzo?** *Christian name ... surname ... address ... Which address?*
 Notice the **e** ending on the words **nome:** *Christian name* and **cognome:** *surname*. Nouns ending with an **e** in Italian can be either masculine or feminine; there is no obvious way of telling which they are just by looking at them. For example, **nome**, **cognome** and **giornale** which we saw before are all masculine, whilst **moglie:** *wife* (Note 9c) is feminine. When you learn a new noun in Italian, always try to remember it with either **il**, **la** or **l'** in front of it. Thus, **il cognome:** *the surname*; **il giornale:** *the newspaper*; but **la moglie:** *the wife*; **la lezione:** *the lesson*.

- 36 **Lei non è italiana?** *You're not Italian?*
 a **Lei non è?:** *You're not?* Notice how when talking to someone, *lei è* means *you are*. From the various examples that we have seen so far, it is now clear that the *you* form of the verb is identical to the *he, she* and *it* forms. Compare *è* meaning not only *you are* but also *he is, she is, it is* according to context, with *ha* which in Note 23d means *you have* but which you know can also mean *she has* and *he has*.
 b **italiana:** *Italian* As Maria Teresa is referring to a woman, the word *Italian: italiano* must take on its feminine form (Note 31).
 37 **Sì, sono italiana, ma studio in Olanda.** *Yes, I am Italian, but I'm studying in Holland.*

Che cosa portiamo? *What shall we get?*

- 38 **Che cosa portiamo?** *What shall we get?*
 a **Che cosa?:** *What? (lit. What thing?)*
 b **portiamo?:** *shall we get? are we getting? (lit. are we carrying?)* Notice once again how the present tense in Italian is translated by the future tense in English (Note 14b).
 39 **Prego signore.** *Yes sir.*
Prego: *Yes* This is just one of the many meanings of **prego** that you will find in Italian. Here, by saying **prego**, the hostess is indicating her readiness to be of service to Paolo, a passenger. Similarly, **prego** is used by waiters in bars and restaurants to enquire what the customer would like, or by shop assistants when the client first enters the shop.
 40 **Per favore, un pacchetto di sigarette americane.** *A packet of American cigarettes please.*
 a **un pacchetto di:** *a packet of*
 b **sigarette:** *cigarettes* The singular form of **sigarette** is **sigaretta**. So-called feminine nouns ending in *a*, normally form their plural by replacing the *a* with an *e*, e.g.

una sigaretta: <i>a cigarette</i>	sigarette: <i>cigarettes</i>
una penna: <i>a pen</i>	penne: <i>pens</i>
una matita: <i>a pencil</i>	matite: <i>pencils</i>

 c **americane:** *American* The masculine singular form of **americane** is **americano**. Here, however, **americano** takes its feminine plural form to agree with the feminine plural noun **sigarette: cigarettes**. Notice that **americane** begins with a small letter (Notes 23c and f) and that this describing word or adjective, as it is called, is placed after **sigarette: cigarettes**, the word it is describing (Note 14c).
 41 **Ecco. Desidera anche profumi o liquori?** *Here you are. Do you want perfumes or spirits too?*

- 42 **Un momento. Maria Teresa, un profumo?** *Just a moment. Maria Teresa, do you want a perfume? (lit. A perfume?)*
 Notice the difference between **un profumo:** *a perfume* and **profumi:** *perfumes* in Note 41. So-called masculine words ending in *o* normally form their plural by replacing the *o* ending with an *i*, e.g.

un profumo: <i>a perfume</i>	profumi: <i>perfumes</i>
un anno: <i>a year</i>	anni: <i>years</i>
un aeroporto: <i>an airport</i>	aeroporti: <i>airports</i>

 43 **Sì, porto un profumo a Giovanna. Questo qui è buono.** *Yes, I'm getting a perfume for Giovanna. This is a good one (lit. This one here is good).*
 a **porto:** *I'm getting*
 b **a Giovanna:** *for Giovanna (lit. to Giovanna)*
 c **questo qui:** (lit.) *this one here* We have already seen how **questo** means *this one* in Note 23a.
 44 **E che cosa portiamo a Emilia? Sigarette?** *And what shall we get for Emilia? Cigarettes?*
E: *And* Notice again the difference in pronunciation and spelling between *è: is* and *e: and*. The first *è: is*, is pronounced rather like the *e* in the English word *let*, whilst the second *e: and* is pronounced more like the *a* in the English word *late*. For more pronunciation guidance, listen to the Sounds recording.
 45 **No, non fuma.** *No, she doesn't smoke.*
 a Notice again how to say *not* in Italian.

fuma: <i>she smokes</i>	non fuma: <i>she does not smoke</i>
--------------------------------	--

 b **non fuma:** *she doesn't smoke* As Paolo and Maria Teresa are talking about Emilia, **non fuma** obviously refers to her and not to anyone else. The infinitive form of **fuma: she smokes** is **fumare: to smoke**.
 46 **Una bottiglia di whisky allora.** *A bottle of whisky then.*
 47 **Benissimo, una bottiglia di whisky scozzese.** *Excellent, a bottle of Scotch whisky.*
 a **Benissimo:** *Excellent* We have already seen how **bene** means *good* (Note 32a). Here we have **bene** in another of its forms, **benissimo**, meaning *very good* or *excellent*. The **issimo** ending of **benissimo** can be translated by *very* in English.
 b **whisky scozzese:** *Scotch whisky* Notice again how in Italian, the adjective **scozzese** has a small letter and how it follows the word it is describing (Note 40c). Although **scozzese** here means *Scotch*, the drink, it is also the word used to translate *Scottish*.

Ritorno in Italia *Return to Italy*

- 48 **Disturbo se fumo?** *Does it bother you if I smoke? (lit. Am I disturbing if I smoke?)*

- a **Disturbo?:** *Am I bothering? Am I disturbing?*
 b **se:** *if*
 c **fumo:** *I smoke* This is another form of the verb **fumare:** *to smoke* (Note 45). So far you have seen **fumare:** *to smoke*; **fumo:** *I smoke*; **fuma:** *she smokes*.
- 49 **No, prego. Ma fra poco atterriamo.** *No, please go ahead. But soon we shall be landing.*
prego: *please go ahead* This is another example of the use of the word **prego**. Here the speaker is being polite and without saying too much wants to show his fellow passenger that he has no objection to him smoking. He therefore merely says **prego** to indicate that he does not mind the smoke.
- 50 **Ah sì, è vero. Lei viaggia per affari?** *Ah yes, it's true. Are you travelling on business (lit. for affairs)?*
 a **è:** *it is* Again, there is no need to put in a word for *it* in Italian (Note 34b).
 b **Lei viaggia?:** *Are you travelling?*
 c **per:** *for* When it is not followed by a verb as in Notes 9 and 34c, **per** normally means *for*.
 d **affari:** *business (lit. affairs)* The singular form of this word is **affare:** (lit.) *affair*. In note 35 we saw several nouns, both masculine and feminine that end with an *e*; all of these nouns, be they masculine or feminine, make their plural by replacing the final *e* with an *i*. Thus we have:
- | | |
|---|--|
| il liquore: <i>the spirit</i> | liquori: <i>spirits</i> (Note 41) |
| l'affare: (lit.) <i>the affair</i> | affari: (lit.) <i>affairs, business</i> |
| il giornale: <i>the newspaper</i> | giornali: <i>newspapers</i> |
| la lezione: <i>the lesson</i> | lezioni: <i>lessons</i> |
- 51 **Sì, sono ingegnere e lavoro spesso all'estero. E lei?** *Yes, I'm an engineer and I often work abroad. What about you? (lit. And you?)*
 a **sono ingegnere:** *I'm an engineer* Listen carefully to the pronunciation of **ingegnere**. Remember too how in Italian you do not need to put in a word for *a* or *an* when you are talking about a profession (Note 4a).
 b **lavoro:** *I work*
 c **spesso:** *often* Notice how in Italian you must say **lavoro spesso:** (lit.) *I work often*.
 d **all'estero:** *abroad* Learn this phrase as it stands without trying to translate it literally.
- 52 **Io sono avvocato e lavoro in Olanda. Ma ora sono in vacanza.** *I'm a lawyer and I work in Holland. But now I'm on holiday.*
Io sono: *I am* As you already know, it is not normally necessary to use the word for *I*: **io** in Italian. Here, however, Paolo uses **io** deliberately

for emphasis. Subject pronouns (i.e. words like *I, she, he, we*) are usually omitted in Italian and used only for emphasis or clarity.

- 53 **E ritorna in Italia?** *And are you returning to Italy?*
ritorna?: *are you returning?* Again, the two people are continuing their conversation so **ritorna?** must mean *are you returning?* and not someone else.
- 54 **Sì, ho mia figlia a Torino e mio figlio a Roma.** *Yes, I have my daughter in Turin and my son in Rome.*
- 55 **Passa l'estate in città allora.** *You're spending the summer in the city then.*
 a **Passa:** *You're spending*
 b **in città:** *in the city, in the town* Here **città:** *town, city* is a general term; the engineer is not referring to any one particular city or town but presumes that Paolo is spending the summer in town as opposed to by the sea, in the country or in the mountains. Pay careful attention to the pronunciation of **città** and notice how the final syllable is accentuated. Compare it with **università** (Note 11c).
- 56 **Una parte in città e una parte in montagna.** *Partly (lit. a part) in the city and partly in the mountains.*
in montagna: *in the mountains* (lit. *mountain*) Just as **in città** did not mean any one particular city or town, so **in montagna** is also a general term meaning *in the mountains*, without reference to any one specific mountain.

Part three: What happens

Un milanese e un torinese *A man from Milan and a man from Turin*
 Two men, one from Milan and the other from Turin, chat on the plane.

Un signore italiano e una signorina francese *An Italian man and a young French lady*

A French girl whose mother is from Rome is returning to Italy to study Italian art.

La signora Rusconi e la hostess *Mrs. Rusconi and the stewardess*
 Mrs. Rusconi chooses a small bottle of perfume.

Part three: New words

il milanese *man from Milan*
il signore *man, gentleman*

il torinese *man from Turin*

l'arte art
la madre mother
la signora Rusconi Mrs. Rusconi

francese French
piccola (piccolo) small
terza (terzo) third

abito (abitare) I live
fuma? (fumare) do you smoke?
studia? (studiare) are you studying?
studiare to study

bene well
molto very

Part three: Notes

Un milanese e un torinese *A man from Milan and a man from Turin*

57 Fuma una sigaretta? *Would you like a cigarette? (lit. Do you smoke a cigarette?)*

58 È di Milano lei? *Are you from Milan?*

lei: you Notice carefully this way of asking a question. The man from Milan begins by saying È?: *Are you?* but as this is the beginning of the conversation and in order to obviate any doubt in his companion's mind that he is in fact talking to him, he finally uses the word lei: you at the end of his question.

Un signore italiano e una signorina francese *An Italian man and a young French lady*

59 Un signore italiano e una signorina francese *An Italian man and a young French lady*

a un signore: a man In the same way that signorina can mean a young lady as well as miss, so too signore can mean not only sir but also a man or gentleman. Notice too that un signore belongs to the group of nouns that end with an e in the singular; the plural form of un signore: a man, a gentleman, is signori: men, gentlemen (Note 50d). The word italiano here describes the masculine noun signore and must therefore keep its masculine singular form which ends with an o.

b francese: French The word francese here refers to una signorina, an obviously feminine noun. According to what you have seen so far, you would imagine that francese might end in a to coincide with the typically feminine a ending on signorina. Francese, however, is an adjective that ends with an e in the singular; no matter who or what it refers to, it keeps the one form, francese, for both masculine and feminine nouns. Thus we have una signorina francese: a French girl and we could equally well say un signore francese: a French gentleman. Other adjectives that follow this pattern and that you have met so far are principale: main (Note 14c), olandese: Dutch (Note 23c) and scozzese: Scottish (Note 47b).

60 Ma lei parla italiano molto bene. *But you speak Italian very well.*

61 No, per studiare. *No, to study.*

per studiare: to study Compare this construction with per passare: to spend (Note 9) and per compilare: to fill in (Note 34d). Studiare: to study is another infinitive form of a verb and from these two examples you can see the following pattern emerge: per + the infinitive form of a verb = in order to do something, e.g. per studiare: in order to study; per compilare: in order to fill in; per passare: in order to spend.

62 Che cosa studia? *What are you studying?*

63 Studio l'arte italiana. *I'm studying Italian art.*

a Studio: I'm studying Italian has only one present tense form whilst English has two. Thus studio means both I study and I'm studying.

b L'arte: art is another feminine noun like moglie and lezione and ends with an e instead of the characteristic a.

c From the last two sentences of conversation, you can see a similar pattern emerge to that in Note 48c; studiare: to study; studio: I study; studia?: do you study? are you studying? From your knowledge of Lesson 1 so far, you could rightly assume that studia also means he studies and she studies and that we study would be studiamo. Another example of this type of pattern is the verb fumare: to smoke.

fumo: I smoke

(lei) fuma: you smoke

fuma: he smokes, she smokes

fumiamo: we smoke

This pattern is followed by many verbs in Italian and we can identify this verb type by the characteristic are ending on its infinitive form. From now on, we shall refer to this type of verb as an are verb. Other are verbs, parts of which you have seen so far are:

abitare: to live

parlare: to speak

ritornare: to return

compilare: to fill in

passare: to spend (time)

portare: to get, carry

frequentare: to go to, to attend

disturbare: to disturb, to bother

atterrare: to land

viaggiare: to travel

desiderare: to want

lavorare: to work

La signora Rusconi e la hostess *Mrs. Rusconi and the stewardess*

64 La signora Rusconi *Mrs. Rusconi*

a When speaking about a married woman in Italian, we must say la signora followed by her surname. Thus, la signora Rusconi: Mrs. Rusconi; una signora: a (married) lady or older woman; signora: madam (when you are addressing a married lady).

b Notice that the written abbreviation of signora is sig.ra.

65 Sì per favore. Che cos'ha? *Yes please. What have you got?*

Che cos'ha?: What have you got? You have already seen che cosa? meaning what? Here, however, it comes immediately before the word ha,

which is basically only the vowel sound of **a**. Because **che cosa ha?** would be quite difficult to pronounce because of the two **a** vowel sounds coming so close together, Italians in speech tend to run the two words **cosa** and **ha** together, producing **cos'ha?**

- 66 **Profumi francesi ... italiani ...** *French, Italian perfumes ...*
francesi: *French* This is the plural form of **francese** (Note 59b). All the adjectives that end with an **e** in the singular form their plural by replacing the final **e** with an **i**, e.g. **profumi francesi, signorine olandesi**.
- 67 **Questo qui va bene.** *This one here is fine.*
 Remember **va bene** (Note 34a).
- 68 **Non ha la bottiglia piccola?** *Haven't you got the small size? (lit. Haven't you got the small bottle?)*
 Notice that **piccolo:** *small* takes on its feminine form **piccola** to agree with the feminine noun **bottiglia**.

Lezione due

All'aeroporto di Milano

Lesson two

At Milan airport

Part one: What happens

Emilia Tosi, Paolo's sister, is waiting for Paolo and Maria Teresa to arrive at Linate airport. She is a P.E. teacher but today it is her day off. Giovanna is not with her as she has to take an exam at the University. The flight arrives right on time at four o'clock; Emilia thinks that if Paolo and Maria Teresa get through customs quickly, they can be in Milan by half past five.

Part one: New words

l'annuncio announcement
l'arrivo arrival
l'esame examination
il fratello brother
il mezzo half
l'orario time
il ritardo delay
il terminal terminal

la cognata sister-in-law

la dogana customs
la fretta hurry
la ginnastica P.E.
l'ora hour

divertente interesting, amusing
nessun no
noioso boring
perfetto perfect

aspettare to wait (for)
aspetto I am waiting (for)
insegno (insegnare) I teach
passano (passare) they go through

al at the
all' at the
da from
senza without

così and so, like that, thus
in arrivo arriving
in fretta quickly

in perfetto orario right on time
invece however, instead
purtroppo unfortunately

che ora è? what's the time?
le cinque e mezzo half past five
sono le quattro it's four o'clock

cinque five
due two
otto eight
quattro four
tre three

Part one: Notes

- 1 **All'aeroporto di Milano** *At Milan airport*
- a **All'aeroporto:** *At the airport* We have already seen in Lesson 1 that **a** means *at*, so here you would have expected to see **a** followed by **l'aeroporto**. To facilitate pronunciation and fluency, however, Italians join the two words **a** and **l'** together by doubling the **l**. Thus: **a + l'aeroporto = all'aeroporto**.
- b **l'aeroporto di Milano:** *Milan airport* Notice how in Italian we must say *the airport of Milan* and use the word **di:** *of*.
- 2 **Sono la sorella di Paolo.** *I'm Paolo's sister (lit. the sister of Paolo).* In English, we can say *I'm Paolo's sister* and use apostrophe **s**, but in Italian we must say *the sister of Paolo:* **la sorella di Paolo**.
- 3 **Aspetto mio fratello e mia cognata in arrivo da Amsterdam.** *I'm waiting for my brother and my sister-in-law arriving from Amsterdam.*
- a **Aspetto mio fratello:** *I am waiting for my brother* Notice that there is no word here to translate *for* in Italian. *I am waiting for* is all contained in the one word **aspetto**. The infinitive form of **aspetto** is **aspettare:** *to wait for*.
- b **in arrivo da:** *arriving from* (lit. *in arrival from*) The expression **in arrivo:** *arriving* is commonly used at railway stations and airports etc.
- c **da:** *from* This is the most usual word for *from* in Italian. In Lesson 1 we saw how to say you are *from* a town or city (Note 3); to say **di Torino, di Roma** etc., however, is a special expression and should be learnt as such.
- 4 **Purtroppo Giovanna non è qui.** *Unfortunately Giovanna is not here.*
- 5 **È a Torino per un esame all'Università.** *She's in Turin for an exam at the University.*
all'Università: *at the University* The same rule applies here as in Note 1a, i.e. **a + l'Università = all'Università**.

- 6 Io insegno ginnastica qui a Milano. *I teach P.E. here in Milan.*
 insegno: *I teach* The infinitive form of *insegno* is *insegnare*: *to teach*.
- 7 Ma oggi non ho lezione. Così aspetto senza fretta. *But today I haven't got any lessons. So I'm not in a hurry (lit. So I'm waiting without hurry).*
- a non ho lezione: (lit.) *I haven't lesson* This is an expression meaning *I haven't got classes or lessons* in general.
- b così: *so, thus, like this* This is an extremely useful word with many different applications in Italian; notice that you must stress the second part of *così* when you pronounce it.
- c aspetto: *I am waiting* We have already seen in Note 3a that *aspetto* means *I am waiting for* when it is followed by the name of a person. Here, however, it simply means *I am waiting*.
- 8 Nessun annuncio di ritardo. *No announcement of delay.*
- 9 È noioso aspettare al terminal. *It is boring waiting (lit. to wait) at the terminal.*
 al terminal: *at the terminal* The word for *terminal* is *il terminal*. To say *at the terminal* therefore, you would expect to say *a* followed by *il terminal*. In Italian however, the two words *a* and *il* always combine to form one word *al*. Thus: *a + il terminal = al terminal*.
- 10 Qui all'aeroporto invece è divertente. *Here at the airport however, it's interesting (lit. amusing).*
 invece: *however (lit. instead)*
- 11 Ecco l'annuncio: è in arrivo il volo AZ383 (tre otto tre) da Amsterdam. *There's the announcement: flight no. AZ383 (three eight three) from Amsterdam is landing (lit. in arrival or arriving).*
- 12 Che ora è? Sono le quattro. *What's the time? It's four o'clock.*
- a Che ora è?: *What's the time? (lit. What hour is it?)* This is one of the ways of asking the time in Italian.
- b Sono le quattro: *It's four o'clock.* This is the usual way of giving the time in Italian. To say *it is two o'clock*, Italians say *sono le due*; to say *it is three o'clock*, they say *sono le tre*, etc.
- 13 È in perfetto orario. *It's right on time (lit. in perfect time).*
- 14 Siamo a Milano per le cinque e mezzo se Paolo e Maria Teresa passano la dogana in fretta. *We shall be (lit. we are) in Milan by (lit. for) half past five if Paolo and Maria Teresa go through customs quickly.*
- a le cinque e mezzo: *half past five (lit. five and half)* Notice how Italians say *half past* the hour; to say 2.30 you must use *le due e mezzo*, whilst 3.30 is *le tre e mezzo* etc.
- b passano: *they go through* The infinitive form of this verb is *passare*. Notice the *ano* ending on *passano* which is typical when *they* (i.e. two or more people) are doing the action.

- c la dogana: *the customs* In English we talk about *customs* in the plural; notice that in Italian it is singular: *la dogana*.
- d in fretta: *quickly (lit. in hurry)*

Part two: What happens

Al controllo passaporti *At passport control*

At first Paolo cannot find his passport; he then finds it and tells the immigration officer that he works at The Hague and has come back to Italy on holiday for two or three months.

Alla dogana *At the customs*

Maria Teresa tells Paolo to join a shorter queue. She tells the customs officer that she has only clothes and presents for the family in her case, whilst Paolo tells him that he has only his camera in his briefcase.

L'incontro con Emilia *Seeing Emilia again*

Emilia meets Maria Teresa and Paolo; as the luggage is heavy, she suggests that they wait at the exit whilst she fetches her car from the car-park.

Il portabagagli *The porter*

As there are no trolleys, Paolo asks a porter to carry the luggage to the exit.

Part two: New words

i the (masc. plur.)
 le the (fem. plur.)

il bagaglio luggage
 il carabiniere carabinieri
 il carrello trolley
 il controllo control
 il doganiere customs officer
 il giorno day
 l'incontro meeting
 mesi (il mese) months
 il parcheggio car-park
 il passaporto passport
 il portabagagli porter
 regali (il regalo) presents
 tassi (il tassì) taxis
 il tempo time
 vestiti (il vestito) clothes

la borsa bag
 la cartella briefcase
 la coda queue
 la famiglia family
 la macchina car
 la macchina fotografica camera
 notizie (la notizia) news
 la porta door
 la scuola school
 l'uscita exit
 la valigia suitcase

altro other
 libero free
 pesanti (pesante) heavy
 pignolo fussy
 quella (quello) that
 rossa (rosso) red

tutto all

abbiamo (avere) we have
 abita? (abitare) do you live?
 arrivano (arrivare) they arrive
 aspettate (aspettare) you are waiting
 (for)
 c'è there is
 dichiarare to declare
 fa (fare) it makes
 hai (avere) you have
 importa (importare) it matters
 pesano (pesare) they weigh
 porto (portare) I'll bring
 sono (essere) they are
 stai (stare) you are
 stanno (stare) they are
 state (stare) you are
 trovo (trovare) I find

altro? anything else?
 che? what?
 che importa? what does it matter?
 che peccato! what a shame!
 cosa? what?
 cosa c'è? what is there?
 niente nothing
 non... niente nothing

qualcosa anything, something
 quanto? how much?
 quanto fa? how much is it?
 tu you
 voi you

alla at the
 vicino (a) near (to)

a sinistra on the left
 benone very well
 come? how?
 come mai? how come?
 come stai? how are you?
 da questa parte over here
 davanti in front
 di solito usually
 dove? where?
 lontano far
 mai ever
 meno less
 proprio really, right
 proprio oggi today of all days
 un po' a little

ciao hello

L'Aia The Hague

Part two: Notes

Al controllo passaporti At passport control

- 15 Al controllo passaporti At passport control (lit. At passports control)
 a al controllo: (lit.) at the control; a + il controllo = al controllo (Note 9).
 b passaporti: passports
- 16 Carabiniere The carabinieri are a special branch of the army and fulfil many of the functions that policemen fulfil in Britain; they are concerned with public order and making sure that the law is enforced. Here a carabinieri is inspecting the passports.
- 17 Passaporto per favore. Passport please.
 Notice how the final o on passaporto becomes an i in the plural; this follows the same pattern that you saw in Lesson 1 (N42).
- 18 Maria Teresa, hai tu i passaporti? Maria Teresa, have you got the passports?
 a hai tu?: have you got? In English we have only one way of saying you

no matter to whom we are speaking. In Italian, however, there are several ways of saying *you*. In Lesson 1 (N30b) we saw *lei* used. The situation in which it was used was a rather formal one; the young lady was addressing a married woman whom she did not know. Italians use *lei* in normal conversation with people they do not know or with whom they are not on familiar terms; its usage denotes a certain distance and is a mark of respect. The *tu* form of *you* is used with people with whom you are on familiar terms, e.g. members of your family and close friends; it is also used when speaking to children and, in appropriate cases, to animals.

- b Notice how the verb form changes with the use of *tu*; *tu hai*: you have (familiar form) but *lei ha*: you have (formal form). Paolo would not normally need to use *tu* in this sentence: *hai?*: have you? would generally be sufficient. Here however he uses *tu* to emphasize the *you*, because he cannot find the passports and wonders whether Maria Teresa has them.
- c i passaporti: the passports You already know that to say *the passport* you must say *il passaporto*. When you want to say *the passports* however, it becomes *i*. Thus: *il passaporto*: the passport; *i passaporti*: the passports. This pattern is typical for most masculine nouns in Italian.
- 19 No, qui ho solo il mio passaporto. Ecco. No, I've only got my passport here (lit. Here I've got only my passport). Here it is.
 il mio passaporto: my passport We have already seen *mio* and *mia* used in Lesson 1 to mean *my* e.g. *mio figlio* and *mia moglie*, *mio* being used for one male and *mia* being used for one female in the family. However, it is always necessary to put the appropriate *il* or *la* in front of *mio* and *mia*, except when you are talking about one member of a family. Thus you should say *mio figlio*, but *il mio passaporto*.
- 20 Un momento, scusi, non trovo il mio passaporto. Just a moment, excuse me, I can't find my passport.
 non trovo: I can't find (lit. I don't find) The infinitive form of *trovo* is *trovare*: to find.
- 21 Prego. That's quite all right.
 Notice again the usage of *prego*. Here Paolo has said *scusi*: excuse me to which the carabinieri has politely replied *prego*: that's quite all right.
- 22 Ah, è in questa cartella. Ah, it's in this briefcase.
 questa cartella: this briefcase Questa is the feminine form of *questo*: this (L1, N23a). It must be used instead of *questo* with feminine nouns such as *cartella*, e.g. *questo profumo*: this perfume (masculine noun); *questa cartella*: this briefcase (feminine noun).
- 23 Sì, all'Aia. Yes, at The Hague.
 The Hague: l'Aia; at The Hague: all'Aia; a + l'Aia = all'Aia. This follows the same rule that we saw before in Note 5.
- 24 Per quanto tempo? For how long? (lit. For how much time?)

- a **quanto tempo?: how long?** *Quanto* is the word normally used in Italy to ask *how much?*, be it in a shop, buying a railway ticket, or together with another word as here: **per quanto tempo?: for how much time?**
- b **tempo: (lit.) time** Notice how **tempo** can be used both for *weather* (L1, N27) and for *time*.
- 25 **Per due o tre mesi. For two or three months.**
mesi: months The singular form of **mesi** is **il mese: month**. It therefore is like other nouns that we saw in Lesson 1 (N50d) which end with an *e* in the singular and with an *i* in the plural.

Alla dogana At the customs

- 26 **Alla dogana At the customs**
 The word for *the customs* is **la dogana**; to say *at the customs* you would therefore expect to find **a** followed by **la dogana**. However, once again as in Notes 5 and 9, **a** combines with **la** to form one word.
 Thus: **a + la = alla**; **a + la dogana = alla dogana**.
- 27 **Da questa parte, Paolo. C'è meno coda. This way, Paolo. There's less (of a) queue.**
 a **Da questa parte: Over here (lit. On this side)**
 b **c'è: there is**
 c **meno: less**
 d **coda: queue** The word for *a queue* is **una coda** in Italian.
- 28 **Sì, ma c'è un doganiere molto pignolo. Yes, but there's a very fussy customs officer (lit. a customs officer very fussy).**
molto pignolo: very fussy Notice once again how adjectives or describing words often follow the word they are describing in Italian.
- 29 **Che importa? Non abbiamo niente da dichiarare. What does it matter? We have nothing to declare.**
 a **Che?: What?** In Lesson 1 (N25c and N38a) we saw that **che** meant *which?* or *what?* when used together with another word, e.g. **che cosa?** **Che?** used by itself is another way of asking *what?*
 b **Che importa?: What does it matter?** The infinitive form of this verb is **importare: to matter, to be of import**.
 c **abbiamo: we have**
 d **Non abbiamo niente: We have nothing (lit. We have not nothing)** To say *We have nothing* in Italian, you must use what looks like a double negative in English: **non + verb + niente**, i.e. **non abbiamo niente**.
 e **niente da dichiarare: nothing to declare** Here, **da dichiarare** has the sense of *to be declared*; we shall see more examples of this type of construction later on in the course.
- 30 **Sì, è vero. Yes, it's true.**
- 31 **Ha qualcosa da dichiarare? Have you anything to declare?**

- 32 **Cosa c'è in questa valigia? What is there in this suitcase?**
Cosa?: What? There are thus three different ways of asking *what?* in Italian: **Che cosa?** (L1, N38a); **Che?** (L2, N29a) and **Cosa?** All three are exactly the same in meaning and differ only in form.
- 33 **Solo vestiti . . . no, abbiamo anche i regali per la famiglia. Only clothes . . . no, we also have presents (lit. the presents) for the family.**
- 34 **Va bene. E lei, signore, che cos'ha in quella cartella? Fine. And you sir, what have you got in that briefcase?**
 a **che cos'ha?: what have you got?** As in Lesson 1 (N65) **cosa** shortens to **cos'** when followed by **ha**.
 b **quella cartella: that briefcase**
- 35 **La mia macchina fotografica. My camera (lit. photographic machine).**
 In Note 19, we saw **il mio** used for *my* when referring to the masculine word **passaporto**; here we find **la mia** used for *my* when referring to the feminine object **macchina fotografica**.
- 36 **Altro? Anything else? (lit. Other?)**

L'incontro con Emilia Seeing Emilia again

- 37 **L'incontro con Emilia (lit.) The meeting with Emilia**
- 38 **Emilia, ciao! Come stai? Emilia, hello! How are you?**
 a **ciao: hello** In Italian you may say **ciao: hello** only to people with whom you are on familiar terms i.e. people whom you address individually as **tu** and call by their Christian name. **Ciao** also means *goodbye* but again can never be said to people whom you address with the **lei** form of the verb.
 b The word **stai** is from the verb **stare: to be** which is used when talking about someone's state of health. Maria Teresa here uses the familiar **tu** form of the verb.
- 39 **Ciao, benissimo. E voi come state? Hello, very well. And you, how are you?**
 a **voi: you** This is yet another way of saying *you* in Italian and is used when you are addressing two or more people.
 b **come state?: how are you?** Here Emilia uses the **voi** form of the verb because she is talking to both Paolo and Maria Teresa. Compare **Come stai?: How are you?** (when addressing one person with whom you are on familiar terms) with **Come state?: How are you?** (when addressing two or more people).
- 40 **Bene grazie. E Giovanna dov'è? (Very) well thank you. And where's Giovanna? (lit. And Giovanna, where is she?)**
dov'è?: where is she? **Dove: where** contracts to **dov'** in front of the word **è**.

- 41 **Che peccato! Proprio oggi. E tu come mai non hai scuola?** *What a shame! Today of all days. And what about you (lit. And you), how come (lit. how ever) you haven't got classes?*
- a **Che peccato!:** *What a shame!* Learn this useful idiomatic expression.
- b **proprio oggi:** (lit.) *just today, really today*
- c **come mai?:** *how come?* This is a very common exclamation in Italian indicating surprise.
- d **non hai scuola?:** *haven't you got classes (lit. school)?* The expression **avere scuola:** (lit. *to have school, to have classes*) is similar to the expression Emilia uses in Note 7a, **non ho lezione.**
- 42 **È il mio giorno libero, per fortuna.** *It's my day off (lit. my free day), fortunately.*
Italian schools normally teach from 8 a.m. till 1 p.m. six days a week from Monday to Saturday inclusive. The teachers, however, work only five days out of the six, each teacher having one free day in the course of the school week.
- 43 **Hai notizie di mia madre e Alberto?** *Have you news of my mother and Alberto?*
- 44 **Stanno benone. Aspettate altro bagaglio?** *They're very well. Are you waiting for any other (lit. other) luggage?*
- a **Stanno:** *they are* This is another form of the verb **stare** (Notes 38 and 39). Notice again that it is not necessary to use the word for *they*; the verb form **stanno** in itself means *they are*.
- b **benone:** *very well* **Stanno benone** is a very colloquial phrase, used only in conversation.
- c **Aspettate?:** *Are you waiting for?* This is another form of the verb **aspettare:** *to wait for* (Note 3a). Emilia is talking to both Paolo and Maria Teresa, so she uses the **voi** form of the verb, **aspettate.** Compare **aspettate:** *you are waiting for* (when addressing two or more people) with **state:** *you are* (N39b). From this you will see that both verbs end with the letters **ate**; this ending is typical of **are** verbs in the **voi** form.
- 45 **No, è tutto qui.** *No, it's all here.*
- 46 **La mia macchina è al parcheggio.** *My car is in (lit. at) the car-park.*
- a **macchina:** *car* In Note 35 we saw the word **macchina fotografica** used to mean *camera*. However, whenever the word **macchina** is used on its own it usually means *car* in English.
- b **al parcheggio:** *in the car park* The word **al** here follows the same rule as before: **a + il parcheggio = al parcheggio.**
- 47 **È un po' lontano. I bagagli sono pesanti.** *It's rather a long way. The bags are heavy.*
- a **un po' lontano:** (lit.) *a little far, rather a long way* The expression **un po'** is the abbreviated form of **un poco:** *a little*. An apostrophe is placed

- after **po'** to show that the second part of the word **poco** is missing.
- b **I bagagli:** *The bags* This is the plural form of **il bagaglio:** *luggage*. Notice that the plural is **bagagli**. A similar type of noun is **figlio:** *son* which becomes **figli** in the plural.
- c **sono:** *are, they are* Notice this new meaning of **sono** which as you know also means *I am*. Another example: **Dove sono i regali? Sono in quella valigia.** *Where are the presents? They're in that suitcase.*
- d **pesanti:** *heavy* The singular form of **pesanti** is **pesante**. Remember that adjectives that end with an **e** in the singular always end with an **i** in the plural (L1, N66).
- 48 **Se aspettate all'uscita, io porto la macchina proprio davanti.** *If you wait at the exit, I'll bring the car right to the front (lit. in front).*
- a **all'uscita:** *at the exit* **a + l'uscita = all'uscita**
- b **io porto:** *I'll bring* We have already seen this verb **portare:** *to bring* used in other forms and with another meaning (L1, N38b and N44). Here **io porto** literally means *I bring*, but we tend to translate this by a future tense in English, i.e. *I will bring*.
- c **proprio davanti:** *right to the front* The word **proprio** has many meanings and is normally used in conversation for emphasis. Thus, Maria Teresa exclaimed **Proprio oggi:** *Today of all days* (Note 41b) and here Emilia says **proprio davanti:** *right to the front*.

Il portabagagli The porter

- 49 **Come pesano queste valigie!** *How heavy these cases are! (lit. How they weigh these cases!)*
- a **Come!:** *How!*
- b **pesano:** (lit.) *they weigh* This is the *they* form of the verb **pesare:** *to weigh*. Compare **passano:** *they pass* (Note 14b) with **pesano:** *they weigh*. You will notice that both verbs end with the letters **ano**; this is the typical ending for **are** verbs when *they* are doing the action. Other examples from verbs you have already met and which follow the same pattern are: **fumano:** *they smoke*; **studiano:** *they study*; **parlano:** *they speak*. Listen carefully to the pronunciation of **pesano** and **passano** and remember to put the stress at the beginning of the word.
- c **queste valigie:** *these suitcases* The Italian word for *suitcase* is **valigia** and its plural form is therefore **valigie** (L1, N40b). You already know **this:** *questa* in the feminine form and **questo** in the masculine form. Here, however, we have **queste:** *these*, which is the plural form of **questa:** *this*. It must be used here because it is describing **valigie:** *cases* which are both feminine and plural. Thus, **questa valigia:** *this suitcase*; **queste valigie:** *these suitcases*.
- 50 **Non c'è un carrello?** *Isn't there a trolley?*

- 51 No, ma ecco un portabagagli. Scusi, per favore: le valigie e la cartella. *No, but here's a porter. Excuse me, please: the suitcases and the briefcase.*
le valigie: *the suitcases* We have already seen several words that translate *the* in Italian (viz. *il, la, l', i*) and here is another. It is used when you are talking about feminine nouns in the plural. Thus: **la valigia:** *the suitcase*;
le valigie: *the suitcases*. **Le:** *the* (feminine plural) is always the plural form of **la:** *the* (feminine singular). Further examples of this pattern are:

la sigaretta: <i>the cigarette</i>	le sigarette: <i>the cigarettes</i>
la cartella: <i>the briefcase</i>	le cartelle: <i>the briefcases</i>
la vacanza: <i>the holiday</i>	le vacanze: <i>the holidays</i>
la signora: <i>the woman</i>	le signore: <i>the women</i>
la madre: <i>the mother</i>	le madri: <i>the mothers</i>

- 52 E anche la mia borsa rossa. *And also my red bag.*
 53 Al parcheggio. *To the car-park.*
 54 Ma Paolo! Emilia porta la macchina all'uscita! *But Paolo! Emilia is bringing the car to the exit!*
 55 Ah sì! Ecco: qui vicino alla porta va bene. *Ah yes! There we are: Here near the door is fine.*
vicino alla porta: *near the door* (lit. *near to the door*) To say *near* something in Italian we must use the expression **vicino a:** (lit.) *near to*. The word for *door* is **la porta**. Here, therefore **vicino a + la porta = vicino alla porta**.
 56 Qui c'è la coda per i tassì. Le macchine di solito arrivano qui a sinistra. *Here there's the queue for the taxis. The cars usually arrive here on the left.*
 a **i tassì:** *the taxis* There are two ways of saying *taxi* in Italian; you may either use the international version, **il taxi**, which is pronounced very much as we pronounce the same word in English, or alternatively, you may use the Italian version, **il tassì**, with the accent falling on the second part of the word. The plural form of **il taxi** is **i taxi** whilst the plural form of **il tassì** is **i tassì**; both of these versions are accepted and understood throughout Italy.
 b **le macchine:** *the cars* Compare this with Note 51.
 c **di solito:** *usually*
 d **arrivano:** *arrive* The infinitive form of this verb is **arrivare**. Notice again the typical **ano** ending used when *they* (i.e. two or more people or things) are doing the action (Note 14b and 49b).
 57 Grazie. Quanto fa? Va bene così? *Thank you. How much is it? Is that all right?*
 a **Quanto fa?:** (lit.) *How much does it make?* This is the normal way of asking *How much is it?*

- b **Va bene così?:** *Is that all right* (lit. *Is it all right like that?*) At Italian airports and railway stations, porters charge a fixed rate per piece of baggage carried; the rate is an official one, established by the authorities and this is why Paolo asks the porter if he has given him enough to cover the number of cases he has carried.

Part three: What happens

Al controllo polizia *The security check*

A policeman inspects a young lady's hand-luggage; she thinks it is for customs but he explains that it is a security check.

Enrico e Luisa *Enrico and Luisa*

Luisa and Enrico meet by chance; it is nine forty and she is waiting for Giorgio whilst he is waiting for his girlfriend.

Part three: New words

il bagaglio a mano hand luggage
il controllo polizia security check
il poliziotto policeman

la mano hand
la polizia police
la ragazza girlfriend, girl

internazionali (internazionale)
 international

arriva (arrivare) he will arrive

aspetti? (aspettare) are you waiting for?

controlliamo (controllare) we are checking

qualcuno someone

non c'è male not bad

sono le nove e quaranta it's nine forty

nove nine

quaranta forty

Part three: Notes

Al controllo polizia *At the security check*

58 **Al controllo polizia** (lit.) *At the police check*

59 **poliziotto:** *policeman* This is the usual name for a *policeman* in Italian.

60 **Sì, controlliamo tutto il bagaglio a mano.** *Yes, we're checking all the hand luggage.*

a **controlliamo:** *we're checking* This comes from the verb **controllare:** *to check*, a regular *are* verb.

- b il bagaglio a mano: *hand luggage*
 c Notice in the New words section that the noun **mano**: (lit.) *hand* is unusual in that it is feminine although it ends in o; **la mano**: *the hand*.
- 61 Non è per la dogana, signorina. *It's not for customs, miss.*
 62 Allora che cos'è? *Well then what is it?*
 Notice how **che cosa è?**: *what is it?* becomes abbreviated to **che cos'è?**
 Compare this with **cos'ha?**: *what have you got?* in Note 34a.
- 63 È il controllo polizia per tutti i voli internazionali. *It's the security check for all the international flights.*
 a **tutti**: *all* This is the masculine plural of **tutto** and it agrees with the masculine plural noun **voli**: *flights*. All adjectives that end in o in the masculine singular end in i in the masculine plural. You now know all forms of adjectives that end in o: **il pacchetto piccolo** (masc. sing.), **i pacchetti piccoli** (masc. pl.), **la macchina piccola** (fem. sing.), **le macchine piccole** (fem. pl.).
 b The singular form of **internazionali** is **internazionale**; like all adjectives that end with an e in the singular, it ends with an i in the plural.

Enrico e Luisa *Enrico and Luisa*

- 64 Ciao Luisa, come stai? *Hello Luisa, how are you?*
 From the first few words we know already that the two people are on very friendly and familiar terms, firstly because they say **ciao** to each other, secondly because they call each other by their Christian names, and also because they use the familiar **tu** form of the verb, **stai**.
- 65 Non c'è male. *Not bad.*
 Learn this useful idiomatic expression.
- 66 Aspetti Giorgio? *Are you waiting for Giorgio?*
 From the **tu** forms of the verbs that you have met so far, you can probably see a certain pattern emerge, i.e. that verbs in the **tu** form end in the letter i, e.g. **tu aspetti**; **tu hai**. Practically all verbs in the **tu** form end with the characteristic letter i.
- 67 Sono le nove e quaranta. *It's 9.40.*
 Compare **Sono le nove**: *It's nine o'clock* with **Sono le nove e quaranta**: *It's nine forty*. Notice how in Italian we must insert the word **e**: *and* between the hour and the number of minutes after the hour. Further examples of this would be: **Sono le quattro e cinque**: *It's five past four*; **Sono le due e cinquanta**: *It's 2.50*.
- 68 Arriva fra poco. E tu aspetti qualcuno? *He'll arrive soon. (lit. He's arriving soon.) And are you waiting for someone?*
 Notice the emphasis that **tu** gives to this sentence; Luisa wants to know if he is waiting for someone too.
- 69 Sì, la mia ragazza. *Yes, my girlfriend (lit. my girl).*

Lezione tre

Lesson three

Una telefonata

A telephone call

Part one: What happens

Maria Teresa is in piazza della Repubblica in Milan and it is 7.00 p.m., the rush-hour. She is going to telephone Giovanna in Turin who is expecting her phone call at 7.00. She finds a phone box but then realises that she has no telephone tokens and must therefore phone from a bar.

Part one: Notes

lo the	devo (dovere) I must
il bar bar	mi piace I like
gettoni (il gettone) telephone tokens	telefonare to telephone
lo sciopero strike	vado (andare) I am going
il traffico traffic	dei, della of the
tram (il tram) trams	adesso now
la cabina telefonica telephone box	alle sette at seven o'clock
l'ora di punta rush-hour	buonasera good evening
la piazza square	per di più what is more
la repubblica republic	sono le sette it is seven o'clock
la telefonata telephone call	
aspetta (aspettare) she's expecting	sette seven

Part one: Notes

- Buonasera. *Good evening.*
- In questo momento sono a Milano, in piazza della Repubblica. *At the moment I'm in Milan, in piazza della Repubblica.*
piazza della Repubblica: (lit.) *square of the Republic* Just as **a** and **il** combined to form **al** (L2, N9), the words **di** and **la** always combine to form **della**. Thus: **di + la Repubblica = della Repubblica**.
- Mi piace questa piazza quando non c'è traffico. *I like this square (lit. This square pleases me) when there isn't (any) traffic.*
 a **mi piace**: *I like* (lit. *pleases me*) This is the usual way of saying you like something in Italian e.g. *I like Milan* would be **Mi piace Milano**, whilst *I like this car* would be **Mi piace questa macchina**.

- b *c'è: there is* Remember this useful phrase and imitate the pronunciation carefully.
- 4 **Ma adesso è l'ora di punta: sono le sette.** *But now it's the rush-hour: it's seven o'clock.*
- a **l'ora di punta: the rush-hour**
- b **sono le sette: it's seven o'clock** Remember how to say the time in Italian (L2, N12b).
- c Most offices close at about 6 p.m. in Italy and as many shops do not shut until about 7.30 or 8.00 p.m., seven o'clock in the evening is a very busy time in most Italian towns as people are either going home or doing late shopping.
- d By now you will have become familiar with Italian pronunciation but you should pay special attention to the double consonants e.g. the double **b** in **Repubblica**, the double **f** in **traffico**, the double **t** in **sette** etc. All double consonants must be clearly pronounced as some Italian words look exactly alike, apart from the double consonants, but are entirely different in meaning, e.g. **sette**: *seven* but **sete**: *thirst*; **nonna**: *grandmother* but **nona**: *ninth*; **carro**: *cart* but **caro**: *dear*. You should listen carefully to the Sounds section for further guidance.
- 5 **E per di più c'è lo sciopero dei tram.** *And what's more, there's a tram strike (lit. there is the strike of the trams).*
- a **per di più: what's more**
- b **lo sciopero: the strike** **Lo** is the word for *the* used with masculine words that begin with *s* and another consonant. Listen carefully to the pronunciation of **lo sciopero** and practise saying these two words to yourself.
- c **dei tram: of the trams** The word for *the tram* is **il tram** in Italian and the plural form is **i tram: the trams**. All nouns that end with a consonant in the singular do not change in the plural. The words **di: of** and **i: the** always combine to form **dei**. Thus: **di + i tram = dei tram**.
- 6 **Vado a telefonare a Giovanna a Torino.** *I'm going to telephone Giovanna in Turin (lit. to Giovanna to Turin).*
- a **Vado: I'm going** The infinitive form of this verb is **andare**; because it obviously does not follow the same pattern as the other **are** verbs we have seen so far, we call it an irregular verb.
- b **telefonare a Giovanna a Torino: telephone Giovanna in Turin** Notice how in English we telephone someone and a place, but in Italian you **telefonare A** someone and **A** a place. Thus, *I'm phoning Paolo* would be **Telefono A Paolo**, whilst *I'm phoning Rome* would be **Telefono A Roma**.
- 7 **Alle sette aspetta la mia telefonata.** *She's expecting my phone call at seven o'clock (lit. At seven o'clock she's waiting for my phone call).*
- a **Alle sette: At seven o'clock** Notice that this is how say **AT** a

particular time in Italian; thus, **AT two o'clock** would be **ALLE due**, whilst **AT eight o'clock** would be **ALLE otto** etc.

- b **aspetta: she's expecting** **Aspettare** means both *to wait for* and *to expect*.
- c Once again pay careful attention to the pronunciation of the double consonants in the three words **Alle sette aspetta**.
- 8 **Ecco una cabina telefonica.** *Here's a phone box.*
Telephone boxes have only fairly recently been introduced in Italy and are still not to be found in some parts of the country. Otherwise phone calls can be made from special telephone centres in towns, at airports, railway stations, some post offices or from most bars which normally have a public telephone installed.
- 9 **Oh! Non ho i gettoni.** *Oh! I haven't got any (lit. the) telephone tokens.*
gettoni: telephone tokens Although some public telephones in Italy now take coins, most still take only **gettoni** which must be purchased in advance of the phone call and are then inserted into the phone box. Sometimes there are special machines for dispensing the **gettoni** actually beside the phone box or they can be purchased at the cash-desk of a bar or at a shop selling tobacco and stamps.
- 10 **Devo proprio telefonare da un bar allora.** *I must really phone from a bar then.*
- a **Devo: I must** The infinitive form of this verb is **dovere**.
- b **Devo telefonare: I must telephone** **Telefonare** literally means *to telephone* but as **devo: I must** is always followed by an infinitive form in Italian, **Devo telefonare** means *I must telephone*.
- c In Italy a bar is a place where you can buy not only alcoholic drinks but also soft drinks, tea and coffee and light snacks. Most bars open early in the morning and close late at night having remained open all day.
- d Listen carefully to the pronunciation of the double consonants in **Ecco, gettoni** and **allora** and try to imitate what you hear as closely as possible.
- e **Allora** means *then* only in the sense of *well then, and so, therefore*.

Part two: What happens

In un bar In a bar

Maria Teresa goes to the cash-desk to get a receipt for a soft drink; she asks the cashier if the bar has a telephone and if she can get through to Turin from it. The cashier tells her where the telephone is and Maria Teresa buys six telephone tokens.

Numero sbagliato Wrong number

Maria Teresa dials the wrong number in Turin. She gets back her unused tokens and tries again, but finds that this time Giovanna's number is engaged.

Interurbana Long distance call

Maria Teresa and Paolo have just finished dinner at Emilia's house. Maria Teresa is tired of trying to phone Giovanna so she asks Paolo to do it. Paolo decides to make a trunk call through the operator.

Giovanna al telefono Giovanna on the phone

Paolo and Maria Teresa talk to Giovanna and make arrangements to drive to Turin the following day arriving at about 5.00 p.m.

Part two: New words

uno a (masc.)

l'analcolico soft drink
il barista bar attendant
il bottone button
il caffè coffee
il centralino operator
il fondo end
il numero number
il papà father, Daddy
lo sconosciuto stranger
lo scontrino ticket
il telefono telephone
il viaggio journey

la casa home
la cassa cash-desk
la cassiera cashier
la cena dinner
la destra right
l'interurbana long distance call
la linea line
la mamma mother, Mummy
la teleselezione direct dialling
la volta time

brava (bravo) good, clever
breve short
impossibile impossible
nessuna (nessuno) no
occupato engaged
ottima (ottimo) excellent
possibile possible
sbagliato wrong
soddisfatta (soddisfatto) pleased
stufa (stufo) fed up
stufa di provare fed up with trying

arrivate? (arrivare) are you arriving?
bastano (bastare) they are enough
bisogna (bisognare) it is necessary
chiamiamo (chiamare) let us call
cucini? (cucinare) do you cook?
deve (dovere) you must
devi? (dovere) must you?
fare to do, to make
fare il numero to dial the number
fare lo scontrino to get a receipt
inserire to insert
penso (pensare) a I'll see to
posso (potere) I can
premere to press
provare to try
puoi? (potere) can you?
recuperare to get back
richiamo (richiamare) I'll call back
riproviamo (riprovare) let's try again
tornare to go back
vai (andare) you go

chi? who?

verso about
verso le cinque about five o'clock

dunque now then

a casa at home
a destra to the right
al telefono on the phone
certamente certainly
domani tomorrow
in fondo at the end
prima first
quando when

sempre always
stasera this evening
tanto so much
tardi late

beh well then, oh well
brava! good girl!
come va? how are things?
dica pure can I help you?
le cinque five o'clock
pronto? hello?
scusi I'm sorry
scusi tanto very sorry

si accomodi this way
sono la mamma it's her mother
speaking

novanta ninety
ottantatre eighty-three
quarantotto forty-eight
quattrocentosettantacinque four
hundred and seventy-five
sei six
sessantacinque sixty-five
trentuno thirty-one

Part two: Notes**In un bar In a bar****11 Barista Bar attendant**

The **barista** can be either **il barista** if he is a man or **la barista** if she is a woman. Most Italian words that have the ending **ista** can be either **il** or **la**. Here our **barista** is a man.

12 Prima deve fare lo scontrino alla cassa, signora. First you must get a receipt from the cash-desk, madam (lit. make the ticket at the cash-desk).

- a **deve: you must** Because the infinitive of this verb **dovere: to have to** ends with the letters **ere** we call it an **ere** verb. The *you, he, she* and *it* (i.e. 3rd person singular) form of regular **ere** verbs ends with the letter **e**, just as the *you, he, she* and *it* (3rd person singular) form of regular **are** verbs ends with the letter **a** (L1, N63b).
- b **fare: (to) get** (lit. *to do, to make*) This is another infinitive form of an irregular verb. Notice again that as in Note 10b any form of the verb **dovere** must be followed by the infinitive of a verb in Italian.
- c **lo scontrino: the receipt** Notice once again **lo: the** used in front of a word beginning with **s** and another consonant (Note 5b).
- d **fare lo scontrino: get a receipt** (lit. *make the ticket*) This is an idiomatic expression. In many large bars in Italy it is the practice for the client first to decide what he would like to drink; he then goes to the cash-desk, tells the cashier what he is going to have and pays the appropriate amount. In exchange he receives a **ticket: scontrino** which indicates how much the client has paid; he takes this to the bar where he can obtain a drink to the value of his **scontrino**. This system however is only used when the client is in a hurry and wants to stand at the bar with his drink. If he wishes to sit down, he is served by a waiter and will usually have to pay more for his drinks, either directly to the waiter or at the cash-desk on

leaving. Because Maria Teresa is in a hurry and really wants to telephone she decides to have her drink standing up.

13 **Cassiera** *Cashier*

This is a woman cashier; her masculine counterpart would be *il cassiere* in Italian.

14 **Si accomodi: a destra in fondo.** *This way: on the right at the end.*

a **Si accomodi:** *This way* This is an idiomatic expression used very frequently in shops, bars etc. in Italy; it literally means *Make yourself comfortable* but is the polite way of telling the client to go ahead with what he would like to do, and that the bar, office, shop, restaurant etc. is at his disposal. It is also used when letting someone into your home or when offering someone a seat in your house or elsewhere.

b **a destra:** *on the right*

c **in fondo:** *at the end* Learn these two idiomatic phrases.

15 **È possibile telefonare a Torino?** *Is it possible to telephone Turin?*
Notice again how Maria Teresa uses **a Torino** (Note 6b). She asks this question because from some public telephones in bars it is possible to make only local calls.

16 **Certamente signora. Ha i gettoni?** *Certainly madam. Have you the tokens?*

Certamente: *Certainly* Notice the *mente* ending on **certamente**; it is like the *ly* ending on the English word *certainly*. We saw a similar example in **finalmente**: *finally, at last* (L1, N17).

17 **No. Sei bastano, vero?** *No. Six are enough, aren't they (lit. true)?*

a **bastano:** *are enough* The infinitive of **bastano** is **bastare**: *to be enough*.

b **vero?:** *aren't they (lit. true)?* **Vero?** used at the end of a sentence and with a rising intonation is very common in Italian; you use it to ask confirmation for something that you are fairly sure about. It is the equivalent of *aren't you?*, *isn't he?* etc. at the end of English sentences, e.g. *He's Italian, isn't he?* would be **È italiano, vero?**

18 **Bastano per una telefonata breve.** *They're enough for a short phone call.*
una telefonata breve: *a short phone call* Notice once again how adjectives often follow the word they are describing in Italian.

Numero sbagliato *Wrong number*

19 **Dunque: inserire i gettoni, fare il numero . . . è libero. Pronto, pronto?**
Now then, insert the tokens, dial (lit. make) the number . . . it's ringing (lit. it's free). Hello, hello?

a **inserire:** *insert (lit. to insert)* So far we have seen both *are* and *ere* infinitive endings; here is one more, this time an *ire* infinitive. Instructions in Italian are frequently given in the infinitive form, particularly in phone booths and other public places.

b **fare il numero:** *dial (lit. make) the number*

c **Pronto, pronto?:** *Hello, hello (lit. ready)?* This is the usual way of answering a telephone in Italy or of saying *hello* if you are making the call.

20 **Uno sconosciuto** *A stranger*

Just as **lo** was used to translate *the* in front of **sciopero**: *strike* (Note 5b) and **scontrino**: *receipt* (Note 12c) so here **uno** is used to translate *a* in front of a similar type of word. The reason for this variation is that it is much smoother from the point of view of pronunciation to say **lo sconosciuto**, **lo scontrino**, **lo sciopero** etc. than to try to pronounce these words with *il* in front of them; the same logic holds good for **uno sconosciuto** etc. instead of **un**.

21 **Sono la mamma.** *This is her mother speaking (lit. I am the mother).*

a Notice how in Italian you identify yourself on the phone by saying **sono** followed by your name; to say *This is Maria speaking* you must say **Sono Maria**.

b **mamma:** *mother, mummy* **Mamma** is the more familiar form of **madre**: children usually address their mothers as **mamma**.

22 **Qui non c'è nessuna Giovanna.** *There's no Giovanna here (lit. Here there isn't no Giovanna).*

a Notice that the negative of **c'è** is **non c'è**.

b **nessuna Giovanna:** *no Giovanna* Here *no* is an adjective and **nessuno** must therefore appear in its feminine singular form **nessuna**, to agree with **Giovanna**.

c Notice again the double negative **non . . . nessuna** that is used in the same way as **non . . . niente** (L2, N29d).

23 **Scusi, non è il 65.48.90 (sessantacinque, quarantotto, novanta) di Torino?**
Excuse me. Isn't that Turin 65.48.90 (sixty-five, forty-eight, ninety)?
Notice the different way in which telephone numbers are said in Italy. See Appendix 11 for a list of numbers.

24 **Scusi tanto . . . Beh riproviamo. Bisogna premere il bottone per recuperare i gettoni . . . Questa volta è occupato.** *Very sorry (lit. Excuse me so much) . . . Oh well let's try again. I must (lit. It is necessary to) press the button to get back the tokens . . . This time it's engaged (lit. busy).*

a **Beh:** *Oh well* This is the colloquial form of **bene**: *well*.

b **riproviamo:** *let's try again* The infinitive form of this verb is **riprovare**: *to try again*. To say *let's do something* in Italian we must use the **noi** form of the verb. Thus according to context, **riproviamo** may mean *we are trying again* or *let's try again!*

c **Bisogna:** *it is necessary* is an impersonal expression and exists only in the 3rd person singular (i.e. *it*) form; **bisogna** is always followed by an infinitive e.g. **bisogna telefonare:** *it is necessary to telephone; bisogna*

parlare italiano: *it is necessary to speak Italian.* Here it is followed by the infinitive form of a new **ere** verb, **premere:** *to press.*

- d **per recuperare i gettoni:** *to get back the tokens* If you have not used all your telephone tokens in making a call, you can press a button to get back those you have not yet used. Here Maria Teresa retrieves her unused tokens, inserts them again and redials the number.

Interurbana Long distance call

- 25 **Ottima cena, Emilia. Cucini sempre così?** *Excellent dinner, Emilia. Do you always cook like that?*
 a **cena:** *dinner* This is the word normally used for the evening meal.
 b **Cucini?:** *Do you cook?* This is the **tu** form of the verb **cucinare**. Remember that Paolo will use the familiar **tu** form of the verb (i.e. 2nd person singular) when he speaks to his sister and to other members of the family.
- 26 **Posso fare il caffè?** *Can I make the coffee?*
Posso?: *Can I?* The infinitive form of this verb is **potere** and you can see it is a very irregular verb. Like **devo:** *I must* (Notes 10a and 10b) **posso** must always be followed by the infinitive form of another verb; here it is followed by **fare:** *to make.*
- 27 **Tu vai a telefonare a Giovanna e io penso al caffè.** *You go and telephone Giovanna and I'll see to (lit. think about) the coffee.*
 a **Tu vai:** *You go* This is the 2nd person singular i.e. **tu** form of the verb **andare:** *to go* (Note 6a). Emilia deliberately uses the words **tu** and **io** here to emphasise that Maria Teresa should go and do one thing while she does another.
 b **io penso al caffè:** *I'll see to the coffee* (lit. *I think about the coffee*) *To think ABOUT* is **pensare A** in Italian which with the word for *coffee:* **il caffè**, forms **pensare al caffè**, i.e. **pensare a + il caffè**.
- 28 **Sono proprio stufa di provare. Paolo, puoi telefonare tu?** *I'm really fed up with trying. Paolo, can you telephone?*
 a **stufa di provare:** *fed up with trying* Notice that in English we say *we are fed up WITH* doing something, whilst Italians say **stufo DI** followed by the infinitive form of the verb.
 b **puoi?:** *can you?* This is the **tu** form (i.e. 2nd person singular) of the verb **potere** (Note 26); listen carefully to how it is pronounced. Notice too that like **posso** (Note 26) **puoi** is followed by the infinitive form of another verb, here **telefonare**.
 c **tu:** *you* Once again, **tu** is used for emphasis.
- 29 **Con la teleselezione è impossibile stasera. Chiamiamo il centralino.** *With direct calling it's impossible this evening. Let's call the operator.*
 a **Stasera:** *this evening* is the contracted form of **questa sera:** *this evening.*

- b **Chiamiamo:** *Let's call* Remember **riproviamo:** *let's try again* (Note 24b). The infinitive of **chiamiamo** is **chiamare:** *to call.*
- 30 **Sì, dica pure.** *Yes, can I help you?*
 This is an idiomatic expression meaning literally *say what you would like to.*
- 31 **Lei che numero ha?** *What is your number?* (lit. *You what number have you got?*)
 Here once again the word for *you* is used, but only for emphasis; the operator wants to make the distinction between the Turin number and Paolo's number.

Giovanna al telefono Giovanna on the phone

- 32 **Ciao papà, come mai così tardi?** *Hello Daddy, how come so late?*
papà: *Daddy* Like **mamma**, **papà** is used by children when talking to their father. Be careful both to write the accent on **papà** and to pronounce it correctly with the stress falling on the second part of the word.
- 33 **Le linee con Torino sono occupate. E allora l'esame?** *The lines to (lit. with) Turin are engaged. Well then, what about your exam?*
 a **Le linee:** *The lines* Notice that the plural of **linea** is **linee** and that both the **e**'s at the end of **linee** are pronounced.
 b **sono:** *are* Remember that **sono** can mean *I am* but it always means *are* when it follows a plural noun (L2, N47c).
 c **occupate:** *engaged* Notice that **occupato:** *engaged* takes on its feminine plural form **occupate** to agree with the feminine plural noun **linee**.
- 34 **E voi come state?** *And how are you?* (lit. *And you how are you?*)
 Giovanna uses **voi:** *you* because she is referring not only to her father, but also her mother (L2, N39a).
- 35 **Ciao Giovanna, come va?** *Hello Giovanna, how are things?* (lit. *how is it going?*)
come va?: *how are things?* This is a very informal way in Italian of asking how someone is and is used commonly among friends and informal acquaintances.
- 36 **Benissimo, sono proprio soddisfatta dell'esame.** *Very good, I'm really pleased about (lit. satisfied with) the exam.*
 a **soddisfatta dell'esame:** *pleased about* (lit. *satisfied with*) *the exam* To translate *pleased ABOUT* we here use **soddisfatta DI**; the word for exam is **l'esame**. In the same way as **di** and **la** combine to form **della** (Note 2) and **di** and **i** form **dei** (Note 5c) so **di** and **l'** combine to form **dell'**. Thus, **di + l'esame = dell'esame**.
 b **esame:** *exam* The sort of exam that Giovanna has taken is very common in Italian universities; it is an oral exam, marked generally out of 30 points

and the student is told his mark straight away at the end of the exam. Giovanna has obviously done well in her exam and as she already knows the result, she now has nothing to worry about.

- 37 **Brava! Devi tornare all'università domani?** *Good girl! Must you go back to the university tomorrow?*
- a **Brava!:** *Good girl!* When someone has behaved well or done something well, the word for *good* is **bravo** in Italian; it can only be used to describe people. Note that in Italian the stress falls on the first syllable of **brava**.
- b **Devi? :** *Must you?* This is the *tu* form of the verb **dovere** (N10a and 12a).
- 38 **No, sono a casa tutto il giorno. Quando arrivate?** *No, I'm at home all day (lit. all the day). When are you arriving?*
arrivate? : *are you arriving?* Remember that this is the *voi* form of the verb **arrivare** (L2, N44c).
- 39 **Verso le cinque.** *About (lit. towards) five o'clock.*
 This is a useful idiomatic phrase to remember.

Part three: What happens

Una telefonata urgente *An urgent phone call*

Miss Corelli telephones her mother at the office; her mother is in a meeting but because she has only six tokens Miss Corelli cannot hold on. As the phone call is urgent, the secretary suggests that she try again in ten minutes.

Comunicazione difficile *A difficult phone call*

Mariella phones Luciano but because the line is so bad she asks Luciano to phone her back.

Part three: New words

minuti (il minuto) minutes

la comunicazione phone call
 la riunione meeting
 la segretaria secretary

difficile difficult
 disturbata (disturbato) bad, disturbed
 forte loud
 urgente urgent

essere to be
 funziona (funzionare) it works
 può (potere) you can

richiamare to call back

più more
 più forte louder
 più tardi later
 subito straightaway
 tanto very
 veramente really

come? what?
 fra dieci minuti in ten minutes' time
 in riunione in a meeting

dieci ten

Part three: Notes

Una telefonata urgente *An urgent phone call*

- 40 **Sig.na Corelli** *Miss Corelli*
Sig.na is the usual written abbreviation of **Signorina** when it is used in front of a surname.
- 41 **Pronto? Posso parlare con la signora Corelli?** *Hello? Can I speak to (lit. with) Mrs. Corelli?*
parlare con: *speak to* In Italian *to speak TO* someone is often translated by **parlare CON**.
- 42 **Sono la figlia.** *This is her daughter speaking (lit. I am the daughter).*
 Remember **Sono la mamma:** *This is her mother speaking* (Note 21a).
- 43 **Può aspettare un momento, signorina?** *Can you wait a moment, miss?*
Può? : *Can you?* This is the 3rd person singular (i.e. the *lei*: *you, he, she and it*) form of the verb **potere** (Notes 26 and 28b). Like all the other forms of **potere**: *to be able*, **può** is followed by the infinitive form of another verb, here **aspettare**.
- 44 **No, sono in teleselezione e ho solo sei gettoni.** *No, I'm dialling direct and I've only got six tokens.*
- 45 **Può richiamare più tardi?** *Can you call back later?*
più tardi: *later* To say *later* in Italian we must say literally *more late*: **più tardi**. In the same way, *smaller* is literally *more small*: **più piccolo** and *shorter*: **più breve** etc.
- 46 **Veramente è urgente.** *Really it's urgent.*
 Notice once again the **mente** ending on **veramente** corresponding to the *ly* ending on *really* (Note 16).

Comunicazione difficile *A difficult phone call*

- 47 In Italian, both **telefonata** and its more grandiose equivalent **comunicazione** can be used to mean *phone call*.
- 48 **Come?** *What? (lit. How?)*
Come? is used to ask someone to repeat what he has just said; it is rather less polite than **Prego?** which is normally used.
- 49 **La linea è disturbata.** *This is a bad line (lit. The line is disturbed).*
- 50 **Dev'essere il mio telefono. Non funziona tanto bene. Puoi richiamare tu?** *It must be my phone. It's not working very well. Can you call (me) back?*
- a **Dev'essere:** *It must be* Because of the final *e* on **deve**, **deve** and **essere** are difficult to pronounce together as individual words; here they are run together and sound like one word.
- b **tu: you** Notice how *tu* is used once again for emphasis; because Mariella's phone is not working very well, it is important that Luciano and not Mariella should ring back.

Part one: What happens

Giovanna introduces herself. She is in Turin, waiting for her parents to arrive and explains that as they have no car in Italy they are using Emilia's for the time being. She herself does not drive but hopes to take her test as soon as possible. When she graduates, she plans to marry her fiancé Marino who is an architect in Florence. She begins to worry about her parents as it is already 6.30 and they have not arrived yet nor telephoned.

Part one: New words

gli the
l'architetto architect
il fidanzato fiancé
il genitore parent
il resto rest
lo studio (pl. gli studi) study

l'autostrada motorway
la laurea degree
la macchina sportiva sports car
la patente driving licence

impegnato busy
miei (m. sing. mio) my
preoccupato worried
quarto fourth
strano strange

comprare to buy
guidare to drive
hanno (avere) they have
prendere to take
prendere la patente to take the driving test

sperare di to hope to
sposare to marry
usare to use
voglio (volere) I want

quella (quello) the one

delle of the
dopo after
sull' on the

perché? why?

forse perhaps
già already
non ... ancora not yet
troppo too

appena possibile as soon as possible
che! how!
che strano! how strange!
in viaggio travelling

Firenze Florence

Part one: Notes

- 1 I miei genitori sono in viaggio sull'autostrada Torino-Milano. *My parents are travelling (lit. in journey) on the Turin-Milan motorway.*

- a I miei genitori: *My parents* I miei is the plural form of mio and il mio e.g. *my brother is mio fratello*, but *my brothers* is *i miei fratelli*; *my passport* is *il mio passaporto* whilst *my passports* is *i miei passaporti*. Listen carefully to how *i miei* is pronounced.
- b sull'autostrada: *on the motorway* In the same way that *a* and *di* combine with *l'*, so too does *su*: *on*. Thus, *su + l'autostrada = sull'autostrada*.
- 2 Non hanno la macchina qui in Italia. *They haven't got a car (lit. the car) here in Italy.*
- a hanno: *they have* This is the *they* form of the irregular verb *avere*: *to have*.
- b hanno la macchina: *they have a (lit. the) car* Italians often use the word for *the*, here *la*, instead of the word for *a* in this type of sentence, to indicate possession of some thing or some attribute e.g. *Hai il telefono?*: *Are you on the telephone?* (lit. *Have you the phone?*)
- 3 E per ora usano quella di Emilia. *And for now they're using Emilia's (lit. that of Emilia).*
- a usano: *they're using* The infinitive of this verb is *usare*: *to use*; notice once again the typical *ano* ending on *are* verbs when *they* are doing the action.
- b quella di Emilia: *Emilia's (lit. the one or that of Emilia)* Notice how we must phrase this in Italian; *quella* is in the feminine singular form because it is referring back to the word *macchina*.
- 4 Ma forse per il resto delle vacanze comprano una macchina sportiva. *But perhaps for the rest of the holidays they'll buy (lit. they are buying) a sports car.*
- a delle vacanze: *of the holidays* Here *di* and *le* have combined to form *delle*; thus, *di + le vacanze = delle vacanze*.
- b comprano: *they'll buy (lit. they are buying)* This is the regular *they* form of *comprare*. Notice again the present tense used to indicate a probable future action (L1, N14b).
- 5 Voglio prendere la patente appena possibile. *I want to take my (lit. the) driving test (lit. driving licence) as soon as possible.*
- a voglio: *I want* This is the *I* form of the irregular verb *volere*: *to want*.
- b prendere la patente: (lit.) *take the driving licence* The usual way of asking if someone drives in Italian is *Ha la patente?*: (lit.) *Have you the driving licence?*
- 6 Ma adesso sono troppo impegnata con gli studi. *But now I'm too busy with my (lit. the) studies.*
gli studi: *my (lit. the) studies* Gli is the plural form of lo (L3, N5b) and studi is the plural of studio (L2, N47b).
- 7 Dopo la laurea spero di sposare Marino, il mio fidanzato. *After my (lit. the) degree, I hope to marry Marino, my fiancé.*

- a **la laurea: my degree** Unlike British universities, Italian universities give basically only one degree, **la laurea**, which can be obtained after a minimum of four years' study, depending of course on the subject studied. On receiving his **laurea** a man becomes **dottore** and a woman becomes **dottoressa**.
- b **spero di sposare: I hope to marry** *To hope to do something is translated by sperare di + the infinitive in Italian, e.g. He hopes to come back is translated as Spera di ritornare.*
- 8 **È architetto e lavora a Firenze.** *He's an architect and he works in Florence.*
È architetto: He's an architect Remember to leave out the word for a when giving someone's profession in Italian (L1, N4a).
- 9 **Sono già le sei e mezzo e non sono ancora qui.** *It's already half past six and they aren't here yet.*
non sono ancora qui: aren't here yet The word **non** is placed in front of the verb and **ancora** after it to express *not yet* in Italian.
- 10 **Che strano! Ma perché non telefonano?** *How strange! But why don't they telephone?*
- a **Che strano!:** *How strange!* Notice this exclamation. To say *How nice!* would be **Che bello!** whilst *How boring!* would be **Che noioso!**
- b **telefonano: they telephone** Notice yet again the **ano** ending on the verb indicating that *they* are doing the action.

Part two: What happens

Due ore prima al casello di Milano *Two hours earlier at the Milan toll-gate*
 When Maria Teresa comments on how expensive the motorway is, Paolo explains to her that the price of the ticket depends on the size of the car engine. The cars behind Emilia start sounding their horns and the toll-collector tells her to hurry along.

Per la strada *On the way*

Emilia feels the steering pulling to the right and then realises that she has a flat tyre.

Alla stazione di servizio *At the service station*

Emilia asks for someone to change the flat tyre and to check the pressure in the others; she also wants the oil and the water checked and decides to have the car filled up with petrol. Maria Teresa suggests they have some refreshments while they are waiting.

Al bar *At the bar*

Maria Teresa has a coffee and some cake, Emilia a lemon tea and a roll whilst Paolo is not hungry and only wants a coffee.

L'arrivo *The arrival*

Giovanna welcomes her parents and Emilia and offers them something to drink. Emilia refuses as she has to go down straight away to move her car from the pedestrian crossing where she left it.

Part two: New words

l'aperitivo aperitif
 il benzinaio petrol pump attendant
 il biglietto ticket
 il biscotto biscuit
 il cappuccino white coffee
 il casellante toll-collector
 il casello toll-gate
 il clacson horn
 il costo cost
 il formaggio cheese
 il limone lemon
 il livello level
 il meccanico mechanic
 l'olio oil
 il panettone panettone (Milanese cake)
 il panino roll
 il pasto meal
 il pieno full tank
 il prezzo price
 il semaforo traffic-light
 il servizio service
 lo sterzo steering
 il tè tea
 il tè al limone lemon tea
 il tipo type
 il volante steering-wheel

l'acqua water
 la benzina petrol
 la cilindrata cubic capacity
 la fame hunger
 la fermata stop
 la fetta slice
 la gomma tyre
 la gomma a terra flat tyre
 la lira lira

la multa fine
 la pressione pressure
 la ragione reason
 la ruota wheel
 la ruota di scorta spare wheel
 la stazione station
 la stazione di servizio service station
 la strada road
 la striscia line
 le strisce pedonali pedestrian crossing
 la terra ground, earth

arrivato arrived
 incosciente idiotic
 molta (molto) much
 pedonale pedestrian
 regolato adjusted
 sicuro sure
 solito usual
 speciale special

andiamo (andare) let's go
 aumentare to increase, to rise
 cambiare to change
 ci sono there are
 dire to say
 hai fame? are you hungry?
 hai ragione you are right
 mangiare to eat
 mette (mettere) you put
 prendere to have, to fetch
 prendere la multa to get a fine
 ricordare to remember
 scendere to go down
 sei (essere) you are
 siete (essere) you are
 succede (succedere) it is happening

suonare to sound
tirare to pull
vuoi (volere) you want
vuoi dire (volere dire) you mean
vuole (volere) you want

ai at the
dei some
del, dell' of the
fuori outside
secondo according to
sulla, sulle on the
verso towards

avanti forward

dietro behind
in ritardo late
insieme together
mentre while
prima earlier

ben arrivati! welcome!
buongiorno good afternoon
che cosa c'è? what's the matter?
che incosciente! what an idiot!
fuori pasto between meals

milleduecento one thousand, two
hundred

Part two: Notes

Due ore prima al casello di Milano *Two hours earlier at the Milan toll-gate*

11 Quant'è? *How much is it?*

Quanto and è have here been run together and the o of quanto dropped altogether from the phrase.

12 Milleduecento lire. *One thousand, two hundred lire.*

Notice how we must run these numbers together in Italian; mille literally means *thousand*, whilst duecento literally means *two hundred* (Appendix 11).

13 Come aumentano i prezzi! *How prices are rising!*

Notice that in Italian we must invert this sentence after the exclamation Come!: *How!* and say *How are rising the prices!* Come aumentano i prezzi!

14 Che cosa vuoi dire? *What do you mean (lit. want to say)?*

a vuoi: (lit.) *you want* This is the tu form of the verb volere (Note 5a).

b dire: (lit.) *to say* This is another ire infinitive like inserire (L3, N19a).

c The expression vuoi dire which literally means *you want to say* can be translated by the verb mean in English.

15 Il costo del biglietto aumenta secondo la cilindrata della macchina. *The cost of the ticket increases according to the size of the car engine (lit. the cubic capacity of the car).*

a del biglietto: *of the ticket* Di and il always combine to form del; thus, di + il biglietto = del biglietto.

b della macchina: *of the car* Remember that di and la always combine to form della; thus, di + la macchina = della macchina (L3, N2).

16 Hai ragione. *You're right.*

This is a useful idiomatic expression to learn; it literally means *You have reason.*

17 Ma che cosa succede? Perché tutti suonano il clacson? *But what is happening? Why are they all (lit. Why all are) sounding their horns (lit. the horn)?*

succede: *is happening* This is the it form of the verb succedere: *to happen*. Like deve (L3, N12a), another ere verb, it ends typically with an e in the 3rd person singular form.

18 Avanti, avanti, per favore. Ci sono altre macchine dietro. *Come on, move forward (lit. Forward, forward,) please. There are other cars behind.*
Ci sono: *There are* This is the plural form of c'è: *there is*, e.g. *There is another car behind* would be translated as *C'è un'altra macchina dietro.*

Per la strada *On the way (lit. On the road)*

19 Che cosa c'è? *What's the matter?*

This is a useful idiomatic expression to learn.

20 Forse lo sterzo non è ben regolato. *Perhaps the steering isn't properly adjusted.*

a lo sterzo: *the steering* Notice once again lo used to translate *the* in front of a word beginning with s and another consonant (L3, N5b).

b ben: *properly (lit. well)* Bene: *well* is sometimes shortened to ben in conversation, to facilitate the smooth running of the sentence.

21 Sei sicura? *Are you sure?*

Sei?: *Are you?* This is the tu form of the verb essere: *to be*.

22 Sì, è quella davanti a destra. *Yes, it's the one in front on the right.*

quella: *the one* Notice once again the use of quella to mean *the one* (Note 3b). Here quella refers to the word gomma: *tyre*.

Alla stazione di servizio *At the service station*

23 Buongiorno. *Good afternoon (lit. Good day).*

Buongiorno is used all through the day, both in the morning and the afternoon until dusk, when buonasera: *good evening* is used.

24 Se mette la macchina qui sulla destra ... ecco: così va bene. *If you put the car here on the right ... there we are: that's fine.*

a mette: *you put* This is the lei form of the verb mettere: *to put*. As you can see, it once again typically ends with an e (Note 17).

b sulla destra: *on the right* We have already seen su and l' combining to form sull' (Note 1b); here we have su and la combining to form sulla, thus: su + la destra = sulla destra.

25 Può anche controllare la pressione delle altre gomme? E il livello dell'olio e dell'acqua? *Can you also check the pressure of the other tyres? And the oil and water levels? (lit. the level of the oil and of the water?)*

a Può?: *Can you?* This is the lei form of the verb potere: *to be able* that we first saw in Lesson 3 (N43).

- b **delle:** *of the* Remember that **di** and **le** combine to form **delle** (Note 4a).
- c **dell':** *of the* Remember that in the same way **di** and **l'** combine to form **dell'** (L3, N36a).
- 26 **Vuole anche benzina?** *Do you want petrol too?* (lit. *Do you want also petrol?*)
Vuole?: *Do you want?* This is the **you (lei)**, **he**, **she** and **it** form of the verb **volere:** *to want*. We have already seen **voglio:** *I want* (Note 5a) and **vuoi:** *you want* (Note 14a) in the **tu** form.
- 27 **Ah sì, il pieno per favore.** *Ah yes, fill her up please* (lit. *the full tank please*).
 This is a useful idiomatic expression to learn.
- 28 **Andiamo a prendere qualcosa, mentre aspettiamo.** *Let's go and have (lit. take) something while we're waiting.*
- a **Andiamo:** *Let's go* This is the **noi** form of the verb **andare:** *to go* which we have already seen in the forms **vado:** *I'm going* (L3, N6a), **vai:** *you go* (L3, N27a) and **va:** *it, he and she goes, you go (lei form)*. Here, like **riproviamo:** *let's try again* (L3, N24b) and **chiamiamo:** *let's call* (L3, N29b), **andiamo** is translated by *let's go*.
- b **Andiamo a prendere:** *Let's go and have* Notice that *to go and do something* or *go to do something* is translated by **andare a** followed by an infinitive in Italian. Maria Teresa said **Vado a telefonare:** *I'm going to phone*, whilst here she says **Andiamo a prendere qualcosa:** *Let's go and have something*.
- c **prendere:** *have* This is yet another **ere** verb and literally means *to take*. It is often used in Italian with food and drink; in a restaurant *What are you having, sir?* would be **Che cosa prende, signore?**

Al bar *At the bar*

- 29 **Allora, che cosa prendiamo?** *Well then, what shall we have?*
prendiamo?: *shall we have?* (lit. *are we having?*) This is the **noi** form of **prendere;** all regular **ere** verbs form their **noi** form in this way, e.g. *we put* is translated as **mettiamo** (from **mettere:** *to put*) whilst *we press* is **premiamo** (from **premere:** *to press* L3, N24c).
- 30 **Io prendo un cappuccino e una fetta di panettone. E voi cosa prendete?** *I'm having a white coffee and a slice of panettone. What are you having?* (lit. *And you what are you having?*)
- a **prendo:** *I'm having* This is the **io** form of **prendere**.
- b **un cappuccino:** *a white coffee* **Cappuccino** is an Italian speciality; it is made in Italian bars by adding boiling milk to strong, black **espresso** coffee under pressure. This produces a frothy effect on top of the **cappuccino**.
- c **Panettone** is a speciality of Milan. It is a light cake containing dried and

- candied fruit and has a distinctive large domed shape. It is traditionally eaten at Christmas time and sometimes at Easter when it is shaped like a dove, although it can be found in shops all year round.
- d **prendete:** *you are having* This is the **voi** form of **prendere;** all regular **ere** verbs form their **voi** form this way, i.e. with **ete** at the end.
- 31 **Io un caffè, e tu Emilia cosa vuoi?** *I'll have a coffee; what do you want Emilia* (lit. *and you Emilia, what do you want?*)
- a **un caffè:** *a coffee* Italians make a distinction between **cappuccino** and **caffè**. **Caffè** in a bar or restaurant is normally strong **espresso** coffee, served black in a small cup.
- b **vuoi:** *you want* Remember that this is the **tu** form of **volere:** *to want* (Note 14a).
- 32 **Un tè al limone e un panino al formaggio.** *A lemon tea and a cheese roll.*
- a **Un tè al limone:** *A lemon tea* Notice this special use of **al** in **al limone;** **al limone** has the sense of *made with lemon*, or *with lemon added*.
- b **un panino:** *a roll* In Italy **un panino** is normally a roll slit in the middle, containing cheese, ham, salame etc., but with no butter added.
- c **un panino al formaggio:** *a cheese roll* Notice again the special use of **al** in **al formaggio** (Note a above). Here **panino al formaggio** means *a roll with cheese added*.
- 33 **Perché non prendi un panino anche tu, Paolo? Non hai fame?** *Why don't you have a roll too, Paolo? Aren't you hungry?*
- a **Perché?:** *Why?* Notice how **perché?** is used to ask *why?*
- b **prendi:** *you have* (lit. *take*) This is the **tu** form of **prendere**. All regular **ere** verbs have the same endings as **prendere;** the forms you have seen so far are: **prendo:** *I have;* **prendi:** *you have (tu form);* **prende;** *you have (lei form), he, she, it has;* **prendiamo:** *we have;* **prendete:** *you have (voi form)*. Notice the distinctive **e** at the end of the 3rd person singular, and the **ete** at the end of the **voi** form (Appendix 9).
- c **hai fame:** *you are hungry* (lit. *you have hunger*) This is another very useful idiomatic expression like **hai ragione** (Note 16). The normal way to say you are hungry in Italian is **Ho fame:** (lit.) *I have hunger*.
- 34 **No, non ho molta fame ora.** *No, I'm not very hungry now* (lit. *I haven't much hunger now*).
molta fame: (lit.) *much hunger* Notice how the adjective **molto:** *much* must take on its feminine singular form to agree with **la fame:** *hunger*, which is a feminine noun.
- 35 **Ci sono dei biscotti speciali qui.** *There are some special biscuits here.*
- a **Ci sono:** *There are* Remember this expression (Note 18).
- b **dei:** *some* We have already seen that **dei** means *of the;* according to context however, it can, as here, also mean *some*.

- 36 No, non mi piace mangiare fuori pasto. *No, I don't like eating (lit. to eat) between meals (lit. outside meal).*
- a non mi piace: *I don't like* We have already seen that **mi piace** means *I like* (L3, N3a); notice now how to say *I don't like*.
- b non mi piace mangiare: *I don't like eating (lit. to eat)* In English we say *I like doing* something; in Italian you must say **Mi piace** + the infinitive of a verb, e.g. *I like driving: Mi piace guidare.*
- c fuori pasto: *between meals* This is an idiomatic expression.

L'arrivo *The arrival*

- 37 Ben arrivati! Siete un po' in ritardo. Come mai? *Welcome! You're a little late. How come?*
- a Ben arrivati!: *Welcome!* This literally means *Well arrived!* Notice how once again the final **e** of **bene** is dropped in conversation (Note 20b).
- b Siete: *You are* This is the **voi** form of the verb **essere** and completes all the present tense forms of this verb which can be found in Appendix 8.
- 38 Oh, le solite cose: il traffico, le fermate ai semafori, la coda al casello... *Oh, the usual things: the traffic, the stops at the traffic-lights, the queue at the toll-gate...*
- a le fermate: *the stops* *Fermata* is also the word used for a *bus stop* or *tram stop* etc.
- b ai semafori: *at the traffic-lights* The words **a:** *at* and **i:** *the* always combine to form **ai**. Thus, **a + i semafori = ai semafori.**
- 39 Io non voglio niente grazie. Vado a prendere le valigie. *I don't want anything, thank you. I'm going to get the cases.*
- a non voglio niente: *I don't want anything* Remember to use **non** and **niente** either side of the verb in this construction (L2, N29d).
- b prendere le valigie: *to get the cases* Notice the many varied uses of the verb **prendere**. We have seen **prendere la patente:** *to take the driving test* (Note 5b), **prendere qualcosa:** *to have something (to eat or to drink)* (Note 28c) and here **prendere le valigie:** *to get or fetch the cases.*
- 40 Se aspetti due minuti, andiamo insieme. *If you wait two minutes, we'll go (lit. we go) together.*
- andiamo: *we'll go* Notice how once again Italian uses a present tense where in English we use the future.
- 41 Sì, ma devo scendere subito, se no prendo la multa. *Yes, but I must go down straight away, otherwise (lit. if not) I'll get a fine (lit. the fine).*
- a scendere: *to go down* Emilia talks about going down because Giovanna, like many Italians, presumably lives in a flat which is above ground level.
- b prendo la multa: *I'll get a fine* Notice that this is yet another idiomatic expression which uses the verb **prendere**.

- 42 Sulle strisce pedonali. *On the pedestrian crossing (lit. On the pedestrian lines).*
- Sulle strisce: (lit.) *On the lines* The words **su:** *on* and **le:** *the* always combine to form **sulle:** *on the*. Thus, **su + le strisce pedonali = sulle strisce pedonali.**
- 43 Oh che incosciente! *Oh what an idiot! (lit. Oh, how idiotic!)*
- This is an exclamation of the same type as **che strano!:** *how strange!* (Note 10a). **Incosciente** literally means *mindless, unthinking.*

Part three: What happens

La macchina di Sandro *Sandro's car*

Enrico admires Sandro's new sports car. Sandro lets him try it but he finds the clutch rather stiff. Sandro explains that it is because it is new.

Le autostrade *The motorways*

A foreign driver stops an Italian lady to ask directions. She tells him which motorway he must take for Florence.

Part three: New words

un' a (fem.)	nuovo new
l'imbocco entrance	sto (stare) I'll stay
il lago (pl. i laghi) lake	ti piace you like
il sole sun	va (andare) you go
lo straniero foreigner	
	perché because
la frizione clutch	
	altro che! I'll say!
duro stiff	
nuovissimo very new	Napoli Naples

Part three: Notes

La macchina di Sandro *Sandro's car*

- 44 Che bella macchina, Sandro! *What a lovely car, Sandro!*
- Notice that to exclaim *What a...!* in Italian, we must say **Che...!** e.g. *What a short telephone call!* would become **Che breve telefonata!** in Italian.
- 45 Sì, nuovissima. Ti piace guidare le macchine sportive? *Yes, very new. Do you like driving sports cars?*
- a nuovissima: *very new* Here **nuovissima** refers to **macchina** which is why it ends in its feminine form of **a**. The **issimo** ending however can be

applied to most adjectives to translate *very*, e.g. *very good*: **bravissimo**, *very sure*: **sicurissimo** etc.

- b **Ti piace?**: *Do you like it* (lit. *Does it please you*)? **Ti piace** follows exactly the same construction as **mi piace**, except that it is used when you are talking to someone in the **tu** form.
- 46 **Io sto qui a destra e tu prendi il volante.** *I'll stay here on the right and you take the steering wheel.*
Io sto: *I'll stay* (lit. *I stay*) This is the **io** form of the verb **stare**: *to be* or *to stay* which we saw in Lesson 2 (Note 38).
- 47 **È solo perché è nuova.** *It's only because it's new.*
perché: *because* **Perché?** with a question mark following it means *Why?* (Note 33a) whilst **perché** with no question mark means *because*, e.g. **Perché compri quella macchina, Paolo?** **Perché è nuova**: *Why are you buying that car, Paolo? Because it is new.*

Le autostrade *The motorways*

- 48 **Uno straniero** *A foreigner*
 Notice once again **uno** used instead of **un** with a word beginning with **s** and another consonant (L3, N20).
- 49 **Un'italiana** *An Italian woman*
A is always translated by **un'** in front of a feminine noun beginning with a vowel.
- 50 **Siamo all'imbocco dell'Autostrada dei Laghi.** *We are at the entrance to the Autostrada dei Laghi* (lit. *the entrance of the Motorway of the Lakes*).
- a **Autostrada dei Laghi**: *Motorway of the Lakes* The Lakes referred to are those on the Italian-Swiss border, north of Milan, e.g. Lakes Como and Maggiore, etc.
- b **Laghi**: *Lakes* The singular form of this word is **lago**. You would therefore normally expect the masculine plural form to be spelt **lagi**; this would however alter the pronunciation of the word ending. In order to preserve the hard **g** sound at the end of the word, we must therefore add an **h** after the **g** in the plural form, making **laghi**.
- 51 **Dove porta quest'autostrada?** *Where does this motorway go to?*
Dove porta?: *Where does it go to?* Notice this idiomatic usage of **portare**: (lit.) *to carry* or *to bring*.
- 52 **Lei dove va?** *Where are you going?* (lit. *You, where are you going?*)
va: *you are going* This is the 3rd person singular (i.e. *he, she, it* and polite *you* form) of the verb **to go**.
- 53 **Allora deve prendere l'Autostrada del Sole ...** *Well then, you must take the Autostrada del Sole* (lit. *the Motorway of the Sun*) ...
L'Autostrada del Sole is the name given to the motorway that runs south from Milan through Florence, Rome and Naples down to the South of Italy.

Lezione cinque

Lesson five

A Torino

In Turin

Part one: What happens

Franco Moretti introduces himself. An old friend of Paolo, he lives in a small villa on a hill outside Turin. He and his wife Lucia are expecting Paolo and Maria Teresa for lunch; he makes sure everything is ready and as it is so hot, closes the shutters.

Part one: New words

l'albero tree
 l'amico (pl. **gli amici**) friend
 il giardino garden
 il lungofiume river banks
 l'ospite (pl. **gli ospiti**) guest
 il piano storey, floor
 il pranzo lunch
 il quarto quarter
 il vino wine

la casa house
 la collina hill
 l'ombra shade
 la persiana shutter, blind
 la rosa rose
 la villetta small villa
 la vista view

caldo warm, hot
 circondato surrounded
 inglese English
 nostro our
 pronto ready
 quinto fifth

vecchio old

chiudere to close
 fa caldo it's hot, it's warm
 possiamo (potere) we can
 vedere to see

da by
 degli some
 sui, sul over the
 tra within

perciò so, therefore

a due piani on two floors
 all'inglese English-style
 all'ombra in the shade
 di ritorno back, returned
 in collina on a hill
 in giardino in/into the garden

è l'una it's one o'clock
 è l'una e un quarto it's a quarter past one

il Po the river Po

Part one: Notes

- 1 **Abito a Torino con mia moglie e le mie due figlie.** *I live in Turin with my wife and my two daughters.*
le mie due figlie: *my two daughters* **Le mie** is the plural form of **mia** and **la mia**, e.g. *my sister*: **mia sorella** but *my sisters*: **le mie sorelle**; *my car*: **la mia macchina** but *my cars*: **le mie macchine**, (L4, N1a).

- 2 **La nostra casa è una villetta a due piani.** *Our house is a small villa on two floors.*
- a **La nostra casa:** *Our house* The masculine singular form of **nostra** is **nostro** and its two plural forms are **nostri** (masc.) and **nostre** (fem.). **Nostro** follows the same pattern as **mio** i.e. it is always preceded by the Italian word for *the* except when it refers to one member of the family, e.g. *our car*: **la nostra macchina** but *our daughter*: **nostra figlia**.
- b **una villetta:** *a small villa* The ending **etto** or **etta** on a noun in Italian can often be translated as *small* in English, e.g. *a house*: **una casa** but *a small house*: **una casetta**.
- c **a due piani:** *on two floors* The Italian word for *floor* or *storey* is **piano**.
- 3 **È circondata da un giardino all'inglese con rose e molti alberi.** *It is surrounded by an English-style garden with roses and many trees.*
- a **circondata da:** *surrounded by* Notice that this is yet another meaning of **da**.
- b **all'inglese:** *English-style* This is a useful idiom to remember. To say that something is *in the fashion* or *in the style* of a country or a person in Italian, we must use **alla** (or **all'** in front of words beginning with a vowel) followed by the feminine form of the adjective, e.g. *Italian-style*: **all'italiana**, *in the style of Milan*: **alla milanese**, *Dutch-fashion*: **all'olandese**, etc.
- c **molti alberi:** *many trees* **Molti** is the plural form of **molto**: *much* (L4, N34).
- 4 **È in collina e perciò abbiamo una bella vista sul Po e sui giardini del lungofiume.** *It's on a hill and so (lit. therefore) we have a lovely view over (lit. onto) the Po and (lit. onto) the gardens along (lit. of) the river-bank.*
- a **in collina:** *on a hill* Notice the idiomatic usage of **in** in this phrase.
- b **sul Po:** *over (lit. on) the Po* The River Po is Italy's largest river and flows through Turin in the North-West, eastwards across Northern Italy to the Adriatic where it empties into the sea in a wide delta. The Po valley is a wide fertile plain, very important to Italy's agriculture. *The Po* is **il Po** in Italian and in this sentence **su** and **il** combine to form **sul**; thus, **su** + **il Po** = **sul Po**.
- c **sui giardini:** *over (lit. on) the gardens* The words **su** and **i** always combine to form **sui**, thus **su** + **i giardini** = **sui giardini**.
- 5 **Oggi abbiamo degli amici a pranzo: Paolo e Maria Teresa di ritorno dall'Olanda.** *Today we have some friends to lunch: Paolo and Maria Teresa back from Holland.*
- a **degli amici:** *some friends* The singular of **amici** is **amico**: *The friend* is therefore **l'amico** in Italian, but the plural of **l'amico** is **gli amici**. **L'** in

front of a masculine noun becomes **gli** in the plural. In Lesson 4 we saw **dei** used to mean *some* (N35b); here, **di** and **gli** combine to form **degli**, used here too with the meaning of *some*.

- b **amici:** *friends* Unlike **lago** whose plural is **laghi** (L4, N50b), **amico** becomes **amici** in the plural, i.e. it does not add an **h** after the **c**. This has the effect of changing the hard **c** sound in **amico** to the soft *chee* sound in **amici**.
- c **pranzo:** *lunch* In most parts of Italy **pranzo** is the word used for the midday meal; in a few regions however, it is also sometimes used for the evening meal.
- d **di ritorno:** *back, returned* This is an idiomatic phrase.
- e **dall'Olanda:** *from Holland* *Holland* is translated as **l'Olanda** in Italian; *from Holland* is therefore **da** + **l'Olanda**. The words **da** and **l'** combine to form **dall'** giving **dall'Olanda**.
- 6 **Vediamo un po':** *Let's see (lit. a little):*
Here Franco is talking to himself. **Vediamo** comes from the **ere** verb **vedere**.
- 7 **Ah, devo chiudere le persiane: fa molto caldo oggi.** *Ah, I must close the shutters: it's very hot today.*
- a **chiudere:** *(to) close* Notice that this is a new **ere** verb.
- b **le persiane:** *the shutters* Most Italian houses and apartments have **persiane**: *shutters* or *blinds* which are not only for keeping out the light when you want to sleep, but also for keeping out the heat of the day in summer; by closing the shutters in the morning it is possible to keep the interior of a room cool all day. **Persiane** can be either of the type that open outwards like wooden doors outside the window or of the more modern type i.e. a flexible blind that can be rolled up and down in front of the window.
- c **fa molto caldo oggi:** *it's very hot today* The expression **fa caldo**: *it's hot* is a very useful idiom to learn and remember. **Fa** is the 3rd person singular (i.e. the *it, he, she* and *you*) form of the verb **fare**: (lit.) *to make*.
- 8 **Dopo pranzo possiamo andare in giardino all'ombra.** *After lunch we can go into the garden in the shade.*
possiamo: *we can* This is the **noi** form of the verb **potere**: *to be able*.
- 9 **È già l'una e un quarto.** *It's already a quarter past one.*
È l'una e un quarto: *It's a quarter past one* You already know **Sono le cinque:** *It's five o'clock* and **Sono le dieci:** *It's ten o'clock* etc. *One o'clock* however is the one exception to this pattern; we must use **È**: *It is* and not **Sono** because we are only talking about one hour (**l'una**) and not five (**le cinque**) or ten (**le dieci**) etc. In the same way we must use **l'** with **una** and not **le** because **una** is singular. Remember, *It's one o'clock:* **È l'una**. To say that it is *a quarter past* an hour we must add the words **e**

un quarto in Italian. Thus, *It's a quarter past three*: Sono le tre e un quarto, but *It's a quarter past one*: È l'una e un quarto.

- 10 Tra poco arrivano gli ospiti. *The guests are arriving soon* (lit. *Soon arrive the guests*).
- a Tra poco: *Soon* Tra is completely interchangeable with fra (L1, N14a); tra poco therefore means exactly the same as fra poco and either expression can be used to replace the other.
- b gli ospiti: *the guests* The singular form of ospiti is l'ospite; as with gli amici (Note 5a) l'ospite becomes gli ospiti in the plural.

Part two: What happens

Alla fine del pranzo *At the end of lunch*

After lunch, they decide to have coffee and liqueurs in the garden. Maria Teresa offers to help Lucia wash up, but Lucia has a dish-washer. The two women clear the table together and Maria Teresa takes out the tray with the coffee cups.

La casa dei Moretti *The Morettis' house*

Lucia shows Maria Teresa over the house, which she admires very much. They talk about their children.

In giardino *In the garden*

Franco and Paolo look round the garden; Paolo remarks how lucky they are to have a garden and asks if a house of that type costs a lot.

È ora di andare. *It's time to go.*

At a quarter to five Maria Teresa and Paolo decide to go as they still have a few things to do before the shops shut at 8.00. Paolo telephones for a taxi to take them into the city centre.

Part two: New words

l'affitto rent
l'appartamento flat
il bagno bathroom
il bicchiere glass
il bisogno need
il centro centre
il corridoio corridor
il fiore flower

il fresco cool
il giro tour, trip
il letto bed
il liquore liqueur
il marito husband
il padre father
il pepe pepper
il periodo period

il piano di sopra floor above
il pianterreno ground floor
il piatto dish, plate
i ragazzi children
il sale salt
il soggiorno living-room
lo spazio space
lo studio study
il tavolino small table
il taxi taxi
il vaporetto motor-boat
il vassoio tray
il verde greenery
lo zio (pl. gli zii) uncle

la bambina child, baby (fem.)
la camera da letto bedroom
la commissione errand
la cucina kitchen
la fabbrica (pl. fabbriche) factory
la fine end
la fotografia photograph
la guida guide
la guida telefonica telephone directory
la lavapiatti dish-washer
la periferia outskirts
le posate cutlery
la sala room
la sala da pranzo dining-room
la sedia chair
la sinistra left
la stanza room
la tazza cup
la verità truth

fortunato lucky
gentile kind
grande large, big
ogni every, each
stanco (pl. stanchi) tired
suo (m. pl. suoi) your
tanto so much

aiutare to help
andare to go
avere to have
avere bisogno di to need
avete (avere) you have
coltivare to grow
costare to cost

curare to look after
dobbiamo (dovere) we must
fa (fare) she does, she makes
facciamo (fare) we do, we make
facciamo più in fretta we'll get there faster

faccio (fare) I do
fanno (fare) they're making/doing
guardare to look
lasciare to leave
lavare to wash
lavare i piatti to do the washing-up
le piace you like
permettere to allow, to permit
portare to carry
restare to stay
sparecchiare to clear away
stiamo (stare) we are
vivere to live
vogliamo (volere) we want
vogliono (volere) they want
volete (volere) you want

molto much, a lot
pochissimo very little

ad = a to, at
degli of the
delle some
sul on the

al fresco in the cool
alla periferia on the outskirts
ancora still
ancora un po' a little longer
così so
di sopra above
fuori outside
in centro in the centre
in fondo al corridoio at the end of the corridor
intorno around
prima (di) before
prima delle otto before eight o'clock
quasi almost

a dir la verità to tell the truth
sono le cinque meno un quarto it's a quarter to five
tutti e due both of them

Alla fine del pranzo *At the end of lunch*

- 11 Un liquore, signora, Paolo? *A liqueur, signora, Paolo?*
 a Un liquore: *A liqueur* Notice that **liquore** can mean both *liqueur* and *spirit* (L1, N41).
 b Notice that whilst Franco addresses Paolo by his Christian name because he is an old friend, he addresses Maria Teresa as **signora** i.e. he will use the *lei* form of *you* when speaking to her.
- 12 Faccio io, Franco, mentre tu porti le sedie fuori. *I'll do it, Franco, while you take (lit. carry) the chairs outside.*
 a Faccio io: *I'll do it* Faccio is the 1st person singular form, i.e. the **io** form, of the verb **fare**: *to do*.
 b Notice how **io**: *I* and **tu**: *you* are used in this sentence to emphasize that while one person does one thing, the other does something else (L3, N27a). It is also for the sake of emphasis that **io** is placed after **faccio** in this sentence.
- 13 Posso aiutare a lavare i piatti? *Can I help wash up? (lit. Can I help wash the plates?)*
 a aiutare a: *help* In Italian, *to help* do something is translated by **aiutare** a followed by an infinitive form, here **lavare**: *to wash*. For example, *I'm helping to make the coffee*: **Aiuto a fare il caffè**.
 b Learn the useful expression **lavare i piatti**: *to do the washing-up, to wash up*.
- 14 No signora, grazie: ho la lavapiatti. *No thank you signora: I've got a (lit. the) dish-washer.*
 a ho la lavapiatti: *I've got a dish-washer* Remember that Italians use the word for *the* instead of *a* to indicate that they *have* or *possess* something (L4, N2b).
 b Notice that as the two women do not know each other very well, they address each other as **signora** and speak to each other in the *lei* form of *you*.
- 15 Allora, mettiamo le posate, i piatti e i bicchieri sul carrello. *Well then, let's put the cutlery, the dishes and the glasses on the trolley.*
 a mettiamo: *let's put* This is the **noi** (1st person plural) form of the verb **mettere**.
 b sul carrello: *on the trolley* Notice again how **su** and **il** combine to form **sul**; **su + il carrello** = **sul carrello**: *on the trolley* (Note 4b).

La casa dei Moretti *The Morettis' house*

- 16 La casa dei Moretti *The Morettis' house (lit. the house of the Moretti)*
 a La casa: *The house* Notice how the word **casa** can be translated as either *house* or *home*, according to context (L3, N38).

- b dei Moretti: *of the Morettis* In English we would say *the Morettis' house*; notice how **dei Moretti** is sufficient in Italian.
- 17 Com'è grande questo soggiorno! *How big this living-room is! (lit. How is big this living-room!)*
- 18 Le piace? *Do you like it? (lit. It pleases you?)*
 We have already seen **ti piace?**: *do you like?* used when you address someone in the **tu** (i.e. 2nd person singular) form (L4, N45b). **Le piace** has exactly the same construction but is used when you address someone in the *lei* form.
- 19 Sì, è bello avere tanto spazio intorno. Qui al pianterreno quante stanze avete? *Yes, it's nice having plenty of space (lit. it's beautiful to have so much space around). Here on the ground floor how many rooms have you got?*
 a avere: *to have* Here finally is the infinitive form of the very irregular verb **avere**: *to have*.
 b quante stanze?: *how many rooms?* The word **quanto** used alone means *how much?* (L2, N57a) but followed by a noun it is used as an adjective to ask *how much* or *how many* of something; in this latter case, like other adjectives, the ending on **quanto** changes to agree with the noun it is describing; e.g. *how many cars?*: **quante macchine?**, *how many friends?*: **quanti amici?** etc.
 c avete: *you have* This is the **voi** (i.e. 2nd person plural) form of the verb **avere**: *to have* and completes the present tense forms of this verb (see Appendix 8). Maria Teresa uses the **voi** form of the verb because she is here referring to Lucia and her husband; remember that the **voi** form of the verb must be used when you address two or more people (L2, N39a).
- 20 Il soggiorno, la sala da pranzo, la cucina, e lo studio di mio marito. *The living-room, the dining-room, the kitchen and my husband's study.*
 lo studio: *the study* The Italian word **studio** corresponds to all senses of the English word **study** but has the additional meaning of a room or rooms from which a professional person carries on his work; this can be from his home or from an office address. Doctors, architects, lawyers, photographers, dentists etc. all have their **studio** from which they work.
- 21 Sono le sue bambine in questa fotografia? *Are they your children (lit. little girls) in this photograph?*
 a le sue: *your* This is the feminine plural form of **il suo**: *your* which is used when you address someone as *lei*; e.g. *your car*: **la sua macchina**; *your passport*: **il suo passaporto**.
 b bambine: *children* Una **bambina** is generally used to indicate *a baby girl* or *a girl* up to the age of six or seven; it is however sometimes used for girls who are older. In the same way, **un bambino** is used for *a small boy*, whilst the masculine plural form **bambini** can be used to indicate *young children* in general.

- 22 **A Stresa. Prendono il vaporetto e fanno il giro del lago.** *To Stresa. They're taking a motor-boat and going round the lake.*
- a Stresa is situated on Lake Maggiore to the North-East of Turin and is well-known as a lake-side holiday resort.
- b **Prendono:** *They're taking* Like all regular *ere* verbs, **prendere:** *to take* ends with **ono** in the *they* (3rd person plural) form.
- c **fanno:** (lit.) *they're making* This is the *they* (3rd person plural) form of the verb **fare:** *to make, to do*.
- d **fanno il giro del lago:** (lit.) *they're making the tour of the lake* The expression **fare il giro** is idiomatic and essentially means *to go round or make a tour* of something. The lake Lucia refers to is Lake Maggiore.
- 23 **E i suoi ragazzi come stanno? Sua figlia ha ancora esami?** *And how are your children? Has your daughter still got exams?*
- a **i suoi ragazzi:** *your children* The word for *your:* **il suo** (Note 21a) follows the normal rule for adjectives except in the masculine plural form which we have here: **i suoi**.
- b **ragazzi:** *children* The singular form of this word **ragazzo** literally means *boy*, but because Lucia wants to refer to Maria Teresa's children, i.e. one boy and one girl, she must use the masculine plural form, **ragazzi**. She uses **ragazzi** rather than **bambini** because Maria Teresa's children are grown up.
- c **come stanno?:** *how are they?* Remember that **stanno** is the 3rd person plural form of the verb **stare:** *to be* (L2, N44a).
- 24 **No, è quasi alla fine. Ma tutti e due sono un po' stanchi in questo periodo. Hanno bisogno di vacanze.** *No, she's almost finished (lit. almost at the end). But both of them are rather (lit. a little) tired at the moment (lit. in this period). They need (lit. they have need of) holidays.*
- a **tutti e due:** *both of them* This is a useful idiomatic expression to learn. Other similar expressions are **tutti e tre:** *all three of them*; **tutti e quattro:** *all four of them* etc.
- b **stanchi:** *tired* The singular form of this word is **stanco**. As with the plural form of **lago:** *lake (laghi)*, an **h** is inserted after the final consonant (c) in the plural form to indicate in writing that the hard sound of the consonant is preserved (L4, N50b).
- c **Hanno bisogno di:** *They need* (lit. *they have need of*) This is another idiomatic expression using the verb **avere:** *to have*. Others we have seen so far are **hai ragione:** *you're right* (L4, N16) and **hai fame:** *you're hungry* (L4, N33c).

In giardino In the garden

- 25 **No, fa quasi tutto mia moglie.** *No, my wife does almost everything* (lit. *all*). **fa:** *does* This is the 3rd person singular form of **fare** which we have already seen in idiomatic expressions like **quanto fa?:** *how much is it?* (L2,

- N57a) and **fa caldo:** *it's hot* (Note 7c). Notice how **mia moglie:** *my wife* comes at the end of this sentence to give greater emphasis.
- 26 **Siete fortunati ad avere un giardino. Quasi tutti a Torino vivono in appartamenti.** *You're lucky to have a garden. Almost everyone (lit. all) in Turin lives (lit. live) in flats.*
- a **siete:** *you are* Remember that this is the **voi** form of **essere:** *to be* (L4, N37b).
- b **fortunati ad avere:** *lucky to have* To translate *lucky to* in Italian, we must say **fortunato a**; in this sentence you would therefore expect *lucky to have* to be translated by **fortunati a avere**. For the sake of clear pronunciation and the smooth running of the sentence, however, a **d** is added after **a** so that the two words **a** and **avere** are quite distinct. A followed by a word beginning with a vowel often becomes **ad**, but the rule is not strictly observed all the time.
- c **vivono:** *they live* This is the *they* form of the regular *ere* verb **vivere:** *to live* and like **prendono:** *they take*, ends in **ono** (Note 22b).
- 27 **Sì, purtroppo in centro non c'è spazio per il verde, e alla periferia ci sono tante fabbriche.** *Yes, unfortunately there isn't any space for greenery in the centre and on the outskirts there are so many factories.*
- a **il verde:** *greenery* (lit. *the green*) **Verde** literally means *green*; **il verde** therefore means *greenery*.
- b Notice that the singulars **tanto** and **tanta** are translated as *so much* and that the plurals **tanti** and **tante** are translated as *so many*.
- c **fabbriche:** *factories* The singular form of this word is **fabbrica**. In the plural, it follows the same rule as **stanco** (Note 24b).
- 28 **A dir la verità questa è degli zii di Lucia. Vogliono pochissimo d'affitto.** *To tell the truth, this one belongs to (lit. is of) Lucia's uncles. They want very little rent (lit. of rent).*
- a **A dir la verità:** *To tell the truth* This is a useful expression to learn and remember.
- b **degli zii:** (lit.) *of the uncles* All masculine nouns beginning with **z** are preceded by the definite article **lo** in the singular which as you know becomes **gli** in the plural. Thus, **lo zio:** *the uncle* and **gli zii:** *the uncles*. To say *of the uncles*, we must combine **di** and **gli zii**, giving us **degli zii**, since **di** and **gli** always combine to form **degli**. In the same way that **bambini** (Note 21b) and **ragazzi** (Note 23b) can indicate *boys and girls*, so **zii** can mean *uncles and aunts*.
- c **Vogliono:** *They want* This is the *they* (i.e. 3rd person plural) form of the irregular *ere* verb **volere:** *to want*.
- d **pochissimo:** *very little* We have already seen the expression **un po'** which is the abbreviated form of **un poco:** *a little* (L2, N47a). **Pochissimo** therefore means *very little*, the **issimo** ending being translated as *very* and

an extra **h** being inserted between the **c** and the **i** of **pochissimo** to indicate that the hard **c** sound of **poco** is preserved.

È ora di andare. *It's time to go.*

- 29 **È ora di andare.** *It's time to go.*
 a **È ora di:** *It's time to* This is a useful idiomatic expression to learn; it is always followed by an infinitive.
 b **andare:** *to go* Notice the infinitive form of this irregular verb.
- 30 **Sono le cinque meno un quarto, Paolo. Dobbiamo proprio andare.** *It's a quarter to five, Paolo. We really must go (lit. we must really go).*
 a Notice that to say *a quarter to* the hour we must use the expression **meno un quarto:** (lit.) *minus a quarter*. Thus, *a quarter to eight* would be **le otto meno un quarto** etc.
 b **Dobbiamo:** *We must* This is the 1st person plural (i.e. *we*) form of the irregular verb **dovere:** *to have to*.
- 31 **Stiamo così bene qui al fresco.** *It's so nice (lit. We are so well) here in the cool.*
 a **Stiamo:** *We are* This is the 1st person plural form of the irregular verb **stare:** *to be*.
 b **al fresco:** *in the cool* Like **verde:** *green* (Note 27a) **fresco** can either be an adjective meaning *cool* or *fresh*, or it can be used as a noun as it is here in **al fresco:** *in the cool*.
- 32 **Non volete restare ancora un po'?** *Don't you want to stay a little longer (lit. still a little)?*
volete: *you want* This is the 2nd person plural (i.e. *voi*) form of the irregular **ere** verb **volere:** *to want*.
- 33 **Sei molto gentile, ma vogliamo ancora fare delle commissioni prima delle otto.** *You're very kind, but we want to do a bit more shopping (lit. still some errands) before eight o'clock.*
 a **vogliamo:** *we want* This is the 1st person plural (i.e. *noi*) form of **volere:** *to want*; you now know all the forms of this verb in the present tense (see Appendix 10).
 b **delle commissioni:** (lit.) *some errands* We have already seen **delle** meaning *of the* (L4, N4a); here however **delle** has the meaning of *some* as in **degli amici:** *some friends* (Note 5a) and **dei biscotti:** *some biscuits* (L4, N35b).
 c **commissioni:** (lit.) *errands* **Fare delle commissioni** is really more general than merely doing shopping; it could also include such things as going to the post-office or the bank, seeing a lawyer or collecting dry-cleaning etc.
 d **prima delle otto:** *before eight o'clock* **Before** is here translated by **prima di** and *eight o'clock* by **le otto**; as you would expect, **prima di + le otto** = **prima delle otto:** *before eight o'clock*. In Italy the shops normally

remain open until 7.30 or 8.00 p.m. Opening times vary from city to city but in general they are from 8.30 or 9.00 a.m. to 12.30 or 1.00 p.m. There is then normally a long break for lunch with shops reopening between 2.30 and 4.00 and continuing trading until 7.30 or 8.00 p.m.

- 34 **Prendete il tram per andare in centro?** *Are you catching (lit. taking) a tram to go into the centre?*
Prendete: (lit.) *Are you taking?* This is the 2nd person plural (i.e. *voi*) form of the regular **ere** verb **prendere:** *to take* and completes your knowledge of the regular **ere** verbs in the present tense (see Appendix 9). Notice that the 2nd person plural form of regular **ere** verbs ends with the letters *ete*, e.g. **voi prendete, voi mettete**, etc.
- 35 **No, con il taxi facciamo più in fretta.** *No, we'll get there faster by taxi (lit. with the taxi we do more quickly).*
 a Remember that we can say both **taxi** and **tassi** in Italian (L2, N56a).
 b **facciamo:** (lit.) *we do* This is the **noi** (i.e. 1st person plural) form of the irregular verb **fare:** *to do*.
 c Try to learn the useful expression **fare in fretta:** *to do something quickly*.
- 36 **No, bisogna telefonare.** *No, you must telephone (lit. it is necessary to telephone).*
 Remember that **bisogna:** *it is necessary* exists only in the impersonal 3rd person singular form (L3, N24c).
- 37 **Prego: il telefono è in fondo al corridoio.** *Please go ahead: the telephone is at the end of the corridor (lit. at the corridor).*

Part three: What happens

Un invito a cena *An invitation to dinner*

Mrs. Carrara invites Mrs. Zanini and her husband to dinner the following evening to arrive at about 8.15.

Un taxi *A taxi*

A mother is going to phone for a taxi but her daughter suggests taking the tram; the mother however prefers the taxi because it is faster.

Part three: New words

l'invito invitation

la sera evening

necessario necessary

cercare to look for

fai (fare) you are doing

invitare to invite

arrivederci goodbye

fuori città out of town

Part three: Notes

Un taxi A taxi

- 38 Che cosa fai mamma? *What are you doing mummy?*
 fai: *you are doing* This is the 2nd person singular (i.e. *tu*) form of *fare*:
 to do.
- 39 Cerco il numero di telefono dei taxi. *I'm looking for the phone number for (lit. of) the taxis.*
- a Cerco: *I'm looking for* This is the 1st person singular of the regular *are* verb *cercare*: *to look for*; notice that with *cercare* there is no extra word to translate *for*.
- b dei taxi: *of the taxis* Notice that the plural form of *il taxi* is *i taxi*.

Lezione sei

Lesson six

Progetti di viaggio

Travel plans

Part one: What happens

Alberto Tosi is on a train travelling from Rome to Turin. He describes his sister and his parents. As it is so hot on the train, he cannot wait to be off to the mountains with the rest of the family.

Part one: New words

il caldo heat
 i capelli hair
 il complimento compliment
 l'occhio (pl. gli occhi) eye
 il progetto plan
 il rapido express (train)
 lo scompartimento compartment
 il treno train

la nuvola cloud
 la testa head

alto tall

azzurro blue
 castano chestnut-coloured
 elegante elegant, smart
 occupato busy
 pazzo mad
 sesto sixth
 simpatico nice, likeable
 vanitoso vain

andare pazzo per to be mad about
 ci vogliono are necessary
 conoscere to know
 dimenticare to forget

finisce (finire) finishes
 godere to enjoy
 morire to die
 partire to leave
 non vedere l'ora di to be unable to
 wait to

lei she
 lui he

che which

nelle, nello in the

al completo completely

non ... più not ... any more, no longer
 salve! hello!
 uffa! for goodness' sake!

Part one: Notes

- 1 Salve! Sono Alberto. Finalmente arrivo anch'io a Torino. *Hello! I'm Alberto. At last I'm arriving in Turin too.*
- a Salve!: *Hello!* This is an informal way of saying *hello!* or *hi!*
- b anch'io: (lit.) *also I* Anche followed by *io* always abbreviates to *anch'io*.
- 2 E così conoscete la famiglia Tosi al completo. *And now you know the whole Tosi family (lit. And thus you know the Tosi family completely).*
- a conoscete: *you know* This is the *voi* form of the *ere* verb *conoscere*: *to know* and therefore ends with the letters *ete* (L5, N34). Alberto uses the *voi* form of the verb because he is addressing not just one, but all the readers of this course.
- b al completo: *completely, in its entirety, in its complete form*
- 3 Mia sorella è una bella ragazza alta, con i capelli castani e gli occhi azzurri. *My sister is a tall, good-looking (lit. beautiful) girl with chestnut-coloured hair and blue eyes.*
- a con i capelli castani e gli occhi azzurri: *with chestnut-coloured hair and blue eyes.* When you are describing parts of the body in Italian, you must always use the definite article (i.e. *il, la, i, le* etc.) in front of the noun; thus *I have blue eyes* is translated as **Ho GLI occhi azzurri** in Italian.
- b i capelli: *hair* In English *hair* is singular; in Italian it is plural.
- c gli: (lit.) *the* Gli is not only the plural of *lo* (L4, N6) but also that of *l'* when followed by a masculine noun beginning with a vowel.
- d gli occhi: *eyes* The singular form of *occhi* is *occhio*; like *bagaglio* (pl. *bagagli*) and *figlio* (pl. *figli*) (L2, N47b) it makes its plural by dropping the final *o* and not replacing it with *i*, i.e. *occhi*.
- 4 va pazza per i vestiti eleganti e i complimenti. *she's mad about (lit. she goes mad for) smart clothes and compliments.*
- a va pazza per: *she's mad about* (lit. *she goes mad for*) Notice the idiomatic usage of *andare pazzo*: *to go mad* in this sentence.
- b vestiti: *clothes* Whilst *vestiti* in the plural means *clothes* in general, *vestito* in the singular means a *dress* when talking about a woman and a *suit* when talking about a man.

- 5 **Papà e mamma sono molto simpatici.** *Dad and mum are very nice.*
 a **molto:** *very* When **molto** means *very*, it never changes its form.
 b **simpatici:** *nice, likeable* The singular form of **simpatici** is **simpatico** which follows the same pattern as **amico** (pl. **amici**) (L5, N5b).
- 6 **Lui ha sempre la testa nelle nuvole.** *He has always got his head in the clouds.*
 a **Lui:** *He* Here for the first time we meet the word for *he*. It is essential in this context as Alberto is pointing out the different characteristics of his parents, saying that while he (his father) does one thing, she (his mother) does another.
 b **la testa:** *his* (lit. *the*) *head* Notice once again that the definite article (here *la*) must be used when you are describing a part of the body (Note 3a).
 c **nelle nuvole:** *in the clouds* The Italian word for *in* is **in**; however, like certain other prepositions we have seen (e.g. **a**, **da**, **di**, **su**) **in** also combines with the definite article in a sentence. **In** and **le** combine to form **nelle**, thus **in** + **le nuvole** = **nelle nuvole**.
- 7 **Lei è sempre occupata a ricordare quello che lui dimentica.** *She is always busy remembering what (lit. that which) he forgets.*
 a **Lei:** *She* Here too for the first time we meet the word for *she*. Although it is the same word as for *you* in the polite form, it is never confused with **lei:** *you* as the context always reveals which meaning is intended.
 b **quello che:** *what* (lit. *that which*) Notice that in sentences of this type we cannot just use *what*: **che** but must say **quello che:** *that which*. This is because here **quello che lui dimentica** has the sense of *the things he forgets*, i.e. it refers to something vague and not specific.
 c **lui dimentica:** *he forgets*. Once again **lui:** *he* is used to make the meaning of the sentence completely clear (Note 6a).
- 8 **Uffa! Questo viaggio in treno non finisce più.** *For goodness' sake! This train journey is never-ending.*
 a **Uffa!:** *For goodness' sake!* This is an exclamation of boredom and impatience.
 b **non finisce più:** *is never-ending* (lit. *doesn't finish any more*). **Finisce** is the 3rd person singular form of the verb **finire:** *to finish*. Because of its infinitive we term this an *ire* verb.
 c **non ... più:** *no more, no longer* To say *not ... any more* or *no longer* in Italian, we must place **non** in front of the verb and **più** after it; e.g. *I don't go to school any more:* **Non vado più a scuola.**
- 9 **Da Roma a Torino ci vogliono otto ore con il rapido.** *The express takes eight hours from Rome to Turin* (lit. *From Rome to Turin are necessary eight hours with the express*).
ci vogliono: *are necessary* Although **vogliono** comes from the verb

volere: *to want*, **ci vogliono** is an idiom that has nothing to do with *to want* in meaning. Further examples of its use are **Ci vogliono sei gettoni per la telefonata:** *You need six telephone tokens for the phone-call* (lit. *Are necessary six telephone tokens for the phone-call*). **Quanti anni di studio ci vogliono per prendere la laurea?:** *How many years' study does it take* (lit. *are necessary*) *to get a degree?*

- 10 **E nello scompartimento fa un caldo da morire.** *And in the compartment it's stiflingly hot* (lit. *it's a heat to die from*).
 a **nello scompartimento:** *in the compartment* The **compartimento** is **lo scompartimento** in Italian as the noun begins with the letters **sc**; **in** and **lo** combine to form **nello**, thus **in** + **lo scompartimento** = **nello scompartimento** (Note 6c).
 b **fa un caldo da morire:** *it's stiflingly hot* (lit. *it's a heat to die from*) We have already seen the expression **fa caldo:** *it's hot* (L5, N7c). This is another similar idiomatic expression giving the idea of extreme heat.
- 11 **Non vedo l'ora di partire per la montagna e di godere un po' di fresco.** *I can't wait to leave for the mountains and to be cool* (lit. *to enjoy a bit of coolness*).
 a **Non vedo l'ora di:** *I can't wait to* (lit. *I don't see the time to*) This expression, followed by an infinitive, is a useful idiom to learn.
 b **per la montagna:** *for the mountains* (lit. *mountain*) Just as **in montagna** means *in the mountains* (L1, N56), so here too **la montagna** stands for *the mountains* in general.

Part two: What happens

Discussione in famiglia *Disagreement in the family*

Paolo starts criticising Alberto's way of dressing, but Maria Teresa says that they should be deciding where to go for their holiday in the mountains. Maria Teresa prefers Cortina where she spent her honeymoon, but finally they all decide on Cervinia which is nearer and where they can still ski; it is about three hours by coach from Turin.

Andando all'agenzia di viaggio *Going to the travel agency*

Giovanna and Alberto are on their way to the travel agency and decide to book the coach journey and a hotel in Cervinia with half-board beginning from the following week.

All'agenzia *At the agency*

Alberto and Giovanna decide which coach they will take and enquire about the availability of hotels at Cervinia. Before booking and because the first-class

hotels are so expensive, Giovanna decides to check with her mother by telephone which class hotel they should book.

La prenotazione *The booking*

Alberto asks the travel agency assistant about the sports facilities at Cervinia in the summer. She refers him to the brochure she has given him and advises him to buy a season ticket for the skilifts and chairlifts. Giovanna finishes talking to her mother and they book a second-class hotel for a fortnight.

Part two: New words

l'abbonamento season-ticket
l'albergo hotel
l'aumento increase
il campo da tennis tennis-court
l'inverno winter
il lunedì Monday
il lusso luxury
il modo way
il modo di vestire way of dressing
l'opuscolo leaflet, brochure
l'orario timetable
il passo footstep
il pattinaggio skating
il posto seat, room
il pullman coach, bus
lo skilift skilift
il viaggio di nozze honeymoon

l'agenzia agency
l'agenzia di viaggio travel agency
la categoria class, category
la condizione condition
la discussione disagreement, discussion
la generazione generation
la mattina morning
la mezza pensione half board
la neve snow
le nozze wedding, marriage
la pensione guest-house
la pensione completa full board
la piscina swimming-pool
la pista slope
la pista per pattinaggio ice-rink
la prenotazione booking, reservation
la prima colazione breakfast
la seggiovia chairlift

la settimana week
la stagione time of year, season

alto high
arrabbiato angry
caro dear, expensive
completo full
compreso included
conveniente advantageous, cheap
deciso decided
doppio double
feriale working
mezzo half
prossimo next
romantico romantic
scritto written
settimanale weekly
singolo single
tuo your

andando (andare) going
capisci (capire) you understand
capisco (capire) I understand
chiedere to ask
ci vuole it is necessary, it takes
cominciare to begin
decidere to decide
finire (di) to finish
lasciare perdere to leave alone
mi piacciono I like
mi piacciono di più I prefer
perdere to lose
preferisco (preferire) I prefer
preferiscono (preferire) they prefer
preferite (preferire) you prefer
prenotare to book

sciare to ski
vestire to dress
vorrei (volere) I should like

loro they

negli, nei, nel, nell' in the

che that
comunque and yet, however

almeno at least
circa about

meglio better
qui a due passi just along here

a cominciare da starting from
a proposito by the way
d'accordo agreed
per centò per cent

quindici fifteen
venti twenty

le Dolomiti the Dolomites

Part two: Notes

Discussione in famiglia *Disagreement in the family*

- 12 Alberto, non mi piace proprio il tuo modo di vestire. *Alberto, I really don't like your way of dressing.*
- a non mi piace: *I don't like* Notice the position of **non** in this phrase; it does not come immediately before the verb **piace**, but in front of the whole phrase **mi piace**.
- b il tuo: *your* **Tuo**: *your* follows the same pattern as **suo** (L5, N21a and 23a) and is of course used only when addressing someone in the **tu** form.
- c modo di vestire: *way of dressing* In English we talk about the *way of doing* something; notice that in Italian we must say **modo di**: *way of* followed by an infinitive form (here *vestire*).
- 13 Lasciamo perdere le discussioni, Paolo. Finiamo di decidere per il viaggio invece. *Let's not have any arguments Paolo. Let's finish deciding about the journey instead.*
- a Lasciamo perdere: *Let's leave alone* (lit. *Let's lose*) **Lasciare perdere**: *to leave alone* or *to drop* (in the figurative sense) is a useful idiom to remember.
- b le discussioni: *disagreements* (lit. *discussions*) The Italian word **discussione** has both the meaning of *argument* and of *general discussion*.
- c Finiamo di decidere: *Let's finish deciding* **Finiamo** is the **noi** form of the **ire** verb **finire**: *to finish*. When it is followed by another verb (as here), it must be followed by **di**, hence **finiamo di decidere**.
- 14 Allora siete d'accordo tutti per Cervinia? *Well then you're all agreed on (lit. for) Cervinia?*
- a d'accordo: *agreed* The expression **essere d'accordo**: *to be agreed* or *to agree* is extremely useful and common in general conversation. The words **d'accordo** by themselves are used to agree with what someone is saying, rather as we say *O.K.* in English.

- b Cervinia is a well-known skiing resort in the Val d'Aosta to the north of Turin. As its slopes are so high, it is possible to ski there both summer and winter.
- 15 **Se voi preferite così ...** *If you prefer that (lit. like that) ...*
preferite: *you prefer* The infinitive of this verb is **preferire**; the *ite* ending of this *voi* form is typical of all *ire* verbs (Appendix 9).
- 16 **Io preferisco Cortina.** *I prefer Cortina.*
 a **preferisco:** *I prefer* The infinitive of this verb is again **preferire**: *to prefer*. There are two types of *ire* verbs (Appendix 9): **preferire** and **finire** belong to one group and their 1st and 3rd persons singular end in *isco* and *isce* respectively, whilst **partire**, **morire** and **vestire** belong to the other group whose 1st and 3rd persons singular end only with *o* and *e* respectively.
- b Cortina is a well-known ski resort in the Dolomites in North-East Italy.
- 17 **Ma, Maria Teresa, capisci anche tu che è troppo lontano.** *But Maria Teresa, surely you realise (lit. understand) that it's too far.*
 a **capisci:** *you understand* The infinitive form of this verb is **capire**; as it belongs to the same group of *ire* verbs as **preferire** and **finire**, its *tu* form ends with the letters *isci* (Appendix 9).
- b **capisci anche tu:** (lit.) *also you understand* Here **anche** has the force of *surely* i.e. *surely you realise* or *you must understand*.
- 18 **Sì, sì, capisco. Comunque mi piacciono di più le Dolomiti.** *Yes, yes, I understand. However, I like the Dolomites better (lit. the Dolomites please me more).*
 a **capisco:** *I understand* Compare **capisco**, from **capire**: *to understand*, with **preferisco** from **preferire**: *to prefer* (Appendix 9). Notice the difference in pronunciation between the *isci* ending of **capisci** (Note 17a) and the *isco* ending of **capisco** here.
- b **mi piacciono di più le Dolomiti:** *I like the Dolomites better (lit. the Dolomites please me more).* **Mi piace** and **mi piacciono** are both translated as *I like* in English; in Italian however, **mi piace** is used when what you like is a singular object or person e.g. **Mi piace quella ragazza:** *I like that girl*, and **Mi piace la tua macchina:** *I like your car*. **Mi piacciono**, the plural form, is used when what you like are plural objects or people, e.g. **Mi piacciono i vestiti eleganti:** *I like smart clothes* and **Mi piacciono quelle ragazze:** *I like those girls*. In this sentence, Maria Teresa says she likes the Dolomites better; as the Dolomites are plural, she uses the plural form, **mi piacciono**.
- c **le Dolomiti:** *the Dolomites* The Dolomites are the eastern branch of the Alps and contain several skiing resorts, the best-known of which is Cortina. The Dolomites are particularly noted for the greyish-pink colour of their rock.

- 19 **Oh mamma, non vuoi vedere qualcosa di nuovo?** *Oh mum, don't you want to see something new?*
qualcosa di nuovo: *something new* Notice how **di** is used in this sentence; *something beautiful* is translated as **qualcosa di bello**, *something cool* as **qualcosa di fresco** etc.
- 20 **Ci vuole molto da Torino?** *Is it far from Turin? (lit. Is necessary much from Turin?)*
 a **Ci vuole?:** *Does it take?, Is necessary?* This is the singular form of **ci vogliono** (Note 9) and is used when you are talking about something in the singular e.g. **Ci vuole un'ora:** *It takes an hour* (lit. *Is necessary an hour*). **Ci vuole un passaporto per andare all'estero:** *You need a passport to go abroad* (lit. *Is necessary a passport ...*).
- b Here Maria Teresa is asking if much time is necessary: **Ci vuole molto?** The word for *time* is here implicit in the word **molto**: *much*.
- 21 **Ci vogliono circa tre ore in pullman.** *It takes about three hours by coach.*
 a **Ci vogliono:** *It takes* (lit. *Are necessary*) Because Giovanna is talking about something in the plural here (i.e. three hours), she uses the plural form of *it takes*: **ci vogliono** as in Note 9.
- b **in pullman:** *by coach* The word **pullman** originates from English but normally means a *motor coach* or a *bus* in Italian.

Andando all'agenzia di viaggio *Going to the travel agency*

- 22 **Andando all'agenzia di viaggio** *Going to the travel agency*
Andando: *Going* With *are* type verbs, the gerund (i.e. the part of the verb that ends in *ing* in English, like *going*, *playing*, *smoking*) usually ends with the letters **ando**.
- 23 **Loro sono di un'altra generazione.** *They're of another generation.*
Loro: *They* Here for the first time we see the word for *they*: **loro**. Alberto uses it deliberately here to emphasise the difference between his parents and the younger generation. We call this **loro** form of the verb the 3rd person plural.
- 24 **Allora prenotiamo il viaggio in pullman per Cervinia e l'albergo a cominciare dalla settimana prossima.** *Well then let's book the coach-tickets (lit. journey in coach) to Cervinia and the hotel beginning from (lit. to begin from) next week.*
dalla: (lit.) *from the* **Da** and **la** always join together to form **dalla**; **da + la settimana prossima** = **dalla settimana prossima** (Appendix 1b).
- 25 **Che cosa preferiscono papà e mamma: pensione completa o mezza pensione?** *What do dad and mum prefer: full board or half board?*
preferiscono: *(they) prefer* This is the 3rd person plural form of **preferire**: *to prefer*. All the *ire* verbs of the same type as **preferire** and

finire (Note 16a) have **iscono** at the end of the *they* (i.e. 3rd person plural) form of the verb (Appendix 9).

- 26 **Facciamo solo la prima colazione e la cena in albergo.** *We're only going to have breakfast and dinner in the hotel.*

Facciamo: *We're going to have* (lit. *doing*) We have already seen that the verb **fare**: *to do, to make* is used in many expressions e.g. **fare il numero**: *to dial* (L3, N19b), **fare il caffè**: *to make the coffee* (L3, N26) etc. Notice how it is used here. In English we *have* breakfast, lunch, dinner etc.; in Italian we must use the verb **fare** to translate the English *have* in this case.

- 27 **È qui a due passi.** *It's just along here* (lit. *It's here at two footsteps*). The Italian expression **a due passi** is used where we would say *just round the corner, just down the road, a stone's throw away* etc. in English.

All'agenzia *At the agency*

- 28 **Vorrei prenotare quattro posti in pullman per Cervinia.** *I should like to book four seats on the coach to Cervinia.*

Vorrei: *I should like* This is an extremely useful word to learn, especially when you are shopping or asking for something in Italy, e.g. *I'd like a coffee: Vorrei un caffè.* Remember however that when you put a verb after **vorrei**, it must be in the infinitive form, e.g. **Vorrei telefonare:** *I'd like to telephone*, and as here **Vorrei prenotare:** *I'd like to book.*

- 29 **Ha un orario?** *Have you got a timetable?*

orario: *timetable* Notice that **un orario** is *a timetable*, whilst **in orario** (L2, N13) means *on time*.

- 30 **Nei giorni feriali partono la mattina alle sei e tre quarti e alle otto e mezzo.** *On* (lit. *In the*) *working days they leave at a quarter to seven and half past eight in the morning.*

- a **Nei:** *On* (lit. *in*) *the* To say *on working days* in Italian we must use the preposition **in** followed by **i giorni feriali**; because **in** and **i** always combine in Italian to form **nei**, **in + i giorni feriali = nei giorni feriali** (Notes 6c, 10a and Appendix 1b).

- b **giorni feriali:** *working days* A **giorno feriale** is any day that is not a Sunday or a religious or public holiday.

- c **partono:** *they leave* Notice that unlike verbs such as **finire**, **capire** and **preferire**, **partire:** *to leave* ends only in **ono** in the 3rd person plural (i.e. *they*) form (Appendix 9).

- d **la mattina:** *in the morning* Notice that there is no word to translate **in** here; similarly, *in the evening* is translated as **la sera**.

- e **alle sei e tre quarti:** *at a quarter to seven* Besides saying **alle sette meno un quarto** (L5, N30a) this is another way of saying *at a quarter to seven*.

- 31 **Allora partiamo alle otto e mezzo.** *Well then let's leave at half past eight.*

partiamo: *let's leave* Notice that the **noi** form of all **ire** verbs ends in **iamo** (Note 13c and Appendix 9).

- 32 **Che categoria? Lusso, prima, seconda o pensione?** *What category? Luxury first, second class or guest-house?*

Hotels and guest-houses in Italy are officially divided into different classes or categories according to their amenities, service, size, etc. There are five classes of hotels and three of **pensioni**, a first-class **pensione** being equivalent to a second-class hotel. Notice that the word **pensione** has two meanings, that of *small hotel* and that of *board*, as in **pensione completa:** *full board* and **mezza pensione:** *half board* (Note 25).

- 33 **C'è ancora posto?** *Is there still room?*

posto: *room* Notice that **posto** can mean both *seat* (Note 28) and *room*.

- 34 **Negli alberghi di prima di solito c'è posto.** *In first-class hotels* (lit. *in the hotels of first*) *there's usually room.*

- a **Negli:** *In the* **In** and **gli** always combine to form **negli** in Italian, thus **in + gli alberghi = negli alberghi** (Appendix 1b).

- b **alberghi:** *hotels* Notice that the plural of **albergo** is **alberghi**, i.e. we must add an **h** after the **g** of **albergo** in order to preserve the hard **g** sound at the end of the word. Remember that the plural of **lago:** *lake* is **laghi** (L4, N50b).

- 35 **C'è sempre un aumento del venti per cento nell'alta stagione.** *There's always a twenty percent increase in the high season.*

- a **un aumento del venti per cento:** (lit.) *an increase of the twenty percent* Notice that we must say **DEL venti per cento** in Italian.

- b **nell'alta stagione:** *in the high season* Here **nell'** replaces **nella** which would normally be used in front of **stagione**; **in + l'** always combine to form **nell'**, thus **in + l'alta stagione = nell'alta stagione**.

- c **alta:** *high* Notice that besides meaning *tall* (Note 3), **alto** can also mean *high*.

- 36 **Allora è meglio seconda categoria, Giovanna, no?** *Well then, second class is better, don't you think, Giovanna?*

In this sentence, **no?** is used in a similar way to **vero?** at the end of a sentence (L3, N17b). Because Alberto is not completely sure that he is right, he asks for Giovanna's confirmation by saying **no?**: *don't you think?* He could have said **vero?**: *isn't it?* but this would have indicated that he was more certain of his judgement.

- 37 **Sì, ma prima chiediamo alla mamma.** *Yes, but first let's ask mum.*

- a **chiediamo alla mamma:** *let's ask mum* Notice that *to ask someone* is **chiedere A qualcuno** in Italian e.g. *I'm asking the policeman:* **Chiedo AL poliziotto.**

- b alla mamma: (lit.) *to the mum* When talking about your own mother (but not your father too), you must use **LA mamma**. Alberto exclaimed **Com'è romantica la mamma!**: *How romantic mum is!* However, if he had said *How romantic dad is!* he would have said **Com'è romantico papà**, i.e. he would have omitted **il** in front of **papà**.

La prenotazione *The booking*

- 38 **La prenotazione** *The booking*
You will notice that there are many nouns in this lesson that end with the letters **ione**. It is useful to remember that most nouns ending in **ione** are feminine, e.g. **la prenotazione**, **la discussione**, **la generazione**, **la pensione**, **la prima colazione** etc.
- 39 **Sì. Tutte le piste sono in ottime condizioni.** *Yes. All the slopes are in excellent condition* (lit. *conditions*).
a **piste: slopes** **Pista** here means *ski-slope* or *track where you ski*.
b Notice that we normally use the plural form **in ottime condizioni**: (lit.) *in excellent conditions* in Italian.
- 40 **È tutto scritto nell'opuscolo.** *It's all written in the brochure.*
nell'opuscolo; *in the brochure* **In** and **l'** combine to form **nell'**; thus, **in + l'opuscolo = nell'opuscolo**.
- 41 **Nel prezzo dell'albergo sono compresi skilift e seggiovie?** *Are skilifts and chairlifts included in the price of the hotel?* (lit. *In the price of the hotel are included skilifts and chairlifts?*)
a **Nel prezzo:** *In the price* **In** and **il** always combine to form **nel**; thus, **in + il prezzo = nel prezzo**.
b **skilift: skilifts** Notice that the plural of **lo skilift** is **gli skilift**.
- 42 **No, ma lei può fare un abbonamento settimanale. È molto conveniente.** *No, but you can buy a weekly season-ticket. It's very advantageous.*
a **fare un abbonamento:** *buy* (lit. *make*) *a season-ticket* Notice that this is yet another expression that uses the verb **fare** (Note 26).
b **conveniente:** *advantageous* As here, **conveniente** often has the meaning of *financially advantageous* or *cheap*.
- 43 **Seconda categoria, due camere singole e una doppia per quindici giorni.** *Second class, two single rooms and one double for a fortnight* (lit. *fifteen days*).
quindici giorni: *a fortnight* There is no direct translation of the English word *fortnight*; Italians do however speak of **quindici giorni**: *fifteen* (not *fourteen*) *days* to describe *a fortnight*, and of **otto giorni**: *eight* (not *seven*) *days* to describe *a week*.

Part three: What happens

Alla stazione dei pullman *At the coach station*

Mr. Rossi asks for information about the next coach to Cortina and tries to book a seat; the clerk tells him he can buy his ticket on the coach.

Informazioni *Information*

Dr. Lisi wants to book a hotel in the mountains for a month and asks for information about Cervinia.

Part three: New words

aprile	April	basso	low
l'impiegato	clerk	fare il biglietto	to buy a ticket
l'informazione	information	a metà	in the middle of
la metà	half	direttamente	directly

Part three: Notes

Alla stazione dei pullman *At the coach station*

- 44 **Alla stazione dei pullman** *At the coach station* (lit. *At the station of the coaches*)
pullman: coaches Notice that the plural form of **il pullman** is **i pullman**.
- 45 **Sig. Rossi** *Mr. Rossi*
Sig. is the usual written abbreviation of **signor**: *Mr.* when used in front of a surname. Notice too that we talk about **un signore**: *a gentleman*. We say **signore** when addressing a man, but when talking about Mr. Rossi we call him **il signor Rossi**, i.e. the **e** of **signore** is dropped when **signore** is used in front of a surname.
- 46 **A che ora parte il prossimo pullman per Cortina?** *At what time does the next coach leave for Cortina?*
parte: leaves The **ire** verbs like **partire** and **vestire** end only with an **e** (not **isce**) in the 3rd person singular (Note 16a and Appendix 9).
- 47 **Impiegato** *Clerk*
The word **impiegato** (fem. **impiegata**) is used to describe someone who works in an office.
- 48 **Quanto ci vuole di qui?** *How long* (lit. *How much*) *does it take from here?*
Quanto? : *How much?* i.e. *How much time?* This is the same type of construction as in Note 20, **Ci vuole molto da Torino?**: *Does it take much* (i.e. *much time*) *from Turin?*

- 49 Può fare il biglietto direttamente sul pullman. *You can buy your tickets (directly) on the coach.*
- a **fare il biglietto:** *buy your tickets* (lit. *make the ticket*) Notice that this is yet another expression that uses the verb **fare** (Notes 26 and 42a).
- b **direttamente:** (lit.) *directly* Here the inclusion of **direttamente** means that they can buy their tickets direct once they get on the coach i.e. they do not have to book or go to a ticket-office first.

Informazioni Information

50 Informazioni Information

Notice that in Italian the word for *information* is used here in the plural form.

- 51 **Dott. Lisi** *Dr. Lisi* **Dott.** is the written abbreviation of **dottore**, the title given to someone who has obtained a degree from an Italian university (L4, N7); this degree can be in medicine or in something else. Like **signore** (Note 45), **dottore** abbreviates to **dottor** when used in front of a surname.
- 52 **Mia moglie preferisce Cervinia.** *My wife prefers Cervinia.*
preferisce: *prefers* Remember that the **ire** verbs like **preferire**, **capire** and **finire** end with **isce** in the 3rd person singular (N16a and Appendix 9).
- 53 **A Cervinia l'alta stagione finisce a metà aprile.** *High season ends in the middle of April in Cervinia.*
finisce: *finishes* As in Note 52, this is another example of verbs like **capire**, **finire** and **preferire** ending in **isce** in the 3rd person singular.

Lezione sette

In banca

Lesson seven

At the bank

Part one: What happens

This morning Paolo has to go to the bank with Giovanna; she has to pay in a cheque whilst he must change some foreign currency and cash some traveller's cheques in readiness for the impending trip to the mountains. They have to hurry as the banks are now only open from 8.30 to 1.30.

Part one: New words

l'assegno	cheque	suo	her
l'assegno turistico	traveller's cheque	turistico	tourist
il conto	account	incassare	to cash
il fiorino	Dutch guilder	riaprire	to reopen
il franco	franc	versare su	to pay into
il pomeriggio	afternoon	visitare	to visit
i soldi (m. pl.)	money	li	them
il sud	South	la banca	bank
la banca	bank	la sterlina	pound sterling
la sterlina	pound sterling	aperto	open
aperto	open	corrente	current
corrente	current	parecchio	quite a bit of
parecchio	quite a bit of	pochi (m. pl.)	a few
pochi (m. pl.)	a few	rimasto	left over
rimasto	left over	settimo	seventh
settimo	seventh	dappertutto	everywhere
		poi	then
		stamattina	this morning
		come	like, as
		Venezia	Venice

Part one: Notes

- 1 **Stamattina devo andare in banca con Giovanna.** *This morning I have to go to the bank with Giovanna.*
 - a **Stamattina:** *This morning* Just as **stasera:** *this evening* was an abbreviation of **questa sera** (L3, N29a), so **stamattina:** *this morning* is an abbreviated form of **questa mattina**.
 - b **andare in banca:** *to go to the bank* Notice that **to go TO the bank** is **andare IN banca** in Italian.
- 2 **Lei deve versare un assegno sul suo conto corrente.** *She must pay a cheque into her current account.*
 - a **versare . . . su** Notice that in English we **pay a cheque INTO an account**, whilst in Italian the expression is **versare SU un conto**.
 - b **sul suo conto corrente:** *into her current account* We have already seen in Lesson 5 (Notes 21a and 23a) that **suo**, **sua** etc. mean *your*; **suo** and its various forms (i.e. **sua**, **suoi**, **sue**) also mean *his*, *her* and *its* according to context, e.g. **Ecco Giovanni con la sua macchina:** *Here is Giovanni with his car.* **Ecco Maria con il suo ragazzo:** *Here is Maria with her boyfriend.* Here, because Paolo is talking about Giovanna, **suo** must mean *her*.
- 3 **Io ho dei fiorini, e anche delle sterline e dei franchi francesi rimasti dai miei viaggi all'estero.** *I've got some guilders, and also some pounds sterling and some French francs left over from my trips abroad.*
 - a **dei fiorini, e anche delle sterline e dei franchi:** *some guilders, and also some pounds sterling and some francs* Remember that **dei**, **degli**, **delle**, **del**, **della** etc. can all mean *some* (L5, N33b).

- b **franchi**: *frances* The singular form of **franchi** is **franco**; notice that as with **lago** (pl. **laghi**) and **albergo** (pl. **alberghi**) we must here also add an **h** after the final consonant in the plural in order to keep the hard sound at the end of the word (L6, N34b).
- c **dai miei viaggi**: *from my trips* **Da** and **i** always combine to form **dai**, thus **da + i miei viaggi = dai miei viaggi** (Appendix 1b).
- d Notice that the plural of **viaggio** is **viaggi** (L6, N3c).
- 4 **Li vorrei cambiare in lire italiane.** *I'd like to change them* (lit. *them I'd like to change*) into Italian lire.
- a **Li**: *them* When we want to say *them* in Italian, referring either to all masculine objects or people or to a mixture of masculine and feminine objects or people, we must use **li**, e.g. **Prendo i vestiti; li prendo**: *I'm taking the clothes; I'm taking them.* **Giovanna vede i suoi genitori; li vede**: *Giovanna sees her parents; she sees them.*
- b **Li vorrei cambiare**: *I'd like to change them* Notice the word order in Italian. Here the word for *them*: **li** comes in front of both the verbs.
- 5 **Tra pochi giorni partiamo per la montagna.** *In a few days' time we're leaving for the mountains.*
pochi giorni: (a) *few days* The plural of **un po'** or **un poco**: *a little* is **pochi** (m. pl.) or **poche** (f. pl.): *few*. **Pochi** or **poche** are used in the negative sense of *few* or *not many*, e.g. *There are few clients* (i.e. *not many*) in this bank: **Ci sono pochi clienti in questa banca.**
- 6 **Abbiamo bisogno di parecchi soldi.** *We need quite a bit of money.*
- a **parecchi soldi**: *quite a bit of money* The most common Italian word for *money* is **i soldi** which is always used in its plural form, e.g. *I've got a lot of money*: **Ho molti soldi.**
- b **parecchi**: *quite a bit* **Parecchio** is slightly less than *a lot*, i.e. *quite a lot*.
- 7 **Per fortuna ho degli assegni turistici.** *Fortunately I have some traveller's* (lit. *tourist*) *cheques.*
degli: *some* Remember that **degli** can also mean *some* (N3a).
- 8 **Li posso incassare dappertutto in Italia.** *I can cash them all over* (lit. *everywhere in*) *Italy.*
Li posso incassare: *I can cash them* Notice that this is the same sentence construction as in Note 4b; here the **li** refers to **gli assegni turistici**, i.e. masculine plural objects.
- 9 **Ma bisogna fare in fretta.** *But we must hurry* (lit. *But it is necessary to do quickly*).
- a **bisogna**: *we must* (lit. *it is necessary*) Remember this impersonal verb (L3, N24c).
- b **fare in fretta**: *to hurry* Notice this useful expression for *to hurry* or *do something quickly*; it is yet another idiom formed with the verb **fare**: *to do*.

- 10 **Le banche sono aperte solo dalle otto e mezzo all'una e mezzo.** *The banks are open only from half past eight until half past one.*
Le banche: *The banks* Notice how **banca** becomes **banche** in the plural, i.e. an **h** is added before the **e** to show that the hard **c** sound is preserved in the plural.
- 11 **E al pomeriggio non riaprono più come una volta.** *And in the afternoon they no longer open as they used to* (lit. *they don't reopen any more like one time*).
- a **non ... più**: *no longer* Remember this expression (L6, N8c).
- b **riaprono**: (lit.) *reopen* The **ire** verb **aprire** is *to open*, **riaprire**: *to reopen*. **Aprire** and **riaprire** have the same type of present tense as **partire**, **vestire** etc.
- c **una volta**: *once, one time, once upon a time*

Part two: What happens

Allo sportello del cambio *At the foreign exchange counter*

At the foreign exchange counter Paolo cannot find his identity card but has his passport with him for identification. The cashier asks him for his address in Italy, gets him to sign the cheque and tells him to wait at the cash-desk to get his money.

Un versamento *Paying in*

Paolo has finished his business and looks for Giovanna who is still waiting to be served. Paolo says he will wait for her at the door. Giovanna fills in a form to pay in her cheque and the clerk asks her to go to the cash-desk to pick up her receipt.

Un incontro imprevisto *An unexpected meeting*

Paolo meets Franco unexpectedly and hears that Lucia is not well; they chat and while he is waiting for Giovanna, Paolo keeps Franco company.

Alla cassa *At the cash-desk*

Franco asks for the money he is drawing out to be split up into notes of different denominations; he also asks for small change.

Part two: New words

il biglietto bank-note
 il cambio foreign exchange
 il cassiere cashier
 il cielo heavens, sky
 il denaro money

il documento document
 il fianco side
 l'importo amount
 il libretto small book
 il libretto di risparmio savings book

il mare sea
il modulo form
il risparmio saving(s)
lo sportello counter, window
il versamento paying in

la banca di emissione issuing bank
la calma calmness
la carta d'identità identity card
l'emissione issue
l'identità identity
l'influenza influenza
la moneta coin, piece
la poveretta poor thing
la ricevuta receipt
la valuta currency

brutto bad, ugly
chiuso shut
fatto done
imprevisto unexpected
qualche some
santo holy

accompagnare to accompany
dare to give
dipendere da to depend on
fare da solo to do something alone
fare (fare) you do
firmare to sign
mi dispiace I'm sorry

Part two: Notes

Allo sportello del cambio *At the foreign exchange counter*

12 **Allo sportello del cambio** *At the foreign exchange counter*
Allo sportello: *At the counter* In Italian **lo sportello** is the small window through which you speak to a bank or booking-office clerk etc.

13 **Allora ho bisogno di un documento.** *Well then I need some identification (lit. a document).*
un documento: *a document* Both foreigners and Italian nationals should carry some form of identification with them i.e. a document that bears both a photograph and a signature.

14 **La carta d'identità va bene?** *Is my (lit. the) identity card all right?*
La carta d'identità: *The identity card* An identity card, a passport and a driving-licence are all accepted documents for identification purposes in Italy.

ritirare to draw out, to withdraw
so (sapere) I know
sta (stare) she is
vanno (andare) they are going

la it, you, her
lo it
mi me
ti you

del some

a fianco by the side, next door
buongiorno good morning
così, così so so
da solo alone
qualche volta sometimes
via away

macché of course not
Oh santo cielo! Oh my goodness!

cento a hundred
centomila one hundred thousand
cinquanta fifty
cinquantamila fifty thousand
cinquemila five thousand
diecimila ten thousand
duemila two thousand
mille a thousand

15 **Oh santo cielo! Dov'è? Non la trovo più.** *Oh my goodness! Where is it? I can't find it now (lit. I don't find it any more).*

a **Oh santo cielo!** *Oh my goodness! (lit. holy heavens!) Good heavens!*
This is an exclamation of surprise and sometimes alarm.

b **Non la trovo più:** *I can't find it now (lit. I don't find it any more).*
As in Note 11a, to say *no longer* or *no more*, we must place **non** before the verb and **più** after it.

c **la: it** Here **la: it** refers to **la carta d'identità** previously mentioned. **La** is used to translate *it* or *her* when referring to a feminine singular object or person, e.g. **Disturbo la ragazza; la disturbo:** *I'm disturbing the girl; I'm disturbing her.* **Controllo la borsa; la controllo:** *I'm checking the bag; I'm checking it.* Notice too that **la** is placed in front of the verb in Italian when it means *it* or *her* and that **non** is placed in front of **la**.

16 **Guardi con calma.** *Take your time (lit. Look with calmness).*
Guardi: Look Here the bank clerk is telling Paolo to look, i.e. she is giving him a simple command; because she is addressing him as **lei: you** and because **guardare: to look** is an **are** verb, her command **Look! Guard!** ends with an **i**. If she were to tell him to *find the pen*, she would say **Trovi la penna;** if she told him to *telephone Milan*, she would say **Telefoni a Milano** because **trovare: to find** and **telefonare: to telephone** are both are verbs and she is addressing Paolo in the **lei** form (Appendix 9).

17 **Ecco qui: almeno ho il passaporto.** *Here we are (lit. Here is here): at least I've got my (lit. the) passport.*

il passaporto: my (lit. the) passport Notice how it is unnecessary to use the word for *my* in Italian when it is clear who the object belongs to.

18 **Il suo indirizzo in Italia?** *Your address in Italy?*

Il suo indirizzo: *Your address* Here **suo** means *your* as the cashier is addressing Paolo as **lei** (L5, N23a).

19 **Posso dare quello di mia figlia a Torino.** *I can give my daughter's (lit. that of my daughter) in Turin.*

quello di mia figlia: my daughter's Notice how we must say *that* or *the one of my daughter* in Italian, the word **quello** referring to **indirizzo**.

20 **Si accomodi alla cassa . . . No, un momento. Firmi l'assegno, per favore.** *Go over to the cash-desk . . . No, just a moment. Sign the cheque, please.*

a **Si accomodi:** *Go over (lit. Make yourself comfortable)* Remember this expression from Lesson 3 (N14a).

b **alla cassa: at the cash-desk** All the banks in Italy have a central **cassa** from which money is paid out; the written formalities are completed over the counter and the customer given a numbered receipt which he presents at the cash-desk where he is given the money he wishes to draw out.

c **Firmi: Sign** As in Note 16, this is another command in the **lei** form, derived from the verb **firmare: to sign**.

- 21 C'è molta coda. *There's a long queue* (lit. *There's much queue*).
Molto: *much* is an adjective here and agrees with **coda**.
 22 No, mi dispiace. *No, I'm sorry.*
mi dispiace: *I'm sorry* (lit. *it displeases me*) We have already seen **mi piace** which literally means *it pleases me* (L3, N3a); here **mi dispiace** follows exactly the same pattern and means *it displeases me* i.e. *I'm sorry*.

Un versamento *Paying in*

- 23 **Un versamento** *Paying in* (lit. *A paying in*)
 Notice that the noun **versamento** derives from the verb **versare:** *to pay in*.
 24 **Tutto fatto, Giovanna, e tu?** *All done, Giovanna, and you?*
fatto: *done* **Fatto** comes from the verb **fare:** *to do* and is known as the past participle. Other past participles that we have met so far are **aperto:** *open* from the verb **aprire:** *to open* (Note 10); **compreso:** *included* from the verb **comprendere:** *to include* (L6, N41); **deciso:** *decided* from the verb **decidere:** *to decide* (L6) and **scritto:** *written* from the verb **scrivere:** *to write* (L6, N40 and Appendix 10). Past participles are often used as adjectives; when this happens they behave in exactly the same way as adjectives and agree in gender and in number with what they are describing, e.g. In part one we saw **dei franchi francesi rimasti:** *some French francs left over* (Note 3); here **rimasto** is a past participle (from the verb **rimanere:** *to remain*) but as it is describing masculine plural objects (i.e. **franchi francesi**) it must take its masculine plural form **rimasti**.
 25 **Macché. Sono ancora qui. Qualche volta faccio in un minuto.** *Of course not. I'm still here. Sometimes I get done* (lit. *I do*) *in a minute*.
 a **Macché** is an exclamation used to express negation or to contradict what has been said.
 b **Qualche volta:** *Sometimes* This is a useful expression to learn.
 26 **Dipende dagli altri sportelli. Molti sono chiusi.** *It depends on the other windows. A lot (of them) are shut.*
 a **Dipende dagli altri:** *It depends on the other* **To depend ON** is **dipendere** **DA** in Italian. As **da** and **gli** always combine to form **dagli**, **da** + **gli altri** = **dagli altri**.
 b **chiusi:** *shut* **Chiuso** is the past participle of **chiudere:** *to shut, to close*. Here it is used like an adjective (Note 24) and takes on its masculine plural form to agree with **sportelli**.
 27 **Mi aspetti?** *Will you wait for me (Do you wait for me)?*
Mi: *me* **Me** is always translated by **mi** when used with a verb. Notice that like **la** (N15c), it precedes the verb.
 28 **Sì, ti aspetto all'uscita.** *Yes, I'll wait for you* (lit. *I'm waiting for you*) *at the exit*.

- ti:** *you* Here **ti** is used for *you* instead of **tu** because *you* is the object of the verb **aspetto:** *I'm waiting for*, e.g. *He is waiting for me:* **Mi aspetta.** *He is waiting for you:* **Ti aspetta.** Notice that like **mi:** *me* (Note 27), **ti** is also used in front of the verb.
 29 **Desidera, signorina?** *Can I help you* (lit. *You want*) *miss?*
Desidera?: *Can I help you?* This is an expression commonly used by people serving in shops, offices and restaurants.
 30 **Su un libretto di risparmio?** *Into a savings book?*
 a **Su:** *Into* Remember that *to pay IN* is translated by **versare SU** (Note 2a).
 b **libretto:** *book* (lit. *small book*) **Libretto** is the diminutive form of **libro:** *book*. Remember **villetta:** *small villa* (L5, N2b).
 31 **No, lo verso sul mio conto corrente.** *No, I'm paying it into my current account.*
lo: *it* Here **lo:** *it* refers to **assegno:** *cheque*. **Lo** translates *it* or *him*, i.e. it is used when referring to a masculine singular thing or person in the same way as **la** is used to refer to a feminine thing or person (Note 15c), e.g. **Ecco Paolo;** **lo disturbo:** *Here's Paolo; I'm disturbing him*. Notice that **lo** precedes the verb here. Both **lo** and **la** become **l'** in front of a vowel, e.g. **L'aspetto:** *I'm waiting for him/her/you*.
 32 **La devo aiutare?** *Shall I help you?* (lit. *Must I help you?*)
La: *you* Just as **ti** is used instead of **tu** when *you* is the object of the verb (Note 28), e.g. **Ti vedo:** *I see you*, so **la** is used as the object of the verb instead of **lei**, e.g. **La vedo:** *I see you*. Notice once again that the object of the verb (here *you:* **la**) precedes the verb as in Notes 4b, 8, 15c, 27, 28 and 31.
 33 **No grazie, faccio da sola.** *No thank you, I can do it by myself* (lit. *I do alone*).
faccio da sola: (lit.) *I do alone* Notice the useful expression **fare da solo:** *to do something alone*; here **da sola** (the feminine singular form) is used because Giovanna is referring to herself.
 34 **Passi alla cassa a prendere la ricevuta.** *Go* (lit. *Pass*) *to the cash-desk to get the receipt*.
 a **Passi:** (lit.) *Pass* **Passi** is a command in the **lei** form and is derived from the verb **passare:** *to pass* (Notes 16 and 20c).
 b **a prendere la ricevuta:** *to get* (lit. *take*) *the receipt* Just as cash is only given out at the **cassa** of an Italian bank, so too are official receipts and other documents. Similarly, if money is paid into an account in cash, only the **cassa** will take the money and issue the receipt, the other formalities having been carried out at a normal counter.

Un incontro imprevisto *An unexpected meeting*

- 35 **Così, così. Lucia non sta tanto bene.** *So so. Lucia isn't very well.*

- a **Così, così:** *So so* This is a useful expression to learn.
- b **non sta tanto bene:** *isn't very well*. Remember that the verb **stare** is used when talking about someone's health, e.g. You should ask **Come stai?** (in the *tu* form) or **Come sta?** (in the *lei* form): *How are you?* when meeting someone you know; you should not, however, use this expression when meeting someone for the first time.
- 36 **Che cos'ha?** *What's the matter with her?* (lit. *What has she got?*) Notice this idiomatic way of asking what is wrong with someone.
- 37 **Una brutta influenza.** *A bad attack of influenza* (lit. *An ugly influenza*). **brutta:** *bad* **Brutto** has the general meaning of *bad, unpleasant or ugly*.
- 38 **Oh poveretta! Come la capisco. Come fate per le vacanze?** *Oh poor thing! How I sympathise with (lit. I understand) her. What are you doing about (lit. How are you doing for) the holidays?*
- a **la:** *her* When referring to a feminine singular person or thing that is the object of the verb, we must use **la** in Italian (Note 15c).
- b **fate:** *you do* This is the **voi** form of **fare:** *to do* (Appendix 10). Paolo uses the **voi** form of the verb here because he is referring to both Franco and Lucia.
- 39 **Non so ancora. Per ora le bambine vanno al mare. E voi, quando andate via?** *I don't know yet. For the time being (lit. now) the children are going to the sea. And you, when are you going away?*
- a **Non so ancora:** *I don't know yet* **So** is the 1st person singular of the irregular **ere** verb **sapere:** *to know* (Appendix 10). **Sapere** means *to know a fact* whilst **conoscere** (L6, N2), means *to be acquainted with someone or something*.
- b **vanno:** *are going* This is the **they** (3rd person plural) form of the irregular verb **andare:** *to go* (Appendix 10).
- c **andate:** *you go* This is the **voi** form of **andare**. Franco uses the **voi** form here because he is referring to Paolo and Maria Teresa.
- 40 **Hai molto da fare in banca?** *Have you got a lot to do at the bank?*
molto da fare: *a lot to do* Notice the use of **da** in this phrase; we have already met it in the phrase **niente da dichiarare:** *nothing to declare*. **Da** followed by the infinitive conveys the meaning of *something to be done* e.g. **molto da fare:** *a lot to be done*; **niente da dichiarare:** *nothing to be declared*.
- 41 **Ho solo da ritirare del denaro. Non sto molto. Mi accompagni?** *I've only got to draw out some money. I'm not staying long. Will you come with me?*
- a **del:** *some* In the same way that **dei biscotti** meant *some biscuits* (L4, N35b) and **degli amici** meant *some friends* (L5, N5a), **del, della** and **dell'** can also mean *some*. **Denaro** is a masculine singular word, so *some money* is expressed by **del denaro** (i.e. **di + il denaro**).

- b **denaro:** *money* **Money** is most usually translated as **i soldi** in Italian (Note 6a), but **il denaro** (in the singular form) is also used.
- c **Non sto:** *I'm not staying* Remember that **stare** also means *to stay* (L4, N46).
- d **molto:** *long* (lit. *much*) As in Lesson 6 (N20b) **molto** has here again the meaning of *much time*.

Alla cassa At the cash-desk

- 42 **Buongiorno signor Moretti. Vediamo ... sì, va bene. Come li vuole i soldi?** *Good morning Mr. Moretti. Let's see ... yes, all right. How do you want (lit. them) the money?*
- a **Buongiorno:** *Good morning* Remember that **buongiorno** is used throughout the day until dusk (L4, N24).
- b **li:** (lit.) *them* **Li** here refers to **i soldi:** *the money* which is masculine plural. The word **li** is not grammatically essential in this sentence, but it is inserted here as a conversational extra by the cashier, making him sound more friendly.
- 43 **Due biglietti da centomila, due da cinquantamila, tre da diecimila, due da cinquemila e il resto da mille.** *Two hundred-thousand notes, two fifty-thousands, three tens, two fives and the rest in thousands.*
- a **biglietti:** *notes* Notice that **biglietto** can mean either *ticket* or *bank-note* according to context.
- b **centomila:** *hundred thousand* **Cento** means *hundred* whilst **mila:** *thousands* is the irregular plural form of **mille:** *thousand*. Notice how **centomila** is one word in Italian.
- 44 **Vorrei venti monete da cinquanta e dieci da cento.** *I'd like twenty fifty lire coins and ten hundreds.*
monete: *coins* Although fifty and hundred lire coins are not worth very much, they are still useful for machines dispensing **gettoni** for the telephone and for automatic ticket machines in buses.

Part three: What happens

Al cambio At the foreign exchange counter

A gentleman wants to change some Italian lire into Swiss francs. As the clerk has no Swiss francs, she tells him to go to the exchange office at the station where he might find some.

In un negozio del centro In a shop in the city centre

A lady wants to pay her bill with a cheque but the shop accepts only cash; they will take a traveller's cheque however if she has her passport with her.

Part three: New words

il cambio exchange counter, office	svizzero Swiss
il commesso shop assistant	accettare to accept
il contante cash, bank-note	
il conto bill	le them
il negozio shop	lo him
l'ufficio office	
	non ... mai never
estero foreign	

Part three: Notes

Al cambio *At the foreign exchange counter*

- 45 **Aspetti un momento, signore.** *Wait a moment, sir.*
Aspetti: *Wait* Here **aspetti** is the *lei* command form of the *are* verb **aspettare**.
- 46 **Mi dispiace, ma ho fretta.** *I'm sorry, but I'm in a hurry.*
ho fretta: *I'm in a hurry* Remember the word **fretta** (L2, N7). The expression **avere fretta:** *to be in a hurry* is similar to the expression **avere fame:** *to be hungry* (L4, N33c) and **avere ragione:** *to be right* (L4, N16).
- 47 **Lo faccio io.** *I'll do it.*
Lo: *it* Here **lo** does not refer to anything in particular, but to the whole transaction.
- 48 **Per favore le cambi in franchi svizzeri.** *Please change them into Swiss francs.*
 a **le:** *them* Here **le** refers to the **centomila lire**, which are feminine plural objects. Just as **li** is used to mean *them* when referring to masculine plural objects (Note 4a), so **le** is used when referring to feminine plural objects.
 b **cambi:** *change* This is the *lei* command form of the *are* verb **cambiare:** *to change*.
 c Notice that the pronoun **le:** *them* precedes the *lei* command form **cambi**. Pronouns always precede *lei* command forms.
- 49 **Dove li trovo a quest'ora?** *Where can I find them (lit. do I find them) at this time of day (lit. hour)?*
li: *them* **Li** here refers to the **franchi svizzeri:** *Swiss francs* of the previous sentence.
- 50 **Li può cercare all'ufficio cambio della stazione.** *You can try (lit. look for them) at the exchange office at (lit. of) the station.*
Li può cercare: (lit.) *You can look for them* Notice that this is the same type of sentence construction as in Notes 4 and 8.

In un negozio del centro *In a shop in the centre*

- 51 **Dov'è il cassiere? Non lo vedo.** *Where's the cashier? I can't see him (lit. I don't see him).*
lo: *him* Here **lo** refers to **il cassiere**, a masculine person (Note 31).
- 52 **No, accettiamo solo contanti qui.** *No, we only accept cash here.*
contanti: *cash* Notice this special word that is used to denote *ready money* or *cash*.
- 53 **Ma almeno un assegno turistico lo prende?** *But at least you'll take a traveller's cheque (lit. But at least a traveller's cheque you take it)?*
lo prende: *you take it* **Lo** here refers to **assegno turistico**; as in Note 42, it is not strictly grammatically essential to the sentence. This type of sentence however is very common in conversation.
- 54 **Sì, se ha il passaporto.** *Yes, if you've got your (lit. the) passport.*
il passaporto: *your passport* Notice once again that there is no need for a word to translate *your* in this type of sentence (Note 17).
- 55 **No, non lo porto mai in borsa. Ma ho la patente.** *No, I never carry it in (my) bag. But I've got my (lit. the) driving-licence.*
 a **non ... mai:** *never* As with **non ... niente:** *nothing* (L2, N29d) and **non ... nessuno:** *no-one* (L3, N22b), **non ... mai** looks like a double negative. **Non** always precedes the verb whilst **mai** always follows it. If, as in this case, a word like **lo:** *it* or **li:** *them* already precedes the verb, **non** comes in front of the whole phrase (Note 15c).
 b **Ma ho la patente:** *But I've got my driving-licence* As in Note 54, there is no need for a word to translate the possessive *my* in this type of sentence in Italian.

Lezione otto

Lesson eight

In albergo

In the hotel

Part one: What happens

Giovanna says how happy she is to be surrounded by the quiet and beauty of the mountains. She describes their arrival the previous day and how they were shown to their rooms. Alberto wanted the room with a balcony but Giovanna preferred the one with a view over the mountains.

Part one: New words

il balcone balcony
 il pino pine-tree
 il portiere receptionist, porter
 lo sfondo background
 il silenzio silence

la cameriera chambermaid
 la doccia shower
 la finestra window
 la funivia cable-car
 la vita life

bel = bello fine, beautiful
 coperto covered

gran = grande large, great
 lontano far
 ottavo eighth

dare verso to look out onto
 ricevere to receive
 si sente (sentire) can be smelt
 si vedono (vedere) can be seen

ci us

gentilmente kindly
 ieri yesterday

Part one: Notes

- 1 Finalmente sono lontana dallo studio, dagli esami e dalla vita di città!
At last I'm far away from studying, exams and city life!
- a lontana: (lit.) far, distant Lontana is an adjective here, used in the feminine singular because it agrees with Giovanna.
- b dallo studio: from studying (lit. from the study) Da and lo always combine to form dallo, thus da + lo studio = dallo studio (Appendix 1b).
 dagli esami: (lit.) from the exams Remember that da and gli always combine to form dagli.
- d dalla vita di città: from city life (lit. the life of city) Notice that da and la always combine to form dalla.
- 2 Come si sta bene qui! How nice it is here (lit. How one is well here)!
 si sta bene: one is well Si can often be translated by one in English when it is followed by the 3rd person singular of the verb.
- 3 C'è un gran silenzio e un bel cielo azzurro. There's complete (lit. a great) silence and a beautiful, blue sky.
- a gran: (lit.) great This form of the word grande is used in front of masculine singular nouns that begin with a consonant, except those beginning with z like zio or s and another consonant like studio, e.g. a large document: un gran documento, a great book: un gran libro. However, if the adjective follows the noun, it retains its normal form, e.g. un documento grande and un libro grande.
- b bel: beautiful Bel is the form of bello used in front of masculine singular nouns beginning with a consonant, except those beginning with a z or s and another consonant, e.g. a handsome boy: un bel ragazzo, fine weather: bel tempo, but un ragazzo bello and tempo bello.

- 4 Dalla mia camera si sente il profumo dei pini. From my bedroom I can smell the pine-trees (lit. the perfume of the pine-trees).
 si sente il profumo: I can smell the perfume, one smells the perfume, the perfume is smelt Although si followed by the 3rd person singular form of a verb can usually be translated by one in English (Note 2), grammatically profumo is the subject of the verb sente here, and the use of si gives a passive meaning to the sentence. Thus si sente il profumo literally means the perfume is smelt. Further examples are Si versa l'assegno sul conto corrente: The cheque is paid into the current account and Il modulo si firma qui: One signs the form here, The form is signed here.
- 5 E si vedono le montagne coperte di neve. And I can see the mountains covered with snow.
- a si vedono: can be seen, one sees, are seen This sentence follows the same structure as in Note 4. The subject of the sentence is le montagne and the verb consequently appears in the 3rd person plural form. Si vedono le montagne therefore has the passive meaning of The mountains are seen. Further examples are I soldi si ritirano alla cassa: One draws out money at the cash-desk and Non si accettano assegni turistici: Traveller's cheques are not accepted.
- b coperte di neve: covered with snow Notice that covered WITH is translated as coperte DI in Italian.
- 6 Al nostro arrivo ieri abbiamo trovato subito l'albergo. When we arrived (lit. At our arrival) yesterday, we found the hotel straight away.
 abbiamo trovato: we found (lit. we have found) This is the first verb we have seen in the past tense. We call this tense the perfect tense or the passato prossimo in Italian; it is formed by using the appropriate part of the verb to have: avere followed by the past participle of the verb you wish to use. In this sentence trovato is the past participle of trovare: to find; most are verbs form their past participle by removing the re infinitive ending and adding the letters to; e.g. guardato is the past participle of guardare; telefonato is from telefonare; passato from passare; studiato from studiare etc. Thus, using trovare: to find as a model, the perfect tense (passato prossimo) of a regular are verb is as follows:
 ho trovato: I found abbiamo trovato: we found
 hai trovato: you found avete trovato: you found
 ha trovato: he/she/it/you found hanno trovato: they found
 You will notice that the past participle does not change; only the verb avere: to have changes according to the person who is doing the action. The perfect tense (passato prossimo) is the most commonly used past tense when talking about single actions completed in the past, e.g. Yesterday I telephoned Maria: Ieri ho telefonato a Maria. He cashed a cheque at the bank: Ha incassato un assegno alla banca etc.

- 7 **Il portiere ci ha ricevuto molto gentilmente.** *The receptionist was very kind to us (lit. received us very kindly).*
- a **ci: us** *Us* is translated by **ci** and here comes in front of the verb **ha ricevuto: received** (Appendix 3).
- b **ha ricevuto:** (lit.) *received* **Ricevuto** is the past participle of the **ere** verb **ricevere: to receive**. The past participle of many **ere** verbs is formed by replacing the final **ere** of the infinitive by the letters **uto**, thus **ricevuto** is formed from **ricevere**; **perduto** from **perdere: to lose**; **veduto** from **vedere: to see** and **dovuto** from **dovere: to have to**.
- c **gentilmente: kindly** Notice that as in English, many adverbs are formed from adjectives. Here **gentilmente** is formed by removing the final **e** of the adjective **gentile** and adding the ending **mente** which we have already seen is the Italian equivalent of the English adverb ending **ly** (L3, N16). Other examples are **finalmente** (from **finale**): *finally*, **possibilmente** (from **possibile**): *possibly* and **principalmente** (from **principale**): *principally*. Adjectives that end with **a** in the feminine singular are usually made into adverbs by simply adding **mente** to this feminine singular form of the adjective, e.g. **certo: sure, certain** becomes **certamente**; **vero: true, real** becomes **veramente** etc.
- 8 **E la cameriera ci ha accompagnato alle nostre camere.** *And the chambermaid took us up (lit. accompanied us) to our rooms.*
- a **ci: us** Notice once again that **ci** comes in front of the verb (Note 7a).
- b **ha accompagnato:** (lit.) *accompanied* This is the perfect tense (**passato prossimo**) of the verb **accompagnare** (Note 6). Notice once again the typical **ato** ending of the past participle of an **are** verb.
- 9 **Quella doppia ha il bagno, e quelle singole hanno la doccia.** *The double one (lit. That double) has got a bath, and the single ones (lit. those single) have got a shower.*
- Notice how in Italian we must say **il bagno:** (lit.) *the bath* and **la doccia:** (lit.) *the shower* etc. instead of **un bagno** and **una doccia**. **Il bagno** can mean *the bath (tub), the bathroom or the toilet*. Similarly, **Dov'è il bagno?** can mean *Where is the bathroom?* or *Where is the toilet?*
- 10 **Alberto ha preferito quella con il balcone.** *Alberto preferred the one with the balcony.*
- ha preferito: preferred** This is the perfect tense (**passato prossimo**) of the **ire** verb **preferire: to prefer**. Many **ire** verbs form their past participle by replacing the final **re** of the infinitive form with the letters **to**; thus **preferito** derives from **preferire**; **capito** from **capire: to understand**; **finito** from **finire: to finish** and **vestito** from **vestire: to dress**, etc.
- 11 **Ma io ho voluto questa qui, perché le finestre danno verso le montagne.** *But I wanted this one (lit. here) because the windows look out onto the mountains.*

- a **ho voluto: I wanted** This is the perfect tense of the **ere** verb **volere: to want** (Note 7b).
- b **danno verso: look out onto** (lit. *give towards*) **Danno** is the 3rd person plural form of the irregular verb **dare: to give**. Notice the idiomatic use of **dare** in this expression.
- 12 **E si vedono le stazioni delle seggiovie e delle funivie sullo sfondo.** *And the chairlift and cable-car stations can be seen in the distance (lit. on the background).*
- a **si vedono: are seen, can be seen** This is the same type of construction as that used in Note 5. Notice that although we translate **si vedono** by *can be seen* in English, the verb **potere: to be able** does not appear. *I can see the mountains* is translated by **Vedo le montagne**, whilst **Posso vedere le montagne** means *I can (i.e. I am physically able to) see the mountains*.
- b **sullo sfondo: in the distance, in the background** This is a useful expression to learn.

Part two: What happens

Lunedì all'arrivo *The arrival on Monday*

Paolo explains to the receptionist that they have already booked rooms and the receptionist tells them their room numbers. Paolo asks for the luggage to be sent up and the chambermaid shows them to their rooms. The receptionist tells him what time meals are served.

Martedì mattina: la prima colazione *Tuesday morning: breakfast*

Paolo and Maria Teresa come down to find that Giovanna and Alberto have already had breakfast. Paolo orders for himself and Maria Teresa whilst she asks how Giovanna slept. Giovanna and Alberto go for a walk while their parents have breakfast and they all arrange to meet later at the skilift.

Mercoledì: un bel guaio *Wednesday: a fine mess*

Alberto asks the chambermaid who is cleaning his room to put an extra blanket on his bed. He also asks to be shown how the hot-water tap works. She tries to show him but realises that there is something wrong and that she must call a plumber. She finds however that she cannot turn off the tap; Alberto tells her to put a bowl on the floor and to call the plumber straight away as she has made a fine mess.

Giovedì: discussione *Thursday: discussion*

Maria Teresa would like Giovanna and Alberto to come with her and Paolo for some walks in the valley, but they prefer to ski.

il burro butter
 il caffelatte white coffee
 il cameriere waiter
 il ghiro dormouse
 il giovedì Thursday
 il guaio disaster, mess, trouble
 l'idraulico plumber
 il lavandino washbasin
 il martedì Tuesday
 il mercoledì Wednesday
 il miele honey
 il pane bread
 il pane tostato toast
 il pasticcio mess
 il piede foot
 il punto point, dot
 il risultato result
 il rubinetto tap
 lo scarpone boot
 lo sci ski

la bacinella basin, bowl
 la chiave key
 la colazione breakfast
 la coperta blanket
 la discesa descent
 la gita excursion
 l'idea idea
 la notte night
 la televisione television
 l'umidità humidity
 la valle valley

aperto turned on
 contento happy
 mattiniero early-rising
 rotto broken
 solo alone
 squisito exquisite
 tostato toasted

aggiungere to add
 aprire to turn on

cenare to have dinner
 chiudere to turn off
 combinare to make, to bring about
 dica (dire) can I help you?
 dormire to sleep
 dormire come un ghiro to sleep like a log
 fare colazione to have breakfast
 fare quattro passi to go for a stroll
 mandare to send
 noleggiare to hire
 ordinare to order
 pagare to pay
 possono (potere) they can
 pranzare to have lunch
 riservare to book
 seguire to follow
 sentire to listen, to hear
 venire to come
 vorremmo (volere) we should like
 vuol? = vuole? will you?

vi you

fino a until

a piedi on foot
 di notte at night
 giù down
 in punto precisely, on the dot
 intanto in the meantime
 laggiù down there
 per terra on the floor
 su up

pure nonetheless

Oh mamma mia! Oh my goodness!

trenta thirty
 trentotto thirty-eight
 undici eleven
 ventuno twenty-one

Lunedì all'arrivo The arrival on Monday

- 13 **Buongiorno, signore. Dica.** *Good afternoon, sir. Can I help you?*
Dica: *Can I help you?* (lit. *Say!*) We have already met the expression **Dica pure:** *Can I help you?* (L3, N30). However **dica** is really the **lei** command form of the verb **dire:** *to say*; the **lei** command form of all **ire** verbs ends with the letter **a** (Appendix 9).
- 14 **Abbiamo prenotato tre camere. Tosi.** *We've booked three rooms. Tosi.*
Abbiamo prenotato: *We've booked* This is the perfect tense (**passato prossimo**) of the verb **prenotare** (Note 6).
- 15 **Abbiamo riservato la ventuno doppia con bagno, e la trenta e la trentotto singole con doccia.** *We've reserved room: twenty-one (which is a) double with a bathroom, and rooms thirty and thirty-eight (which are, singles with a shower.*
Abbiamo riservato: *We've reserved* This is the perfect tense of the verb **riservare:** *to reserve* (Note 6).
- 16 **Vuol lasciare un documento, per favore?** *Will you (lit. Do you want to) leave a document, please?*
 a **Vuol?:** (lit.) *Do you want?* **Vuol** is the abbreviated form of **vuole**.
 b **lasciare un documento:** *leave a document* All hotel guests in Italy are obliged by law to present means of identification (e.g. an identity card or passport) when they check into a hotel; their particulars are then taken by the hotel and their documents returned to them shortly afterwards.
- 17 **Può mandare su i bagagli?** *Can you send up the luggage?*
su: *up* Used after a verb, **su** has the meaning *up*.
- 18 **Signorina, per favore accompagni i signori.** *Miss, please accompany these people.*
 a **accompagni:** *accompany* This is the **lei** command form of the verb **accompagnare** (L7, N16).
 b **i signori:** (lit.) *the gentlemen, people* The masculine plural form **signori** can be used in connection with both men and women when referring to mixed company.
- 19 **A che ora è la colazione?** *What time is breakfast?*
la colazione: *breakfast* Here **colazione** means the same as **prima colazione** (L6, N26).
- 20 **Di solito si fa colazione dalle otto alle nove e mezzo, si pranza all'una e si cena alle otto.** *Breakfast is usually from eight to nine thirty, lunch at one and dinner at eight.*
 a **si fa colazione:** (lit.) *one makes breakfast* The expression *to have breakfast* is translated by **fare colazione** in Italian. This phrase therefore follows the same rule that we saw in Note 4, **si sente il profumo:** *one smells the perfume.*

- b **si pranza:** (lit.) *one lunches* The verb **pranzare** means *to have lunch* or *to lunch*; **si pranza** therefore follows the same pattern as **si sta bene** in Note 2. Notice that **pranzare:** *to have lunch* is linked with **il pranzo:** *lunch*.
- c **si cena:** (lit.) *one dines* This verb follows the same pattern as **si pranza** in b above. Notice too that **cenare:** *to dine, to have dinner* is linked with **la cena:** *dinner*.

Martedì mattina: la prima colazione Tuesday morning: breakfast

- 21 **Avete già fatto colazione tu e Alberto?** *Have you and Alberto already had breakfast?*
Avete fatto colazione?: *Have you had breakfast?* This is the perfect tense (**passato prossimo**) of the verb **fare**; Paolo uses the **voi** form **avete** because he is addressing both Giovanna and Alberto. Notice that **fatto** is the past participle of **fare** and that it does not follow the usual rule for past participles of **are** verbs.
- 22 **Come siete mattinieri! Che cosa c'è di buono?** *What early risers (lit. How early-rising) you are! What's there good to eat?*
 a **mattinieri:** (lit.) *early-rising* Notice this adjective that is used to describe someone who gets up early.
 b **Che cosa c'è di buono?:** (lit.) *What is there good?* Notice the use of **di** followed by an adjective (here **buono**) in this type of construction. Further examples are **qualcosa di bello:** *something beautiful*, **niente di buono:** *nothing good* etc. (L6, N19).
- 23 **Potete ordinare del miele: è squisito.** *You can order some honey: it's exquisite.*
del miele: *some honey* Remember that **del** can mean *some* as well as *of the* (L7, N41a); **di + il miele = del miele:** *some honey*.
- 24 **Caffè latte, grazie. Hai dormito bene, Giovanna?** *Coffee with milk, thank you. Did you sleep well, Giovanna?*
 a **Caffè latte:** *Coffee with milk* (lit. *coffeemilk*) This is the type of coffee that is normally drunk at breakfast; it is different from **cappuccino** (L4, N30b) in that the coffee used is not so strong and the milk added not so frothy. It can be **amaro:** *bitter* or **dolce:** *sweet*, i.e. with **zucchero:** *sugar*.
- b **Hai dormito?:** *Did you sleep?* This is the perfect tense of the **ire** verb **dormire:** *to sleep* (Note 10).
- 25 **Ieri sera ho guardato la televisione e ho aspettato la comunicazione con Firenze fino alle undici. Poi ho dormito come un ghiro.** *Last night I watched television and waited for my phone call to Florence until eleven o'clock. Then I slept like a log* (lit. *dormouse*).
 a **ho guardato:** *I watched* This is the perfect tense of the **are** verb **guardare:** *to watch, to look at*.

- b **ho aspettato:** *I waited for* This is the perfect tense of **aspettare:** *to wait*.
- c **fino alle undici:** *until eleven o'clock* Notice the phrase **fino a:** *until*; **fino a + le undici = fino alle undici.** Giovanna has obviously telephoned her fiancé Marino in Florence through the operator, and has had to wait a long time for the call to come through.
- d **ho dormito come un ghiro:** *I slept like a log* (lit. *dormouse*) Notice this delightful expression **dormire come un ghiro:** (lit.) *to sleep like a dormouse*.
- 26 **Senta, per favore. Due caffè latte, pane tostato, burro e miele.** (lit.) *Listen, please. Two white coffees, toast, butter and honey.*
 a **Senta:** (lit.) *Hear, Listen* This is the **lei** command form of the **ire** verb **sentire:** *to hear*; as with **dica**, from another **ire** verb, **dire** (Note 13), the **lei** command form ends with the letter **a**. However, although **sentita** literally means *hear*, it is often used in Italy to attract someone's attention, much as we use *Excuse me* in English, e.g. when calling a waiter, as here, or when asking for information etc.
- b **due caffè latte:** *two white coffees* Notice that **caffè latte** is invariable, i.e. it does not change its form in the plural.
- c **pane tostato:** *toast* (lit. *toasted bread*) Notice how we must use two words, i.e. **pane tostato** in Italian to translate *toast*.
- d Italian breakfast is normally a very light meal consisting of coffee or tea and bread or rolls eaten with butter and jam.
- 27 **Paolo, i ragazzi possono andare a fare quattro passi, mentre ci aspettano.** *Paolo, the children can go for a stroll while they're waiting for us.*
 a **i ragazzi possono:** *the children can* Notice this present tense *they* form of the irregular verb **potere:** *to be able*.
- b **fare quattro passi:** *to go for a stroll* (lit. *make four steps*) This is yet another idiomatic expression using the verb **fare**. It is similar to the expression **a due passi** that we have already seen (L6, N27).
- c **ci aspettano:** *they're waiting for us* Notice again that **ci:** *us* is used in front of the verb (Note 7a).
- 28 **Vi aspettiamo alla stazione dello skilift laggiù. Non vedo l'ora di essere sugli sci!** *We'll wait for you at the (lit. station of the) skilift down there. I can't wait to be on (lit. the) skis!*
 a **Vi aspettiamo:** *We'll wait for you* You in the **voi** form is translated as **vi** when it is the object of a verb just as **ci** translates *us* (Note 7a), **mi** translates *me* (L7, N27) and **ti** translates *you* in the **tu** form when it is the object of a verb (L7, N28) (Appendix 3). Notice once again that all of these words immediately precede the verb in a sentence.
- b **Non vedo l'ora di essere:** *I can't wait to be* Remember this expression (L6, N11a).
- c **sugli sci:** *on skis* Notice that the plural of **lo sci** is **gli sci**, i.e. **sci** is invariable and does not change its form in the plural.

Mercoledì: un bel guaio *Wednesday: a fine mess*

29 Mercoledì: un bel guaio *Wednesday: a fine mess*

a bel: *fine* Remember that **bel** is a form of **bello** (Note 3b).

b guaio: *mess* Un **guaio** is generally something bad and can mean *a disaster, an accident, trouble* etc.

30 Senta, per favore. Può aggiungere una coperta sul letto? Di notte c'è molta umidità. *Excuse me, please. Can you put another (lit. add a) blanket on the bed? At night it's very damp (lit. there's a lot of dampness).*

a Senta: *Excuse me* Notice again how **sentà** is used to attract someone's attention (Note 26a).

b Di notte: *At night* Notice the use of **di** in this useful phrase.

31 La metto per stasera. *I'll put it on for this evening.*

La metto: *I'll put it on* Here **la** refers to **la coperta** mentioned by Alberto.

32 Finisca pure la camera adesso. *Please go ahead and finish the room now (lit. Finish nonetheless the room now).*

a Finisca: *Finish* This is the **lei** command form of the **ire** verb **finire** which follows the same pattern as **capire** (Appendix 9).

b pure: (lit.) *nonetheless* When **pure** follows a command form, it is often giving someone permission to do something. Here Alberto is telling the chambermaid to go ahead and finish the room, even though he is still in it.

33 Apra il rubinetto e lo lasci aperto per due o tre minuti. *Turn on the tap and keep it turned on for two or three minutes.*

a Apra: *Turn on (lit. Open)* This is the **lei** command form of the **ire** verb **aprire**. All **ire** verbs like **dormire** (Appendix 9) make their **lei** command form by replacing the **ire** of the infinitive with an **a**; thus **apra** derives from **aprire**, **sentà** from **sentire**, **dorma** from **dormire** etc.

b Apra: *Turn on* Notice the use of the verb **aprire**: (lit.) *to open* when speaking of a tap; it is also the verb used for *turn on* in connection with a light switch, radio or television etc.

c lo: *it* Remember that we must use **lo** to translate *it* when referring to a masculine singular object (here **rubinetto**).

d lasci aperto: *keep turned on, (lit.) leave open* Here **lasci** is the **lei** command form of the **are** verb **lasciare**: *to leave*. Notice once again the typical **i** ending.

e lo lasci aperto: *keep it turned on* Remember that pronouns always precede the **lei** command form of verbs (L7, N48c).

34 Ho provato, ma non ho avuto nessun risultato. Provi lei. *I've tried, but nothing's happened (lit. I haven't had any result). You try.*

a Ho provato: *I've tried* This is the perfect tense (**passato prossimo**) of the **are** verb **provare**: *to try*.

b non . . . nessun Remember that when we want to say *not any* or *no*, we must use **non** in front of the verb and **nessun** as an adjective after it.

Nessun behaves like **un/una/uno** (L3, N22).

c ho avuto: *I have had* This is the perfect tense of the **ere** verb **avere**: *to have*. Notice how the past participle **avuto** ends with the letters **uto** like many **ere** verbs (Notes 7b and 11).

d Provi lei: *You try* Notice how Alberto deliberately uses **lei**: *you* for emphasis.

35 Oh il solito guaio. *Oh the usual trouble.*

guaio: *trouble* Notice that **guaio** has many translations in English (Note 29b).

36 Chiuda il rubinetto intanto. *Turn off the tap then.*

a Chiuda: *Turn off (lit. Close)* This is the **lei** command form of the **ere** verb **chiudere**. All **ere** verbs make the **lei** command form by replacing the **ere** of the infinitive with an **a**. Notice too that like **aprire**: *to open* or *to turn on*, **chiudere**, its opposite, means *to close* or *to turn off* (Note 33b).

b intanto: (lit.) *in the meantime* Notice this idiomatic usage of **intanto**.

37 Metta una bacinella per terra e dica all'idraulico di venire subito. Ha combinato un bel pasticcio! *Put a bowl on the floor and tell the plumber to come straight away. You've made a fine mess!*

a Metta: *Put* This is the **lei** command form of the **ere** verb **mettere**: *to put*.

b dica all'idraulico di venire: *tell the plumber to come* **Dica** is of course the **lei** command form of **dire** (Note 13); notice however that in Italian *to tell someone to do something* is **dire A qualcuno DI fare qualcosa** i.e. the person you tell is preceded by **A** whilst what you tell him to do is preceded by **DI**.

c Ha combinato: *You've made* This is the perfect tense of **combinare**: *to bring about, to do, to make*; it is a verb that is often used very colloquially e.g. A mother addressing her child could ask **Cos'hai combinato?**: *What have you been up to?*

d bel: *fine* Remember that this is a form of **bello** (Note 3b).

Giovedì: discussione *Thursday: discussion*

38 Per quanti giorni avete noleggiato gli sci e gli scarponi? *For how many days have you hired the skis and the boots?*

a avete noleggiato?: *have you hired?* **Noleggiare** can be translated as either *to hire* or *to rent*; it is the word used for hiring a car, a boat or a bicycle. Here **noleggiare** is used in the perfect tense (**passato prossimo**).

b gli sci: *the skis* Remember that **sci** remains the same in the plural (Note 28c).

39 Si paga meno. *One pays less.*

Si paga: *One pays* This is the same construction as **si sta bene** (Note 2) and **si pranza, si cena** etc. (Note 20).

- 40 Perché io e papà vorremmo fare qualche gita a piedi giù nella valle.
Because father and I should like to go for a few walks down in the valley.
- a vorremmo: *we should like* We have already seen vorrei: *I should like* (L6, N28); here we have the noi form vorremmo: *we should like*.
- b fare qualche gita a piedi: *go for a few walks* To go for an excursion is fare una gita in Italian. Therefore fare una gita a piedi: (lit.) *to go for an excursion on foot* means *to go for a walk*.
- c Qualche literally means *some* but it is an unusual word in that it never changes its form and must always be followed by a singular noun giving a plural meaning, e.g. *some pens*: qualche penna (L7, N25b), Qualche banca chiude prima dell'una: *Some banks close before one*. When however you want to say *some milk*, *some petrol*, *some coffee* etc. (i.e. *some* of a substance that one cannot count) you must use un po' di or del, della, dell' e.g. *some milk*: del latte, un po' di latte; *some petrol*: della benzina, un po' di benzina; *some coffee*: del caffè, un po' di caffè.
- d a piedi: *on foot* This is a useful phrase to learn.
- 41 Ma Alberto ha fatto tutte le discese possibili e tu l'hai seguito dappertutto. *But Alberto has made all the possible descents and you've followed him everywhere.*
- a ha fatto: *has made* Remember that this is the perfect tense of fare (Note 21).
- b tu l'hai seguito: *you've followed him* Hai seguito is the perfect tense of the verb seguire: *to follow*.
- c l': *him* This stands for lo: *him* but because it appears in front of hai which begins with a vowel sound, lo hai becomes shortened to l'hai. Notice once again that when lo means *him* or *it*, it is placed in front of the verb (L7, N31).
- 42 Lo so, mamma. *I know, mum.*
 Lo so: (lit.) *I know it* The words *I know* used on their own are always expressed as Lo so in Italian; so: *I know* is used only when it is followed by a sentence or some other words, e.g. *I know that you are French*: So che sei francese. *I don't know the lesson*: Non so la lezione.

Part three: What happens

Uno spuntino A snack

A lady orders some food and drinks for herself and her husband and asks the waiter to put it on their bill.

La partenza Leaving

A guest is leaving the hotel and asks for her bill; she tells the receptionist that the cases are packed and that she would like a taxi. The receptionist says he will order one by phone.

Part three: New words

il latte milk	preparare to prepare
lo spuntino snack	della some
il tè al latte tea with milk	per telefono by telephone
la cliente client	senz'altro certainly
la marmellata jam	trentadue thirty-two
la partenza departure	trentatre thirty-three
fare le valigie to pack the suit-cases	venticinque twenty-five

Part three: Notes

Uno spuntino A snack

- 43 Un tè al latte. *A tea with milk.*
 Because lemon tea also exists in Italy, the lady must specify how she wants the tea: remember tè al limone: *lemon tea* (L4, N32a) and notice the idiomatic usage of al in these two examples.
- 44 Nient'altro? *Nothing else?*
 Niente used on its own without non and a verb also means *nothing*; here the final e of niente has been dropped because it is followed by the a of altro. This expression is very commonly used in shops, restaurants, bars etc. in Italy.
- 45 Vorremmo anche del pane e della marmellata. *We'd also like some bread and some jam.*
 della marmellata: *some jam* Remember that della can mean *some* as well as *of the*; di + la marmellata = della marmellata: *some jam* (Note 40c).

La partenza Leaving (lit. The departure)

- 46 Lo preparo subito. *I'll get it ready* (lit. *prepare it*) *straight away.*
 Lo: *it* Here lo refers to the bill: il conto.
- 47 Sì, abbiamo fatto le valigie. *Yes, we've packed.*
 abbiamo fatto le valigie: *we've packed* (lit. *we've done the cases*) Notice that fare le valigie: *to pack* is yet another expression using the verb fare.
- 48 Allora il ragazzo le può portare giù. *Well then, the boy can carry them down.*
 le: *them* This refers to le valigie; notice that where there are two verbs in a sentence as here (può and portare) the word for *him, her, it or them* comes in front of the two verbs.
- 49 Si può avere un taxi per le cinque? *Can we have a taxi for five o'clock?*
 Si può?: (lit.) *One can?* Again this is the same type of construction as in Note 2.

- 50 **Senz'altro. Lo prenotiamo per telefono.** *Certainly. We'll book it by telephone.*
- a **Senz'altro:** *Certainly* This is a useful expression to learn.
- b **Lo: it** **Lo** here refers to **un taxi**.
- c **per telefono:** *by telephone* This is another useful expression to learn.

Lezione nove

Un viaggio in treno

Lesson nine

A train journey

Part one: What happens

Maria Teresa is with the rest of the family travelling on a train to Venice. Although it is very crowded with weekend travellers they have managed to find window seats. She wonders where Alberto and Paolo have gone and imagines that they have gone out into the corridor for a chat and a smoke.

Part one: New words

l'espresso express, fast train
il finestrino window
il mucchio heap, pile
il parente relative
il ponte bridge

la domenica Sunday
la gente people

affollato crowded

nono ninth

andare a trovare to visit (people)
chiacchierare to chat
fare il ponte to take extra days' holiday
uscire to go out

che which, who, that

presto early

Part one: Notes

- 1 **Siamo sull'espresso Torino — Milano — Venezia che è proprio affollato oggi.** *We're on the fast Turin - Milan - Venice train which is really crowded today.*
- a **espresso:** *fast train* There are four types of train in Italy: the **rapido** which is a luxury express train stopping at very few stations and for

which a supplement is often charged; the **espresso:** *express train*; the **diretto** which stops at more stations than the **espresso** and the **accelerato** or **locale** which is normally a local stopping train.

- b **che:** *which* **Che** meaning *which, that* or *who* never changes its form regardless of what it is referring to.
- 2 **È solo giovedì, ma c'è un mucchio di gente che fa il ponte fino a domenica, e va a trovare i parenti e gli amici:** *It's only Thursday, but there's a whole crowd (lit. heap) of people taking a long weekend and going to visit relatives and friends.*
- a **un mucchio:** *a heap, a mass* This is a very useful colloquial expression to learn.
- b **gente:** *people* This is a singular noun with a plural meaning; because **gente** is singular, the verbs following it are also in the singular form, i.e. **fa** and **va**. Notice it is a feminine noun: **la gente**.
- c **che:** *that* Notice that **che** here refers to people but that it can also be used to refer to objects, e.g. **espresso:** *fast train* (Note 1b).
- d **che fa il ponte fino a domenica:** *that are taking a long weekend until Sunday* (lit. *that make the bridge until Sunday*) The expression **fare il ponte** is commonly used when for example there is a public holiday on a Thursday followed by a work-day on a Friday followed by a weekend. In this case it is likely for many companies to **fare il ponte** over the Friday and not work on that day.
- e **fino a:** *until* Remember this expression (L8, N25c).
- f **va a trovare:** *go to visit* (lit. *go to find*) The expression **andare a trovare** is used when speaking about visiting people; **visitare** is used when speaking about towns, monuments and countries etc. Thus, *I'm going to visit my parents* is **Vado a trovare i miei genitori** in Italian, but *I'm going to visit Venice* is **Vado a visitare Venezia**.
- 3 **Per fortuna siamo arrivati alla stazione presto.** *Fortunately we arrived at the station early.*
- siamo arrivati:** *we arrived* In Lesson 8 we saw how the perfect tense (**passato prossimo**) was formed with the verb **avere** followed by a past participle (Note 6). The majority of Italian verbs do form their perfect tense in this way, but a few of them use the verb **essere:** *to be* instead of the verb **avere:** *to have*. **Arrivare:** *to arrive* is one of these verbs, thus *I have arrived* is **Sono arrivato** and *He has arrived* is **È arrivato** etc. However, these verbs are also different from those that go with **avere** because the past participle must agree with the person who is doing the action, e.g. *He arrived:* **È arrivato** but *She arrived:* **È arrivata**. In this latter case, the past participle takes the feminine singular form because the subject of the verb is *she*. In this sentence there is an **i** on the participle **arrivati** because it agrees with the plural subject **noi:** *we*, and **siamo** is used instead

of **abbiamo** because **arrivare** is one of the verbs that must be used with **essere** in the perfect tense (Appendix 6c).

- 4 **Giovanna non ha prenotato i posti quando è andata a comprare i biglietti.** *Giovanna didn't book the seats when she went to buy the tickets.*
è andata: *she went* **Andare:** *to go* is another verb that goes with **essere** in the perfect tense (Note 3), so its past participle **andato** must agree with *lei: she*, the subject of the verb, and become **andata**.
- 5 **Ma siamo stati fortunati e abbiamo trovato questi qui vicino al finestrino.** *But we've been lucky and have found these near the window.*
- a **siamo stati:** *we've been* **Stato** is the irregular past participle of **essere:** *to be* which is yet another verb that uses **essere** in the perfect tense (**passato prossimo**). Thus, *I have been* (masc.) is translated as **Sono stato**; *He has been* as **È stato**, *She has been* as **È stata** etc.
- b **finestrino:** *window* This is the word used for the window in a car, train, bus etc. The word **finestra** is normally used for a window in a building (L8, N11).
- 6 **Dove sono andati Paolo e Alberto?** *Where have Paolo and Alberto gone?*
sono andati: *have gone* This is the 3rd person plural form of **andare** in the perfect tense (Appendix 6c).
- 7 **Forse sono usciti nel corridoio a fumare e a chiacchierare.** *Perhaps they've gone out into the corridor for a smoke and a chat (lit. to smoke and to chat).*
sono usciti: *they've gone out* This is the perfect tense of **uscire:** *to go out*, which is yet another verb that uses **essere** in the **passato prossimo**.

Part two: What happens

Alla biglietteria At the ticket-office

Giovanna buys the train tickets and asks the clerk for information. He becomes impatient and sends her to the information office.

Alla stazione di Verona At Verona station

A man and a woman get into the same compartment as the Tosis at Verona. The man asks if there is a restaurant car on the train but Paolo suggests that he buy some packed food from the trolley on the platform.

Che rabbia! How infuriating!

The ticket-inspector asks to see the tickets, but the man who got on at Verona explains that he and his cousin had no time to buy a ticket. When the inspector explains that they will have to pay a fine in addition to the ticket, the traveller objects; his cousin eventually calms him down saying that it is useless trying to argue.

Scendendo alla stazione di Venezia Getting off at Venice station

When Maria Teresa, Alberto and Giovanna get onto the platform, they find that Paolo is still talking to the man who did not have a ticket. Maria Teresa sends Giovanna and Alberto to the left luggage office with some of the cases and they plan to go to the hotel booking office to find a hotel.

Part two: New words

il cestino da viaggio food pack, packed meal
 il controllore ticket-inspector, ticket-collector
 il deposito depot
 il deposito bagagli left luggage office
 il Dio God
 il fine-settimana weekend
 il giornalaio newsagent, newspaper-seller
 il gusto taste
 il regolamento ruling, regulation
 il ristorante restaurant
 il sollievo relief
 il supplemento supplement
 il tifoso fan
 il turno sitting
 l'ufficio informazioni information office
 il vagone ristorante restaurant car
 il viaggiatore traveller

finito finished, over
 inutile useless, pointless
 ultimo last

attaccare bottone to buttonhole
 credere to think best, to think
 devono (dovere) you must, they must
 dice (dire) you say
 dico (dire) I say
 discutere to discuss, to argue
 mi spiace = mi dispiace I'm sorry
 salire to get on
 scendere to get off, to get out
 sistemare to organise
 vendere to sell

loro you

di fronte a opposite

appena just
 ci there
 di giorno by day

chissà who knows
 ed = e and
 Oh Dio! For goodness' sake! My goodness!

l'andata outward journey, going
 la bibita drink
 la biglietteria ticket-office
 la classe class
 la cuccetta couchette
 la cugina cousin
 la fortuna luck
 la rabbia anger, fury
 la storia story

Part two: Notes

Alla biglietteria At the ticket-office

- 8 **Andata e ritorno?** *Return (lit. Going and return)?*
 A return ticket is **un biglietto di andata e ritorno** whilst a single ticket or one-way ticket is **un biglietto di andata**.

- 9 **Supplemento rapido?** *Express supplement?*
For the special **rapido** (luxury express) trains it is usually necessary to pay a supplement in addition to the normal fare.
- 10 **Come crede.** *As you think best.*
crede: (lit.) *you think* **Credere:** *to think* or *to believe* is a regular **ere** verb.
- 11 **No, viaggiamo di giorno. C'è il vagone ristorante?** *No, we're travelling by day. Is there a restaurant car?*
- a **di giorno:** *by day* This is like the expression **di notte:** *by night* that we have already seen (L8, N30b).
- b **il vagone ristorante:** *a restaurant car* Notice the word order here; the word **ristorante** comes after **vagone** i.e. the two words are the opposite way round from English.
- 12 **Signorina, c'è un mucchio di gente che aspetta. Queste cose si chiedono all'ufficio informazioni!** *Miss, there's a crowd of people waiting. You should ask these things* (lit. *These things are asked*) *at the information office.*
- a **un mucchio di gente che aspetta:** (lit.) *a heap of people that waits*
Notice once again how **un mucchio** is used (Note 2a) and that a 3rd person singular verb (**aspetta**) once again follows the noun **gente:** *people* (Note 2b).
- b **Queste cose si chiedono:** (lit.) *These things are asked* Remember this construction from Lesson 8 (Note 5a).
- c **all'ufficio informazioni:** *at the information office* Notice once again the word order in Italian (Note 11b) which prefers to put the main object first (here **ufficio**) and its qualifying characteristic afterwards (here **informazioni**).
- 13 **Ci vado subito.** *I'll go there straight away.*
Ci: *there* **Ci** is used to mean *there* or *to there*; here it refers to the **ufficio informazioni** already mentioned. Another example would be **Ritorni a casa?:** *Are you going back home?* **Sì, ci ritorno alle due:** *Yes, I'm going back (there) at two o'clock.*

Alla stazione di Verona *At Verona station*

- 14 **Non credo. Il signore che è salito con noi a Torino, è sceso a Milano.** *I don't think so. The gentleman who got on with us in Turin got out at Milan.*
- a **Il signore che:** *The gentleman who* Notice that here once again **che** is used to mean *who* (Note 2c). **Chi?:** *Who?* is used only in questions.
- b **è salito:** *got on* This is the perfect tense of the verb **salire:** *to get on* which is yet another verb that needs **essere** in the perfect tense.
- c **è sceso:** *got out* **Sceso** is the irregular past participle of **scendere:** *to get out*, another verb that uses **essere** in the perfect tense.

- 15 **Scendo a prendere le valigie.** *I'm coming down to get the cases.*
Scendo: *I'm coming down* **Scendere** literally means *to descend* or *to go down*, but is also the verb used in Italian for *getting out of* a car, *getting off* a train, tram or a bus or *going downstairs* etc.
- 16 **Provi a chiedere al ragazzo che vende le bibite e i panini. È appena passato.** *Try asking the boy selling the drinks and the rolls. He's just gone by.*
- a **Provi a chiedere:** *Try asking* **Provi** is the **lei** command form of the **are** verb **provare:** *to try*. Remember that this form of **are** verbs usually ends with an **i** (L7, N16).
- b **chiedere al ragazzo:** *asking the boy* Remember that we **ask TO someone to do something** in Italian (**chiedere A qualcuno di fare qualcosa**) as in L6, N37a.
- c **ragazzo che vende:** *boy who is selling* Notice that once again **che** means *who* (Note 14a).
- d **È appena passato:** *He's just gone by* (lit. *passed*). **Passare** meaning *to pass by* also uses **essere** in the perfect tense when the verb has no object e.g. *We passed in front of the railway station:* **Siamo passati davanti alla stazione.**
- e At most Italian railway stations there is a man with a trolley on the platform selling hot coffee, cold drinks, ice-cream, rolls and **cestini da viaggio:** *food packs*, etc. **Un cestino da viaggio** usually contains a fairly full meal, sometimes even hot food.

Che rabbia! *How infuriating!* (lit. *What anger!*)

- 17 **Mia cugina ed io non abbiamo il biglietto. Siamo saliti a Verona all'ultimo momento.** *My cousin and I haven't got tickets. We got on at Verona at the last moment.*
- a **Mia cugina ed io:** *My cousin and I* Just as **a** often becomes **ad** in front of a word beginning with a vowel (L5, N26b) so **e** often changes to **ed**.
- b **Siamo saliti:** *We got on* As we saw in Note 14b, **salire:** *to get on* also uses **essere** in the perfect tense and **saliti** therefore agrees with **noi**, i.e. the subject of the verb. **Salire** is also the verb used for *getting into* cars, *getting on* buses, trams and trains and for *going upstairs*.
- 18 **Allora devono fare il biglietto adesso. Dove vanno?** *Well then, you must buy your tickets now. Where are you going?*
- a **devono:** *you must* This is the 3rd person plural form of **dovere:** *to have to*. We have already seen that **voi** (i.e. the 2nd person plural) is normally used when addressing two or more people; however, sometimes you will hear you and your friends or family addressed collectively as **loro** and with the 3rd person plural form of the verb. This **loro** form of *you* is used particularly in formal situations, e.g. when a public official addresses private people (as here) or when you wish to show respect to older people.

- b Dove vanno?: *Where are you going?* Vanno is the 3rd person plural form of *andare*: *to go*. As in Note 18a, the ticket collector is here addressing the two travellers very formally.
- 19 C'è anche la multa da pagare. *There's also the fine to pay.*
 a la multa: *the fine* If you board a train in Italy without first buying a ticket you must pay not only the price of the ticket, but also a heavy fine for not having a ticket.
 b la multa da pagare: *the fine to pay* Da gives a passive meaning to this sentence, i.e. *the fine to be paid* (L7, N40).
- 20 Io pago il biglietto e nient'altro. *I'm paying for the ticket and nothing else.*
 Io pago: *I'm paying for* Notice that *pagare* can mean both *to pay* and *to pay for*, just as *aspettare* can mean both *to wait* and *to wait for*.
- 21 Come dice? *I beg your pardon?*
 Come dice?: (lit.) *How do you say?* This is an expression of surprise. The ticket collector cannot really believe what he hears, so he asks the passenger in a rather sharp way to repeat what he has just said.
- 22 Ma conosce il regolamento? *But you know the ruling?*
 conosce?: *you know?* The *controllore* uses the verb *conoscere* here rather than the verb *sapere* because he means *Are you acquainted with the ruling?* (L7, N39a).
- 23 Mi spiace signore, se non paga, loro devono scendere alla prossima stazione. *I'm sorry sir, if you don't pay, you (two) must get off at the next station.*
 a mi spiace: *I'm sorry* Spiace, commonly used in conversation, is the abbreviation of *dispiace* (L7, N22).
 b loro devono scendere: *you (two) must get off* Here the ticket collector addresses the two travellers and calls them *loro*: *you* (Note 18a). Devono is the 3rd person plural form of *dovere*: *to have to*.
- 24 Giuseppe, il controllore ha ragione. È inutile discutere. Paghiamo e basta. *Giuseppe, the ticket-collector's right. It's pointless arguing. Let's pay and be done with it.*
 a il controllore ha ragione: *the ticket-collector's right* Remember the expression *avere ragione*: *to be right* (L4, N16).
 b discutere: *arguing* Here *discutere*: *to discuss* has the meaning of *to argue*. Remember that *discussione*, the noun linked with *discutere*, means both *discussion* and *argument* (L6, N13b).
 c Paghiamo e basta: *Let's pay and be done with it* (lit. *and it's enough*). Notice that an *h* must be added after the *g* in *paghiamo* to preserve the hard *g* sound. Notice too that *basta* is used colloquially here.

Scendendo alla stazione di Venezia *Getting off at Venice station*

- 25 Scendendo alla stazione di Venezia *Getting off at Venice station*

Scendendo: *Getting off* Just as *andando* (from the *are* verb *andare*) meant *going* (L6, N22), so *scendendo* (from the *ere* verb *scendere*) means *getting off*. With *ere* type verbs, the gerund usually ends with the letters *endo* in Italian.

- 26 Non è ancora sceso. Ha attaccato bottone con il signore senza biglietto: sono tutt'e due tifosi dell'Inter. *He hasn't got off yet. He's button-holed the man who didn't have a ticket: they're both Inter fans.*
 a Non è ancora sceso: *He hasn't got off yet.* Once again this is the perfect tense form of the verb *scendere* (Note 14c).
 b Ha attaccato bottone con: *He's button-holed* (lit. *attached button with*) This is a useful idiom to learn and one very similar to its English equivalent.
 c tutt'e due: *both* This is the abbreviation of *tutti e due* (L5, N24a).
 d tifosi dell'Inter: (lit.) *fans of the Inter* Inter is a well-known football club of Milan.
- 27 Allora, tu e Giovanna cominciate a portare qualche valigia al deposito bagagli. *Well then, you and Giovanna start carrying some cases to the left luggage office.*
 a cominciate: *start* Maria Teresa is giving Alberto and Giovanna a command here, so she simply uses the *voi* form of the verb *cominciare* (Appendix 9).
 b qualche valigia: *some cases* Remember that *qualche* means *some*, but that it must always be followed by a singular noun (L8, N40c).
 c deposito bagagli: *left luggage office* Notice once again the word order here (Note 11b).
- 28 E poi andiamo all'ufficio prenotazione alberghi. *And then we'll go to the hotel booking office.*
 l'ufficio prenotazione alberghi: *the hotel booking office* Notice once again the word order here (Note 27c). At most tourist centres in Italy there is a special office for helping travellers to find overnight accommodation; these offices are usually situated at airports or at railway stations.
- 29 Dovete trovare almeno un albergo di seconda; conoscete papà e i suoi gusti. *You must find at least a second-class hotel: you know father and his tastes.*
 a Dovete: *You must* This is the *voi* form of *dovere*: *to have to*.
 b un albergo di seconda: *a second-class hotel* Here *seconda* is in the feminine singular form because it stands for *seconda categoria*.
 c i suoi gusti: *his tastes* We have already seen that *suo* and its compounds (*sua*, *sue* and *suoi*) not only mean *your* (L5, N21a and 23a) but also *his* and *her* (L7, N2b). Here *papà e i suoi gusti* obviously means *father and his tastes*.
- 30 Chissà che cosa troviamo con questo ponte di fine-settimana. *Who knows what we'll find with this long weekend.*
 ponte di fine-settimana: *long weekend*, (lit. *bridge of weekend*) Here the word *ponte* refers back to the expression *fa il ponte* (Note 2d).

Part three: What happens

Rapido o espresso? *Luxury express or ordinary express?*

A traveller finds that he cannot buy a second-class ticket for the luxury express train that he wants to catch to Milan. The clerk tells him that he must either buy a first-class ticket and pay the luxury express supplement or he can take the ordinary express to Milan which arrives half an hour after the luxury one. He decides to take the luxury express and asks which platform he must travel from.

La fine del viaggio *The end of the journey*

Roberto meets Anna and her mother who have arrived late after a bad journey; Anna's mother has gone back to the compartment to check they have left nothing behind.

Part three: New words

il binario	platform	sai (sapere)	you know
il quarto d'ora	quarter of an hour	dopo	afterwards
la mezz'ora	half an hour	oppure	or else, or
sfortunato	unlucky	diciassette	seventeen

Part three: Notes

Rapido o espresso? *Luxury express or ordinary express?*

- 31 Questo rapido non porta la seconda classe. *This luxury express hasn't got (lit. doesn't carry) a second-class.*
Only certain **rapido** trains have second-class compartments as well as first-class ones.
- 32 Devo fare il biglietto di prima? *Must I buy a first-class ticket?*
a fare il biglietto: *buy a ticket* Remember this idiom using the verb **fare** (L6, N49a).
b il biglietto di prima: *first-class ticket* **Prima** here stands for **prima classe**: *first-class*.
- 33 Ci arriva mezz'ora dopo il rapido. *It arrives (there) half an hour after the express.*
Ci: (lit.) *There* Here **ci** replaces a **Milano** mentioned in the previous sentence (Note 13).

La fine del viaggio *The end of the journey*

- 34 Finalmente siete arrivate. Come avete viaggiato? *At last you've arrived. How was the journey (lit. How did you travel)?*
Siete arrivate: *you've arrived* Because **arrivare** uses the verb **essere** in the perfect tense (Note 3) **arrivate** (the past participle here) ends with an **e**, the feminine plural ending, as it refers to Anna and her mother.
- 35 Oh Dio, siamo state proprio sfortunate. Il treno è partito con tre quarti d'ora di ritardo. *Oh my goodness, we were really unlucky. The train left three quarters of an hour late.*
a **siamo state**: *we were* Here **stato**, the past participle of **essere**, is in the feminine plural form (**state**) to agree with Anna and her mother.
b **è partito**: *left* The verb **partire** is yet another that is used with **essere** in the perfect tense (Appendix 6c).
- 36 È ritornata a vedere se abbiamo dimenticato qualcosa nello scompartimento. *She's gone back (lit. returned) to see if we've left (lit. forgotten) anything in the compartment.*
È ritornata: *She's gone back* The verb **ritornare**: *to return* also uses **essere** in the formation of the perfect tense, which is why **ritornata** is in the feminine singular form to agree with **tua mamma** of the previous sentence.
- 37 Ma sai com'è la mamma. *But you know what mother's like.*
sai: *you know* This is the **tu** form of the irregular **ere** verb **sapere**: *to know (a fact)*.

Lezione dieci

Lesson ten

Compere a Venezia

Shopping in Venice

Part one: What happens

It is 5 p.m. Alberto has been for a ride in a gondola but now he is alone in St. Mark's Square waiting to meet the others who have gone shopping. As he has an hour to spare he decides to do a bit of shopping too.

Part one: New words

l'appuntamento	appointment, meeting,	il Canal Grande	Grand Canal
date		il palazzo	palace
il canale	canal	i pantaloni	trousers

san = santo saint

la camicia shirt

la compera purchase

la gondola gondola

la pianta map, plan

la scrivania writing-desk, bureau

decimo tenth

magnifico magnificent

far = fare to do

fare compere to go shopping

fare un giro to go for a ride

fotografare to photograph

viene (venire) she comes

ci here

ne of them, of it

fa ago

Part one: Notes

- 1 Com'è bella Venezia! Non ci sono mai stato prima. *How lovely Venice is! I've never been here before.*
- a ci: here Remember that ci is used when talking about a place that has already been mentioned once before.
- b When there are two parts to the verb as here i.e. sono and stato, the important part of the verb from the point of view of pronouns is the first part, in this case sono; thus ci comes in front of sono and non... mai either side of ci sono. In the perfect tense (passato prossimo), it is always the part of essere or avere that changes. When essere and avere help to form a tense, we call them auxiliary verbs.
- 2 Oggi pomeriggio ho fatto un giro in gondola sul Canal Grande. *This afternoon I went for a ride in a gondola on the Grand Canal.*
- a Oggi pomeriggio: This afternoon (lit. Today afternoon) This is a useful phrase to learn.
- b ho fatto un giro: I went for a ride The expression fare un giro means to go for a trip, a ride or a tour and can be used with any means of transport e.g. fare un giro in macchina: to go for a ride in the car, fare un giro in vaporetto: to go for a boat trip etc.
- 3 Ho visto dei palazzi magnifici e li ho fotografati. *I saw some magnificent palaces and I photographed them.*
- a Ho visto: I saw Visto is the irregular past participle of vedere: to see. Both veduto and visto are used as participles of vedere (L8, N7b).
- b palazzi: palaces Alberto is here referring to the old palaces that used to belong to the Venetian aristocracy and that line the Grand Canal. In modern Italian however, the word palazzo has also taken on the meaning of large building or multi-storeyed apartment block.
- c magnifici: magnificent The singular form of this word is magnifico, but it is like amico and does not preserve its hard ending in the plural (L5, N5b).
- d li ho fotografati: I photographed them. Notice that the word for them: li is placed in front of the auxiliary verb ho (Note 1b).

- e Whenever the direct object pronouns *him, her, it, them*, (i.e. *lo, la, li* and *le*) are used together with the perfect tense, the past participle of the verb must always agree with the pronoun preceding the auxiliary verb; so here *fotografato* takes its masculine plural form to agree with *li: them*.
- 4 Ora sono venuto in piazza San Marco. *Now I've come to St. Mark's Square.*
- a sono venuto: I've come Venuto is the irregular past participle of venire: to come which is another of the verbs that go with essere in the passato prossimo tense.
- b San Marco: St. Mark Like grande and bello (L8, N3), santo: saint, holy becomes san in front of masculine singular nouns or names that begin with a consonant, except those beginning with z or s and another consonant; thus San Paolo: St. Paul, San Giovanni: St. John but Santo Stefano: St. Stephen.
- 5 Loro conoscono già Venezia. Papà e mamma l'hanno visitata dieci anni fa. *They already know Venice. Dad and mum visited it ten years ago.*
- a conoscono: they know This is the loro form of the irregular ere verb conoscere: to know (Appendix 10).
- b l'hanno visitata: visited it Here l' refers to Venezia, a feminine singular object, so the past participle visitato must take on its feminine singular form, i.e. visitata to agree with the direct object pronoun *it: l'* (Note 3e).
- c dieci anni fa: ten years ago. Fa never varies its form and is used in exactly the same way as we use ago in English, i.e. it follows the expression of time, e.g. three days ago: tre giorni fa, half an hour ago: mezz'ora fa, etc.
- 6 E Giovanna ci viene qualche volta a trovare un'amica. *And Giovanna comes here sometimes to visit a friend.*
- a ci: here Remember that ci can mean both here and there (Note 1a).
- b viene: she comes This is the 3rd person singular of the irregular verb venire: to come (Appendix 10).
- c viene a trovare un'amica: comes to visit a friend. Remember to use the expressions andare a trovare: to go to visit and venire a trovare: to come to visit when talking about visiting people; the verb visitare is reserved for places and monuments (L9, N2f).
- 7 Perciò loro hanno deciso di andare a far compere tutto il pomeriggio. *And so they've decided to go shopping all afternoon.*
- a hanno deciso: they've decided Deciso is the irregular past participle of decidere: to decide (Appendix 10).
- b hanno deciso di: they've decided to To decide TO do something is decidere DI fare qualcosa in Italian.
- c far compere: to go shopping (lit. to make purchases) This is the normal way of talking about going shopping. Far is an abbreviated form of fare: to make.

- 8 **Ne ho una, ma l'ho dimenticata a Roma sulla scrivania.** *I've got one, but I've left (lit. forgotten) it in Rome on my writing-desk.*
- a **Ne ho una:** *I've got one* (lit. *Of them I have one*) **Una** refers to **una pianta della città** mentioned in the previous sentence, but in Italian **ho una** is not enough. When we talk about quantities of things or people and do not want to mention the things or people again, we must insert the small word **ne** which literally means *of it* or *of them* to give full meaning to the sentence. Notice that like all other pronouns, **ne** is also always placed immediately in front of the verb.
- b **l'ho dimenticata:** *I've forgotten it* Because **l'** refers to **la pianta**, the past participle **dimenticato** must take on its feminine singular form to agree with the preceding direct object. Remember that this agreement takes place only when the direct object of the verb is placed in front of the verb in the sentence, e.g. *I saw the gondola*: **Ho visto la gondola** (no agreement) but *I saw it*: **L'ho vista** (agreement); *I watched the girls*: **Ho guardato le ragazze** (no agreement) but *I watched them*: **Le ho guardate** (agreement).
- c Notice that **la** abbreviates to **l'** in front of a word beginning with a vowel or an **h**. Both the pronouns **la** and **lo** do so, but **li** and **le** do not; compare this with **li**: *them* (Note 3d).
- 9 **E la mamma ha detto che ho bisogno di pantaloni e camicie. Beh, faccio un po' di compere anch'io.** *And mum said that I need some trousers and shirts. Oh well, I'll do a bit of shopping too.*
- a **la mamma:** *mum* Notice once again that **is** is very common to refer to **la mamma** when talking about one's own mother.
- b **un po' di compere:** *a bit of shopping* This is a very colloquial phrase in Italian.

Part two: What happens

Alberto fa il turista. *Alberto plays the tourist.*

As he has left his map of Venice behind in Rome, Alberto goes into a shop to buy a new one; while he is there he also buys a colour slide film for his camera.

In un negozio di abbigliamento *In a clothes shop*

Alberto goes into a shop selling men's clothes to buy some trousers and some shirts. The assistant suggests that Alberto try on the trousers while he gets out some shirts for him.

Per il compleanno della mamma *For mother's birthday*

Alberto meets Paolo but as the women are still shopping they decide to go in-

to a shop selling bags to buy a bag for Maria Teresa's birthday. They like a brown handbag they have seen in the window but as it is too expensive they decide on a cheaper one in calf-skin; Alberto says that if his father buys the bag, he will buy his mother the wallet to match.

L'appuntamento *The meeting*

The two women arrive three quarters of an hour late, but Maria Teresa explains that they have been buying presents for Marino's family. She asks whether Alberto has bought the shirts and is inquisitive about what is in the other bag he is carrying.

Part two: New words

l'abbigliamento clothing
l'angolo corner
il colore colour
il compleanno birthday
il pacco parcel
il paio (pl. **le paia**) pair
il portafoglio wallet
il sacchetto bag
il turista tourist
il vitello calfskin

la cartina small map
la diapositiva slide
la donna woman
la manica sleeve
la misura size
la pelle leather
la pellicola film
la pellicola a colori colour film
la posa exposure
la spesa expense
la stampa print
la vetrina window

blu blue
chiaro clear
corto short
dettagliato detailed
incluso included
loro their

lungo long
magro thin
marrone brown
stesso same
vario various

dici (dire) you say
diciamo (dire) let's say, let's tell
dite (dire) you say
entrare to enter, go in
fare il turista to play the tourist
fare le spese to go shopping
sapere to know
scegliere to choose
vengono (venire) you come
venite (venire) you come

quale? which one?

fuori out
in giro around
in su upwards
lì there
piuttosto rather

quarantamila forty thousand
quarantasei forty-six
trentasei thirty-six

Alberto fa il turista. *Alberto plays the tourist.*

10 Alberto fa il turista. *Alberto plays the tourist.*

- a fa il turista: *plays* (lit. *does*) *the tourist* The verb *fare* followed by the name of a profession or of a type of person means *to play the part of* or *act as* that person.
- b il turista: *the tourist* Turista belongs to a special group of nouns which like *barista* (L3, N11) can be either masculine or feminine; these nouns all end with the letters *ista* in the singular but end in *isti* in the masculine plural form, thus *i turisti: the tourists* and *i baristi: the barmen* etc. However, the feminine plural form is quite regular; *le turiste: women tourists* and *le bariste: bar-maids*.
- 11 Ne abbiamo solo un tipo così: grande, a due colori. *We've only got one (lit. a type) like this: large in two colours.*
Ne: (lit.) *of them* Notice that the inclusion of *ne* is essential in this sentence to complete its meaning, because the quantity (*un tipo*) is mentioned, but not the actual object referred to (*una cartina*).
- 12 Ne ho visto altre più piccole in giro. *I've seen other smaller ones around.*
a Ne ho visto altre: *I've seen others (of them)* Once again it is essential to include *ne*; *altre* is in the feminine plural form because it refers to *altre cartine*.
b in giro: *around* This is a useful idiom to learn and remember.

In un negozio di abbigliamento *In a clothes shop*

- 13 Vorrei un paio di pantaloni e qualche camicia. *I'd like a pair of trousers and some shirts.*
a un paio: *a pair* The irregular plural of *il paio* is *le paia*, e.g. *due paia di pantaloni: two pairs of trousers*.
b qualche camicia: *some shirts* Remember that *qualche* has the plural meaning of *some* but that it must always be followed by a singular noun (L8, N40c).
- 14 Che misura porta? *What size do you take (lit. do you wear)?*
porta?: do you wear? Notice that *portare* means *to wear* as well as *to get, to carry* and *to bring*.
- 15 Quarantasei di pantaloni, credo. E trentotto di camicia. *Forty-six in trousers, I think. And thirty-eight in shirts.*
Continental sizes are, of course, different from British sizes. The size forty-six for trousers is the average size for a slim, fairly tall man, whilst the size thirty-eight shirt is equivalent to the collar size fifteen in Britain.

16 Guardi questo tipo di pantaloni. C'è in molti colori. *Look at these trousers (lit. this type of trousers). They come in many colours.*

- a Guardi: *Look at* Remember that the *lei* command form of *are* verbs ends with an *i* (L7, N16).
- b C'è: (lit.) *There is* This is a colloquial usage of *c'è*.
- 17 Posso provare un quarantasei blu? *Can I try on a forty-six in blue?*
a provare: *try on* Notice that *provare* means not only *try* but also *try on*.
b blu: (dark) blue Blu is an invariable adjective, i.e. it never changes its form.
- 18 Ne provi anche un paio più piccolo. Lei è piuttosto magro. *Try a smaller size too. You are on the thin side (lit. rather thin).*
a Ne: (lit.) *of them* Notice once again that *ne* completes the meaning of the sentence.
b Ne provi: (lit.) *Try of them* Remember that pronouns precede the *lei* command form of verbs (L8, N33c).
- 19 Io intanto tiro fuori le camicie. *In the meantime I'll get out the shirts.*
Io tiro fuori: *I'll get out* (lit. *pull out*) The verb *tirare* is used here in a colloquial way.
- 20 Le ho sempre prese con manica corta per l'estate. *I've always bought (lit. taken) them with short sleeves for the summer.*
a Le: *them* Le here refers back to *le camicie*.
b Le ho sempre prese: *I've always bought them* Instead of using the verb *comprare: to buy*, Alberto uses *prendere: (lit.) to take*; *prendere* is often used colloquially in this way. The irregular past participle of *prendere* is *preso*; here *preso* agrees with *le*, the direct object pronoun that is in front of it.

Per il compleanno della mamma *For mother's birthday*

- 21 Le ho lasciate a fare le loro spese. Hanno detto: "Veniamo subito". *I've left them to do their shopping. They said: "We're coming straight away".*
a Le ho lasciate: *I've left them* Once again the past participle here agrees with the direct object pronoun (*le*) in front of it.
b fare le loro spese: *do their shopping* We have now seen two expressions for doing shopping, *fare compere* (Note 7c) and *fare le spese*; both expressions have exactly the same meaning.
c le loro spese: *their shopping* Loro: *their* is different from *mio, tuo* etc. in that it is invariable, i.e. it never changes its form to agree with the noun it precedes, e.g. *i loro figli: their sons*. In addition, it always requires *il, la, i* or *le* before it, even when referring to one member of the family, e.g. *la loro figlia: their daughter*.
d Hanno detto: *They said* Detto is the irregular past participle of *dire: to say*.

- e **Veniamo: We're coming** This is the present tense **noi** form of the irregular verb **venire: to come** (Appendix 10).
- 22 **Allora vuol dire tra mezz'ora.** *Well then that means in half an hour's time.* **vuol dire: that means** Remember the expression **volere dire: to mean** (L4, N14c).
- 23 **Si, ne ho visto una in un negozio lì all'angolo.** *Yes, I've seen one in a shop there on the corner.*
ne ho visto una: I've seen one (lit. of them) Here again **ne** means of them and **una** refers to **una borsa: a bag** mentioned in the previous sentence.
- 24 **Hai chiesto quanto costa?** *Have you asked how much it costs?*
Hai chiesto?: Have you asked? **Chiesto** is the irregular past participle of **chiedere: to ask**.
- 25 **Quale? Which one?**
 Notice that we must use this single word **quale** when we want to ask *which one? Which ones?* is translated as **quali?** i.e. **quale** follows the normal rule for adjectives ending with an **e** (L1, N66).
- 26 **Quella marrone in vetrina.** *The brown one in the window.*
 a **Quella marrone: The brown one** (lit. *That one brown*)
 b **vetrina: window** **Vetrina** is the word specifically used for a *shop window*. Remember to use **finestra** for a normal *house window* and **finestrino** for a *window in a vehicle* (L9, N5b).
- 27 **Se vengono da questa parte, possono vedere quelle di vitello. Costano dalle quarantamila in su.** *If you come over here, you can see the calf-skin ones. They cost from forty thousand upwards.*
 a **vengono: you come** This is the 3rd person plural (**loro**) form of **venire: to come**. Notice that the shop assistant is here addressing Paolo and Alberto with the **loro: you** form of the verb (L9, N18a).
 b **possono: you can** This is again the **loro** form of **potere: to be able**.
 c **di vitello: in** (lit. of) *calf-skin* To say that an article is made *out of* or *from* a substance, we can use **di** in Italian.
 d **dalle quarantamila in su: from forty thousand upwards** **Dalle** is used because **quarantamila** stands for **quarantamila lire**. Notice the useful expression **in su: upwards**.
- 28 **Va già meglio. Che ne dici, Alberto?** *That's better. What do you think of it, Alberto?*
Che ne dici?: (lit.) What do you say of it? **Dici** is the **tu** form of the irregular verb **dire: to say** in the present tense. This phrase is a useful idiom to learn.
- 29 **Benissimo, facciamo così: tu prendi la borsa e io il portafoglio di pelle dello stesso colore.** *Good, let's do this: you get the bag and I'll get the leather wallet in the same colour.*
 a **tu prendi: you get** Notice once again that **prendere** is used instead of **comprare: to buy**.

- b **di pelle: (lit.) of leather** Whilst **vitello: calf** is the skin of a specific animal, **pelle** is used for *leather* in general. Italians tend to specify exactly what type of skin the article is made out of.

L'appuntamento *The meeting*

- 30 **E poi dite che io ho la testa nelle nuvole. Siete in ritardo di tre quarti d'ora.** *And then you say that I've got my head in the clouds. You're three quarters of an hour late* (lit. *late by three quarters of an hour*).
- a **dite: you say** This is the **voi** form of **dire: to say**.
- b **la testa: my** (lit. *the*) *head* Remember that we do not use the word for *my, his, your* etc. with parts of the body in Italian (L6, N3a).
- 31 **Abbiamo pensato ai regali per tutta la famiglia di Marino.** *We've seen to the presents for all Marino's family.*
 a **Abbiamo pensato ai regali: We've seen to the presents** Remember this idiomatic usage of **pensare a: (lit.) to think of meaning to see to** (L3, N27b).
 b Remember that Marino is Giovanna's fiancé and that the Tosis plan to visit him and his family in Florence.
- 32 **Beh, diciamo la verità: per Marino, sua sorella e sua madre.** *Well, let's tell the truth: for Marino, his sister and his mother.*
diciamo la verità: let's tell the truth: **Diciamo** is the **noi** form of **dire: to say, to tell**. This completes the present tense of **dire** (Appendix 10) apart from the **loro** form which is **dicono**.
- 33 **Poi abbiamo scelto. E voi, da dove venite con tutti questi pacchi? Alberto, hai preso le camicie?** *Then we chose. And where have you come from with all those parcels? Alberto, did you get the shirts?*
 a **abbiamo scelto: we chose** **Scelto** is the past participle of **scegliere: to choose**.
 b **da dove venite?: where have you come from?** (lit. *where are you coming from?*) **Venite** is the **voi** form of **venire: to come** in the present tense. This completes the present tense of **venire** (Appendix 10) apart from the **io** form which is **vengo: I come** and the **tu** form **viene: you come**.
 c **hai preso?: did you get?** Once again **prendere** is used in the sense of *to get* or *to buy*.
- 34 **Si, ne ho prese tre.** *Yes, I bought three* (lit.) *of them*.
 Alberto could just as easily have said **ne ho preso tre** here. The past participle can, but need not, agree with the preceding pronoun **ne**. Here Alberto has made the agreement with **ne** which here stands for **le camicie**; we have however seen several examples of **ne** and the past participle where the agreement has not been made (Notes 12a and 23).
- 35 **Niente di speciale.** *Nothing special.*
 Remember the use of **di** in phrases of this type (L8, N22b).

10 Part three: What happens

Sul vaporetto *On the boat*

A man from Florence chats to a woman from Rome as they ride on a water-bus. The man asks her how she likes Venice and what she has seen; she explains that she has seen only St Mark's Square and is now going to see the palaces lining the Grand Canal.

Usciamo. *Let's go out.*

Giorgio and Carla decide to go out for a quick look round the shops; their aunt is too tired to go with them. Carla goes to fetch some money from her room but finds that she has given the keys to her aunt.

Part three: New words

il fiorentino Florentine
il romano Roman

la zia aunt

Part three: Notes

Sul vaporetto *On the boat*

36 Sul vaporetto *On the boat*

vaporetto: *boat* Because there are no roads and therefore no cars in Venice, the only means of transport is by boat on the canals. The **vaporetto** or *water-bus* is the most important means of public transport, the **gondola** being reserved for special tourist trips and private parties. There are several **vaporetto** routes but probably the best-known is from the road and railway termini along the Grand Canal to St Mark's Square.

37 Che ne pensa? *What do you think of it?*

This is the same type of expression as we saw in Note 28.

38 L'ha visitata tutta? *Have you visited it all?*

- a Here **tutta** agrees with *l'* which stands for the feminine singular **Venezia**; in the same way the past participle **visitato** agrees with *l'* and becomes **visitata**.
- b Remember that **visitare** is used only in connection with monuments, towns and places (Note 6c).

Usciamo. *Let's go out.*

39 Usciamo is the **noi** form of the irregular verb **uscire**: *to go out* in the present tense.

40 Hai chiesto alla zia se viene? *Have you asked aunty if she's coming?*

a chiesto: *asked* Remember that **chiesto** is the past participle of **chiedere**: *to ask* (Note 24).

b Hai chiesto alla zia?: *Have you asked aunty?* Remember that *to ask somebody something* is **chiedere qualcosa a qualcuno** in Italian (L6, N37a).

41 Usciamo lo stesso. Facciamo un breve giro nei negozi e torniamo presto. *Let's go out (all) the same. We'll have a quick look round the shops and come back soon.*

a lo stesso: (lit.) *the same* Notice that **lo** must be used for *the* in front of **stesso** because **stesso** begins with **s** and another consonant.

b Facciamo un breve giro nei negozi: *We'll have a quick look round the shops* Here **fare un giro** obviously means *to go round on foot* (Note 2b).

42 D'accordo. Hai preso i soldi? *O.K. Have you got your money (lit. Have you taken the money)?*

a D'accordo: *O.K.* Remember to use **d'accordo** when you agree with what someone says.

b Hai preso?: *Have you got?* Here **prendere** has the meaning of *to pick up, to bring with you*.

c i soldi: *your (lit. the) money* Remember that **soldi** is always used in the plural (L7, N6a).

43 Oh no, li ho lasciati in camera. *Oh no, I left it in the room.*

li ho lasciati: *I left it* **Li** refers to **i soldi** of the previous sentence and **lasciati** agrees with **li**.

44 Oh no, le ho date alla zia. *Oh no, I gave them to aunty.*

le ho date: *I gave them* **Le** refers to **le chiavi** of the previous sentence and as **dato** is the past participle of **dare**: *to give*, **date** agrees with **le**.

Lezione undici

Lesson eleven

Incontri con stranieri

Meeting foreigners

Part one: What happens

A Venetian gondolier tells us something about his work, during the course of which he meets many foreign tourists as well as fellow Italians. A middle-aged Italian couple are approaching for a trip in his gondola.

Part one: New words

il braccio (pl. le braccia) arm
 il collega colleague
 il gondoliere gondolier
 il gruppo group
 il mondo world
 il paese country
 lo scalino steps

la chiesa church
 la coppia couple
 la direzione management
 l'età age

la lingua language
 la mezz'età middle age

tedesco German
 undicesimo eleventh

offrire to offer, to give

le to her

sottovoce quietly, in a low voice

Part one: Notes

- 1 Qui a Venezia si sentono le lingue di tutti i paesi del mondo. *Here in Venice you can hear the languages of all the countries in the world.*
 si sentono: you can hear (lit. are heard) Remember this construction (L8, N5a).
- 2 Oggi pomeriggio porterò una coppia tedesca a Ca' Rezzonico e alla chiesa dei Frari. *This afternoon I'm taking (lit. I'll take) a German couple to Ca' Rezzonico and to the Frari church.*
- a porterò: I'm taking (lit. I'll take) This is the future tense of portare in the io form; listen carefully to the recording and notice that the ò ending is stressed. The io form of most verbs in the future tense is made by taking the infinitive form and replacing the final e of the infinitive with ò, e.g. prendere: to take but prenderò: I will take; finire: to finish but finirò: I will finish. With are verbs, however, there is an additional modification: the a of the are infinitive becomes an e in the future form, e.g. guidare: to drive but guiderò: I will drive; aspettare: to wait but aspetterò: I will wait; portare: to take, to carry but porterò: I will take, I will carry.
- b Ca' Rezzonico is an old Venetian palace on the Grand Canal; it is used as a museum of 18th century Venetian art and is open to the public.
- c chiesa dei Frari: the Frari church This is a very well-known church built by Franciscan friars (Frari in Venetian dialect); the works of many famous artists are in the church, including several by Titian (Tiziano in Italian) and Bellini.
- 3 Domani arriverà un gruppo di turisti americani in un albergo qui vicino. *Tomorrow a group of American tourists is arriving at a hotel near here.*
- a arriverà: is arriving (lit. will arrive) This is the future tense of arrivare in the 3rd person singular form; notice once again how the à ending of

the word is stressed. Just as the io form of the future tense always ends in ò (Note 2a), the 3rd person singular form always ends in à. Thus, finirò: I will finish, but finirà: he/she/it/you will finish; prenderò: I will take but prenderà: he/she/it/you will take; arriverò: I will arrive but arriverà: he/she/it/you will arrive.

- b turisti americani: American tourists Remember that the singular form of turisti is turista (L10, N10b).
- 4 La direzione mi ha detto che li manderà qui. *The management has told me (lit. has said to me) that they will send them here.*
- a La direzione: (lit.) The management La direzione is an unspecific word indicating either the manager or one of his representatives.
- b mi: to me We have already seen that mi translates me (L7, N27); it can also translate to me, as here. Thus, Roberto mi vede: Robert sees me but, Roberto mi parla: Robert speaks TO me.
- c li manderà qui: will send them here Li refers back to the turisti americani whilst manderà is the 3rd person singular of mandare: to send in the future tense. The verb manderà is in the 3rd person singular because la direzione is doing the action; notice that it follows the same pattern as arriverà (Note 3a).
- 5 Io e i miei colleghi li porteremo a fare il solito giro del Canal Grande. *I and my colleagues will take them on (lit. to do) the usual trip on the Grand Canal.*
- a i miei colleghi: my colleagues The singular form of colleghi is collega; notice that collega is like turista in that both words end their masculine plural form in i, but that collega preserves the hard g sound in the plural by adding h after the g.
- b porteremo: we will take This is the noi form of portare in the future tense: all noi forms end in emo in the future and follow the same pattern as in Notes 2a and 3a. Thus, finiremo: we will finish; arriveremo: we will arrive; prenderemo: we will take (Appendix 9).
- 6 Oh, ce ne sono due in arrivo: una coppia di mezz'età. *Oh, there are two arriving: a middle-aged couple.*
 ce ne sono due: there are two (lit. of them) This phrase is built up from ci sono: there are, due: two and ne: of them. When ne is placed between the two words ci sono, ci is attracted by the stronger sounding ne and is pronounced ce; thus ci ne sono becomes ce ne sono and is always written and pronounced this way.
- 7 Lui le parla sottovoce e le offre il braccio per scendere lo scalino. *He is talking to her quietly and offering her his arm to come down the steps.*
- a Lui le parla: He is talking to her (lit. He to her speaks) Just as la is translated as her in a sentence like La vedo: I see her (L7, N38a), so le translates TO her in the sentence Le parlo: I speak TO her.

- b e le offre il braccio: *and is offering her his (lit. the) arm* Here again **le** offre really means *offers TO her*.
- c il braccio: *his (lit. the) arm* Remember that with parts of the body you must not use a possessive form in Italian, merely the word for *the*.
- d Although **il braccio** seems a normal masculine noun, it has a very irregular plural: **le braccia**.

Part two: What happens

In gondola *In the gondola*

Paolo and Maria Teresa are enjoying their gondola trip which Maria Teresa considers a rather romantic birthday present. They get off at the Rialto bridge as Maria Teresa wants to visit the fish market. Tomorrow they will be leaving for Florence.

Al mercato del pesce *At the fish market*

A vendor tries to sell Maria Teresa some fish but she doesn't want to buy any. The vendor directs them to Ca' Pesaro.

Alla fermata del vaporetto *At the water-bus stop*

Paolo explains to Maria Teresa the system for purchasing tickets and then going aboard the water-bus.

Di ritorno dal Lido *Coming back from the Lido*

Alberto and Giovanna are returning by boat from Venice Lido where they have been swimming and sunbathing. An Englishman from their hotel waves to Alberto and we learn that both Alberto and his father have a gift for languages.

Part two: New words

il bigliettario man at the ticket office	il pescivendolo fishmonger
il caso case	il rapporto report
il cenno sign	il saluto greeting
il chilo kilo	gli scampi scampi
il dono gift	il sorriso smile
il gamberetto shrimp	lo spagnolo Spanish (language)
l'inglese Englishman	il tedesco German (language)
l'inglese English (language)	il vicino neighbour
il mercato market	
l'olandese Dutch (language)	la confusione confusion
il passaggio passage, way	la cozza mussel
il pesce fish	la fermata stop, station

la nuotata swim
la Pescheria fish market
la qualità quality
la roba stuff, things
la sogliola sole
la veneziana Venetian woman
la vongola clam

agitato agitated
bei = belli fine
bianco white
fresco fresh
greco Greek

aprire to open
domandare to ask
fare in bianco to cook plainly
fare una nuotata to go for a swim
girare to turn
pescare to fish
prendere il sole to sunbathe
sa (sapere) he/she knows, you know
sanno (sapere) they know

sappiamo (sapere) we know
sbarrare to bar
scrivere to write

ci to us
gli to him
loro to them
ti to you

a buon mercato cheap, good value
abbastanza quite
di nuovo again
di passaggio passing through
fino in fondo right to the end
già that's right, yes
ormai now, by now
stanotte last night

come si dice? how do you say?
da che parte? which way?
si capisce of course

Parigi Paris

Part two: Notes

In gondola *In the gondola*

- 8 Sai che i nostri vicini di camera sono greci? Sono arrivati ieri e partiranno fra una settimana per Parigi. *Do you know that the people in the room next to us (lit. our room neighbours) are Greek? They arrived yesterday and will leave in a week's time for Paris.*
- a Sai?: *Do you know?* Remember that this is the **tu** form of **sapere**: *to know* in the present tense (L7, N39a).
- b greci: *Greek* The singular form of **greci** is **greco**; it follows the same pattern as **amico** and does not preserve the hard **c** sound at the end of the word in the plural (L5, N5b).
- c partiranno: *they will leave* This is the **loro** form of **partire** in the future tense; the **loro** form of the verb always ends in **anno** in the future, thus, **prenderanno**: *they will take*; **finiranno**: *they will finish* and **arriveranno**: *they will arrive*.
- 9 Hai parlato loro in italiano? *Did you speak to them in Italian?*
Hai parlato loro?: *Did you speak to them?* Just as **li** or **le** translates *them* in the sentence **Li vedo** or **Le vedo**: *I see them*, so **loro** translates *TO them* in the sentence **Parlo loro**: *I'm speaking TO them*. Notice that

loro is an exception to all the other pronouns in that it is the only one to follow the verb; when **loro** means *TO them*, it must always follow the verb.

- 10 **Sì, lo sanno un po' tutti e due.** *Yes, both of them know (lit. it) a little.*
 a **lo:** (lit.) *it* Here **lo** refers to **l'italiano** mentioned in the previous sentence.
 b **sanno:** *they know* This is the 3rd person plural (**loro**) form of the irregular verb **sapere:** *to know*. Remember that **sapere** means *to know a thing* or *a fact* whilst the other verb that translates *to know* is **conoscere** and means *to be acquainted with a person* or *a town* etc. (L7, N39a).
 11 **Sei contenta di questo girotto in gondola?** *Are you pleased with this little ride in the gondola?*
girotto: *little ride* This is the diminutive form of **giro:** *ride* (L5, N2b).
 12 **Ecco il ponte di Rialto.** *Here's the Rialto bridge.*
 The **Rialto** is the most famous bridge over the Grand Canal; on either side of its steps are small shops selling souvenirs, shoes and jewellery etc.
 13 **Perché non scendiamo qui? Vorrei vedere il mercato del pesce.** *Why don't we get out here? I'd like to see the fish market.*
scendiamo: *we get out* Remember that **scendere** has both the meaning of *to go down* and *to get out of* or *off a vehicle* or *a boat*.
 14 **Ci tornerete domani mattina tu e i ragazzi, mentre io scriverò il rapporto sul caso Perrone.** *You and the children come back here (lit. will come back) tomorrow morning, whilst I write (lit. will write) the report on the Perrone case.*
 a **tornerete:** *you will come back* This is the **voi** form of **tornare** in the future. The **voi** form of all verbs always ends in **ete** in the future. Thus, **prenderete:** *you will take*; **finirete:** *you will finish* and **arriverete:** *you will arrive*.
 b **scriverò:** *I will write* This is the **io** form of **scrivere:** *to write* in the future (Note 2a).

Al mercato del pesce *At the fish market*

- 15 **Gamberetti, cozze, vongole! Roba fresca, pescata stanotte.** *Shrimps, mussels, clams! Everything fresh (lit. Fresh stuff), caught last night.*
 a **Gamberetti, cozze, vongole! Shrimps, mussels, clams!** Venice is well-known for its sea-food, particularly shell-fish. **Spaghetti alle vongole**, i.e. spaghetti with a sauce made with clams is a speciality of the Naples area but is also delicious in Venice.
 b **Roba:** (lit.) *Stuff, things* This is a very colloquial word, used exactly the same way that we use *stuff* or *things* in English, e.g. **Che cos'è questa roba?:** *What's this stuff?* **La tua roba non è ancora arrivata:** *Your things haven't arrived yet.*

- c **pescata:** (lit.) *fished* **Pescato** is the past participle of **pescare:** *to fish*. Here it is used as an adjective describing **roba** and therefore takes on its feminine singular form, **pescata**.
 d **stanotte:** *last night* Like **stasera:** *tonight* which is a contraction of **questa sera** and **stan mattina:** *this morning* which is a contraction of **questa mattina**, **stanotte** is a contraction of **questa notte**. It can mean *the night coming*, or more often, as in this case, *the night just passed*, e.g. **Hai dormito bene stanotte?:** *Did you sleep well last night?*
 16 **Quanto vengono gli scampi?** *How much are the scampi?* (lit. *How much do the scampi come?*)
vengono: *they come* Here the verb **venire** is used idiomatically.
 17 **Tutto a buon mercato. Quanti ne vuole?** *Everything's cheap. How many do you want?*
 a **a buon mercato:** *cheap, good value* This is a useful phrase to learn.
 b **Quanti ne vuole?:** (lit.) *How many do you want of them?* Remember that it is essential to insert **ne:** *of them* in this type of sentence, i.e. when you are talking about quantities of something that has already been mentioned (L10, N8a).
 18 **Pesce di prima qualità. Ce n'è per tutti. Due bei pesci da fare in bianco, signora?** *Best quality fish (lit. Fish of first quality). There's something for everyone. Two nice fish to cook plainly, madam?*
 a **prima:** *first* Remember that **primo** is a regular adjective: **prima** (feminine singular), **primi** (masculine plural), **prime** (feminine plural). It is distinct from the adverb **prima:** *at first, before* and from the preposition **prima di**.
 b **Ce n'è per tutti:** *There's something for everyone* (lit. *There is of it for all*). In the same way as **ce ne sono** is formed from **ci sono** and **ne** (Note 6), so **ce n'è** is formed from **c'è** and **ne**. **C'è** is really **ci** and **è** run together; when **ne** is placed between these two words, **ci** is attracted by the stronger sounding **ne** and is pronounced **ce**, giving **ce ne è**. In addition, however, when this is pronounced, the words **ne** and **è** are run together, giving **ce n'è**.
 c **bei:** (lit.) *beautiful* **Bei** is the form of **belli** used in front of masculine plural nouns beginning with a consonant, except those beginning with **z** or **s** followed by another consonant, e.g. **due pesci belli**, but **due bei pesci** (L8, N3b and Appendix 4c).
 d **da fare in bianco:** *to cook plainly* (lit. *to do in white*) **Mangiare in bianco:** *to eat plain food* is advised by the doctor when his patient is suffering from a stomach upset. If food is cooked **in bianco** it is normally either simmered or boiled in water with no seasoning or sauce added; it is very common to hear of rice, vegetables and fish being cooked **in bianco**.
 e **da fare:** *to do, to cook* Notice once again the use of **da** in this phrase. **Due pesci da fare in bianco** has the sense of *two fish to be cooked plainly*.

- 19 Siamo solo di passaggio qui. *We're only passing through here.*
di passaggio: *passing through* With this expression, Maria Teresa is indicating that they are tourists, not permanent residents. It is a useful phrase to remember.
- 20 Scusi, sa da che parte dobbiamo andare per Ca' Pesaro? *Excuse me, do you know which way (lit. on which side) we must go for Ca' Pesaro?*
a sa?: *do you know?* This is the 3rd person singular of **sapere** in the present tense.
b Ca' Pesaro is another of the old palaces overlooking the Grand Canal. It now houses the Gallery of Modern Art and the Oriental Museum.
- 21 Sì, andate fino in fondo alla Pescheria e girate a sinistra dopo il ponte. Poi domandate di nuovo. *Yes, go to the end of the fish market and turn left after the bridge. Then ask again.*
a andate: *go* This is the **voi** command form of **andare**; remember to use this **voi** command form when giving a command to two or more people (L9, N27a).
b fino in fondo: (lit.) *as far as to the end*
c la Pescheria: *the fish market* **La Pescheria**, the official name for the fish market, is situated on the Grand Canal, not far from the Rialto Bridge.
d girate: *turn* This is the **voi** command form of **girare**: *to turn*.
e domandate: *ask* This is the **voi** command form of **domandare**: *to ask*.
f di nuovo: *again* (lit. *anew*) This is a useful phrase to learn.

Alla fermata del vaporetto *At the water-bus stop*

- 22 Dove si fanno i biglietti? *Where do you get the tickets?*
si fanno?: *do you get?* Remember that *to buy a ticket* is **fare il biglietto** and **si fanno** is like the construction **si sentono** in Note 1.
- 23 C'è una signora francese che non lo sa e fa una gran confusione. Come si dice "pagare prima" in francese? *There's a French lady who doesn't know (it) and who's creating a lot of confusion. How do you say "pay first" in French?*
a lo: *it* i.e. that one must buy a ticket before getting on the boat.
b sa: *knows* Remember that this is the 3rd person singular form of **sapere**: *to know* (Note 20a).
c gran: (lit.) *great, large* Remember that **gran** is a form of **grande** (L8, N3a). It can also precede a feminine singular noun as here.
d Come si dice?: *How do you say? How does one say?* This is a very useful expression to learn.
- 24 Il bigliettario le ha già dato il biglietto e lei gli ha fatto un bel sorriso. *The man at the ticket office has already given her a ticket and she has given (lit. done) him a lovely smile.*

- a il bigliettario:** *the man at the ticket office* **Il bigliettario** is the general word for the person who sells tickets, either at a box office, a station booking office or on a tram or bus etc.
- b le:** (lit.) *to her* Remember that we must use **le** in Italian when *her* really stands for *TO her* as in this case (Notes 7a and b).
- c gli:** (lit.) *to him* Just as **le** means *TO her*, so **gli** means *TO him*, e.g. *I see him: Lo vedo*, but *I'm speaking TO him: Gli parlo*.
- d bel:** *lovely* Remember that **bel** is a form of **bello** (L8, N3b).
- 25 Ma ci hanno sbarrato il passaggio. Che cosa vuol dire? *But they've barred our way. What does it mean?*
a ci hanno sbarrato il passaggio: (lit.) *they've barred the way to us.* **Ci** means not only *us* (L8, N7a), but also *TO us*, e.g. **Roberto ci vede:** *Roberto sees us*, and **Roberto ci parla:** *Roberto talks TO us*.
b Che cosa vuol dire?: *What does it mean?* Remember that **volere dire** means *to mean* (L4, N14c).
- 26 Vuol dire che prima scenderanno gli altri passeggeri, e poi ci apriranno il passaggio e saliremo noi. *It means that the other passengers will get off first, and then they will open the way to us and we will get on.*
a scenderanno: *they will get off* This is the **loro** form of **scendere** in the future tense (Note 8c).
b ci apriranno: (lit.) *they will open to us* **Apriranno** is the **loro** form of **aprire**: *to open* in the future tense whilst **ci** here once again means *to us* (Note 25a).
c saliremo: *we will get on* This is the **noi** form of **salire** in the future tense (Note 5b).

Di ritorno dal Lido *Coming back from the Lido*

- 27 Finalmente ho fatto una bella nuotata e ho preso un po' di sole. *At last I've had (lit. made) a good swim and I've done a bit of sunbathing (lit. I've taken a bit of sun).*
a ho fatto una bella nuotata: *I've had a good swim* The expression **fare una nuotata** is colloquial.
b ho preso un po' di sole: *I've done some sunbathing* **Prendere il sole:** *to sunbathe* is a useful expression to learn.
- 28 C'è un signore che ti fa un cenno di saluto. Lo conosci? *There's a man waving to you (lit. who is making to you a sign of greeting). Do you know him?*
a ti: *to you* **Ti** not only means *you* but also *TO you*, e.g. **Ti vedo:** *I see you* but **Ti parlo:** *I'm speaking TO you*.
b lo: *him* Here **lo** refers to the **signore**.
c conosci?: *do you know?* Notice again how we must use the verb **conoscere** when talking about *knowing* or *being acquainted with* someone (L7, N39a).

- 29 Gli ho parlato stamattina a colazione. *I spoke to him this morning at breakfast.*
 Gli: *to him* Notice once again the use of **gli** to translate *TO him* (Note 24c).
- 30 Si capisce. Lo so abbastanza bene ormai. *Of course. I know it quite well now.*
 a Si capisce: *Of course* (lit. *One understands*) This is a very useful colloquial phrase to remember.
 b Lo: *it* Here **lo** refers to **inglese**, i.e. the language.
 c so: *I know* This is the **io** form of **sapere**: *to know*. Notice again how we must use **sapere** in this context and not **conoscere**.
 d ormai: *now, by now* Ormai really means *up to now, by now*, e.g. Ormai è troppo tardi; il treno è già partito: *It's too late now; the train's already left.*
- 31 Già, è vero. Tu e papà avete il dono delle lingue. Quante ne sapete? *That's right, it's true. You and father have got a gift for languages* (lit. *the gift of the languages*). *How many do you know* (lit. *of them*)?
 a Già: *That's right, yes* Già is used to say *yes* or to express agreement with a statement someone has made; here Giovanna remembers that Alberto is good at languages and so uses **già**.
 b Quante?: *How many?* Here **quanto** is used in the feminine plural form to agree with the feminine plural noun **lingue**.
 c sapete: *you know* This is the **voi** form of **sapere** in the present tense, used because Giovanna is referring to Alberto and her father.
- 32 Sappiamo l'inglese e il tedesco, e papà sa anche l'olandese e lo spagnolo. *We know English and German, and dad also knows Dutch and Spanish.*
 a Sappiamo: *We know* This is the **noi** form of **sapere** in the present tense.
 b Notice that names of languages do not have a capital letter in Italian and are preceded by **l'**, **lo** or **il**. It is always necessary to put in this definite article except when using the verb **parlare** and after **in** and **di**, e.g. So l'inglese: *I know English*, but Parlo inglese: *I speak English*; Parlo in inglese: *I'm speaking in English*; È una lezione d'italiano: *It's an Italian lesson*.
 c sa: *he knows* Remember that this is the 3rd person singular form of **sapere** (Note 23b).

Part three: What happens

Una guida in piazza San Marco *A guide in St. Mark's Square*

A multi-lingual guide is showing a party of tourists St. Mark's cathedral from the outside.

A Jesolo At Jesolo

Franca and Laura are trying to find some people to accompany them on a trip in a motor boat.

Part three: New words

l'arco arch
 il francese Frenchman
 il mosaico mosaic
 il motoscafo motor boat
 il poliglotta polyglot
 lo stile style

la basilica basilica
 la domanda question
 la facciata façade

la persona person

esterno outside, external
 scorso last
 spagnolo Spanish
 tanti many

fare una domanda to ask a question

per volta at a time

Part three: Notes

Una guida in piazza San Marco *A guide in St. Mark's Square*

- 33 I mosaici si vedono meglio di qui. *You can see the mosaics better from here.*
 a I mosaici: *The mosaics* These are the mosaics that can be seen on the façade of St. Mark's cathedral, the most important building in St. Mark's Square.
 b mosaici: *mosaics* Just as the singular of **amici** is **amico**, so the singular of **mosaici** is **mosaico**; notice the soft *chee* ending of the plural form (L5, N5b).
- 34 Scusi, quanti ce ne sono? *Excuse me, how many* (lit. *of them*) *are there?*
 a quanti?: *how many?* The masculine plural form of **quanto** (**quanti**) is used here because it refers to **i mosaici**, a masculine plural noun.
 b ce ne sono: *there are (of them)* Remember that **ci sono** becomes **ce ne sono** when **ne** is inserted in the phrase (Note 6). Here **ne**: *of them* refers to **i mosaici**.
- 35 Anche questi signori spagnoli vogliono fare una domanda. *These Spanish people want to ask a question too.*
 fare una domanda: *ask a question* Notice that this is yet another phrase that uses the verb **fare**.
- 36 Una lingua per volta. *One language at a time.*
 Notice how the expression **per volta** is used here.

- 37 **A Jesolo At Jesolo**
Apart from Venice Lido, Lido di Jesolo is the nearest seaside resort to Venice. It is only a summer holiday resort but has ten miles of sandy beach and many hundreds of hotels.
- 38 **Rosella mi ha detto che resterà a Mestre tutto il giorno.** *Rosella told me that she's going to stay in Mestre all day.*
 a **resterà:** *she's going to stay* This is the 3rd person singular of **restare** in the future tense (Note 3a).
 b Mestre is the industrial and commercial part of Venice to which the historic city is connected by a long road and railway bridge. The industrial port of Marghera is nearby and many Venetians now live and work in this area.
- 39 **Le hai parlato stamattina?** *Have you spoken to her this morning?*
Le: *to her* Remember to use **le** to express **TO her**.
- 40 **Dieci minuti fa al telefono.** *Ten minutes ago on the phone.*
al telefono: *on the phone.* Notice and learn this useful expression.
- 41 **Non gli ho ancora telefonato ma dev'essere occupato oggi.** *I haven't phoned (lit. to) him yet but he must be busy today.*
gli: (lit.) *to him* Remember that *to telephone someone* is **telefonare A qualcuno** in Italian; *I'm phoning him* is therefore translated as **Gli telefono:** (lit.) *I'm phoning TO him.*
- 42 **Ne conosco tante. Proverò a telefonare ai due francesi che ho conosciuto la settimana scorsa.** *I know a lot (lit. of them). I'll try phoning the two French people I met last week.*
 a **tante:** *many* Besides meaning *so many*, **tante** can also mean *many*. Notice that **tante** is the feminine plural of **tanto**, agreeing with the feminine plural noun **persone**.
 b **proverò:** *I'll try* Remember that this is the **io** form of **provare** in the future tense.
 c **ho conosciuto:** *I met* **Conosciuto** is the past participle of **conoscere:** *to know*. However, besides meaning *to know* or *to be acquainted with*, **conoscere** also means *to get to know* or *to meet for the first time*, which is the sense in which it is used here.

Part one: What happens

Marino Landucci, Giovanna's fiancé, complains that he has hardly had any time alone with her since her arrival last Friday. However today is Saturday and they will be having lunch together, which will give them a chance to have a good chat about their future plans.

Part one: New words

il lavoro job, work
 il matrimonio wedding, marriage
 sabato Saturday
 i suoceri parents-in-law
 venerdì Friday

la conversazione conversation
 la data date
 la giornata day

benedetto blessed
 bloccato stuck
 dodicesimo twelfth

futuro future
 quei (m. plur.) those
 convincere to persuade
 fissare to fix
 leggere to read
 riuscire to succeed, to manage
 presto quickly, soon
 sempre still

dodici twelve

Part one: Notes

- 1 **I miei futuri suoceri sono arrivati venerdì scorso e stanno a casa mia.**
My future parents-in-law arrived last Friday and are staying at my home.
- a **suoceri:** *parents-in-law* **Father-in-law** is translated as **suocero** and **mother-in-law** as **suocera** in Italian; the two together are **i suoceri**.
- b **a casa mia:** *at my home* When referring to someone's home, the possessive adjective (here **mia**) always follows the word **casa**, e.g. **a casa nostra:** *at our house*, **casa tua:** *your home* etc.
- c Both young men and young women traditionally live with their parents until they marry in Italy, although more and more young people are now trying to break with this tradition. However, as it is the custom for most Italians to grow up, go to school and university and then go to work in the same town or area as they were born, pressures to stay on at the

family home are still very great. When Marino talks about *casa mia*, he is referring to the house where he lives with his parents.

- 2 **Ma io non sono ancora riuscito a passare mezza giornata solo con Giovanna.** *But I haven't yet managed to spend half a day alone with Giovanna.*
 - a **non sono ancora riuscito:** *I haven't yet managed* The verb *riuscire* means *to manage* or *to succeed*; however, as it is a compound of the verb *uscire*: *to go out*, like *uscire* it uses the verb *essere* to form the perfect tense. Thus, *I managed to open the door*: **Sono riuscito a aprire la porta**, but *We managed to catch the train*: **Siamo riusciti a prendere il treno**. Notice too that *to manage TO do something* is *riuscire A fare qualcosa*.
 - b **mezza giornata:** *half a day* The words *giorno* and *giornata* both mean *day*, but *giorno* is used as a unit of time, whilst *giornata* is used to express a day spent doing something, e.g. **Due giorni fa, ho passato una bellissima giornata a Firenze:** *Two days ago, I had a lovely day out* (lit. *I spent a beautiful day*) *in Florence*.
- 3 **Basta. Oggi è sabato e non lavoro. Andrete fuori a pranzo noi due soli e potremo parlare un po' delle nostre cose.** *That's enough. Today's Saturday and I'm not working. The two of us (lit. We two) will go out to lunch alone and we'll be able to talk a bit about our plans* (lit. *things*).
 - a **Basta:** *That's enough.* Remember the verb *bastare*: *to be enough* (L3, N17a).
 - b **Andrete:** *We'll go* This is the future tense of the *are* verb *andare*. Some verbs, like this one, are irregular in the future (Appendix 10).
 - c **potremo:** *we'll be able* This is the irregular future tense of *potere*: *to be able* (Appendix 10).
- 4 **Giovanna è sempre bloccata a Torino da quei benedetti studi.** *Giovanna is still stuck* (lit. *blocked*) *in Turin with* (lit. *by*) *those blessed studies*.
 - a **sempre:** *still* *Sempre* can mean both *always* and *still* according to context.
 - b **quei:** *those* This is the form of *quello* that is used in front of masculine plural nouns that do not begin with a vowel, z, or s followed by another consonant. Remember that the masculine plural form of *quello* when no noun follows is *quelli*.
- 5 **Devo convincerla a finirli presto e a fissare la data di questo matrimonio. E voglio trovarle subito un lavoro qui a Firenze.** *I must persuade her to finish them soon and to fix the date of this wedding. And I want to find her a job straight away here in Florence.*
 - a **Devo convincerla:** *I must persuade her* This could equally well have been written **La devo convincere** (L7, N8). With the exception of *loro*: *to them*, direct and indirect object pronouns (i.e. *mi, ti, ci, vi, lo, la, li*,

le, gli) can all either precede the verb *dovere* as in **La devo convincere** or follow the infinitive as in **Devo convincerla**; in this latter case, the final *e* of the infinitive form is dropped. The same construction is used with the verbs *potere* and *volere*, e.g. **La posso convincere** or **Posso convincerla**: *I can persuade her*; **La voglio convincere** or **Voglio convincerla**: *I want to persuade her*.

- b **a finirli presto:** *to finish them soon* With *finirli* we have another example of the direct object pronoun (here *li*) following the infinitive form of the verb. Except with *volere*, *dovere* and *potere* object pronouns must always follow the infinitive.
- c Notice that *to persuade someone TO do something* is *convincere qualcuno A fare qualcosa* in Italian.
- d **voglio trovarle subito un lavoro:** *I want to find her a job straight away* (lit. *I want to find to her straight away a job*) *To find a job FOR someone* can be expressed by using the indirect object pronoun, here *le*: (lit.) *to her*, in Italian. *I must find him a job* is translated by **Devo trovargli un lavoro**. Notice once again how the final *e* of the infinitive form of the verb is always dropped when it is followed by a pronoun. Notice too that in accordance with Note 5a, the sentence **Voglio trovarle subito un lavoro** could also have been written **Le voglio trovare subito un lavoro**.
- 6 **Vado a cercarla. Oh, eccola. Sta leggendo il giornale.** *I'm going to look for her. Oh, there she is. She's reading the newspaper.*
 - a **Vado a cercarla:** *I'm going to look for her.* Once again, the direct object pronoun *la*: *her* follows the infinitive form of the verb (Note 5b).
 - b **eccola:** *there she is* In the same way as object pronouns can be added to infinitives, so they can be added to the word *ecco*. Thus, *Here I am* is translated by **Eccomi**, *There he is* by **Eccolo**, *There they are* by **Eccoli** etc.
 - c **Sta leggendo:** *She's reading* Here for the first time we meet the present continuous form of the present tense in Italian. It is formed by using the verb *stare* and the gerund of the main verb. Thus, **Sto leggendo:** *I'm reading*, **Stai leggendo:** *You're reading*, **Stiamo leggendo:** *We're reading* etc. The gerund of most *ere* verbs is formed by replacing the *re* at the end of the infinitive form by the letters *ndo*; thus, the gerund of *leggere*: *to read* is *leggendo*, that of *prendere*: *to take* is *prendendo* and that of *avere*: *to have* is *avendo*. In Italian you can only use this present continuous tense when the action is going on at the present moment; thus, *To-night I'm going out*: **Stasera vado fuori** but *I'm having a coffee*: **Sto prendendo un caffè**.

12 Part two: What happens

Al ristorante *At the restaurant*

Marino and Giovanna choose what they will have to eat and drink.

Il lavoro di Marino *Marino's work*

Marino is worried about the progress being made on the new neighbourhood which is being developed by the company he works for as an architect. The money which the local authority is providing will not be enough to cover the whole development.

Il lavoro di Giovanna *Giovanna's work*

Giovanna hopes to complete her thesis at the University by November. She and Marino intend to get married in December and Marino is going to look for a teaching post in Florence for her.

Il conto *The bill*

Marino pays the bill and leaves a tip for the waiter.

Part two: New words

agosto August
l'antipasto hors d'oeuvres
l'asilo nursery-school
il capitolo chapter
il comune town-council
il contorno vegetables
dicembre December
il fagiolo bean
febbraio February
il fondo fund
l'inizio beginning
luglio July
marzo March
il menù menu
novembre November
l'ospedale hospital
ottobre October
il pazzo madman, maniac
il posto position, post
il quartiere neighbourhood, suburb,
part of town
il resto change
il secondo main course
settembre September

gli spiccioli small change
il tesoro darling
il trasporto transport

la bistecca steak
la bistecca alla fiorentina Florentine
steak
la casa popolare council house,
council flat
la cifra sum
la crisi crisis
la disposizione disposal
la frutta fruit
l'impresa firm, company
l'impresa edilizia building contractors
l'insalata salad
l'IVA VAT
la macedonia di frutta fruit salad
la mancia tip
la minestra soup
la pasta pasta
la preoccupazione worry
la specialità speciality
la (or il) supplente temporary teacher

la tesi thesis
la triglia mullet
la trota trout
la zona area
la zuppa inglese trifle

edilizio building
generale general
grosso large
minerale mineral
misto mixed
pesante rich
pieno full
popolare of the people
quel that

verde green

bere to drink
costruire to build
farcela to manage to
iniziare to begin
mettere a disposizione to make
available
pensare to think
restare to remain
sperare di sì to hope so

appena scarcely

cosa c'è? what's the matter?

Part two: Notes

Al ristorante *At the restaurant*

- 7 **Desiderano, signori?** *What do you want, sirs?*
Desiderano?: (lit.) *You want?* Here the waiter is addressing Giovanna and Marino in the polite *loro* form (L9, N18a). Notice once again that because he is addressing mixed company (here one man and one woman) the waiter says **signori:** (lit.) *sirs*.
- 8 **Hai scelto, Giovanna?** *Have you decided* (lit. *chosen*), *Giovanna?*
Remember that *scelto* is the irregular past participle of *scegliere:* *to choose* (L10, N33a).
- 9 **Un momento, sto guardando il menù. Gli antipasti ... eccoli. Vorrei un antipasto misto.** *Just a moment, I'm looking at the menu. The hors d'oeuvres ... here they are. I'd like some mixed hors d'oeuvres.*
 - a **sto guardando il menù:** *I'm looking at the menu* **Sto guardando** is the present continuous form of *guardare*. Following the pattern of *ere* verbs, (N6c), the gerund of most **are** verbs is formed by replacing the **re** ending of the infinitive form by the letters **ndo**; thus the gerund of *guardare* is *guardando*, that of *andare* is *andando* and that of *comprare* is *comprando*. *She is looking at the menu* would be translated by **Sta guardando il menù**, *We are looking at the menu* by **Stiamo guardando il menù** etc.
 - b **menù:** *menu* Pay special attention to the pronunciation of **menù**.
 - c **Gli antipasti:** *The hors d'oeuvres* Italian meals can consist of many courses. They normally begin with an **antipasto** followed by a **primo:** *first course* of soup or **pasta**, e.g. **spaghetti, tagliatelle, canelloni** or **lasagne**. The **secondo:** *main course* is either meat or fish served with a **contorno:** *vegetables* to be chosen from the menu.

- d **eccoli: here they are** Just as *eccola* meant *there she is* (N6b) so *eccoli* here means *here they are*; *li: them* refers to the masculine plural *antipasti*.
- 10 **Io prendo una minestra di pasta e fagioli.** *I'll have a pasta and bean soup.*
- a Marino has obviously decided to skip the hors d'œuvres and go straight on to the first course.
- b **una minestra di pasta e fagioli: a pasta and bean soup** This is a soup of thick consistency containing pieces of pasta and large brown or white beans.
- 11 **E per secondo?** *And for the main course?*
The **secondo** is the *main course* referred to in Note 9c. Giovanna is clearly not having a **primo** but only an **antipasto** followed by a **secondo**.
- 12 **Io preferisco una bistecca alla fiorentina. Qui la faranno bene senz'altro.** *I prefer a Florentine steak. They're sure to do it well here (lit. Here they'll do it well without doubt).*
- a **bistecca alla fiorentina: Florentine steak** This Florentine speciality is a large, grilled T-bone steak.
- b **la faranno: they'll do it** **Faranno** is the future tense of **fare** in the 3rd person plural form.
- 13 **Insalata verde di contorno?** *Green salad to go with it (lit. as vegetable)?*
- a **Insalata** can be any sort of vegetable served cold and seasoned with pepper, salt, oil and vinegar; however, **insalata verde** is usually *lettuce*.
- b **di contorno: (lit.) as vegetable** **Contorno** is the general word for *vegetables* used on a menu.
- 14 **Io vorrei una zuppa inglese per finire.** *I'd like a trifle to finish with.*
Zuppa inglese, the unusual name for Italian trifle normally contains several layers of fruit, cream, custard etc. soaked in a liqueur or spirit. After the first and second course, an Italian meal is usually finished with either fruit, cheese or a sweet.
- 15 **È troppo pesante!** *It's too rich!*
pesante: rich (lit. *heavy*) Notice that Italian uses the word **pesante** where in English we speak of food being *rich*.
- 16 **Ma è così buona!** *But it's so delicious (lit. good)!*
Buono is the word used to describe food that tastes *good* (L8, N22b).
- 17 **Io mangerò una macedonia di frutta.** *I'll have (lit. eat) a fruit salad.*
- a **mangerò: I'll eat** Verbs of the *are* type that end their infinitive with either **giare** (e.g. **mangiare**) or **ciare** (e.g. **cominciare**) do not retain the *i* of the *iare* ending in the future form. The **io** form of **mangiare** in the future tense is **mangerò**, whilst the **io** form of **cominciare** in the future is **comincerò**.
- b **macedonia di frutta: fruit salad** This is usually fresh fruit chopped up with wine or a liqueur added to the juice.

- 18 **E da bere?** *And to drink?*
Notice the use of **da** in this phrase.
- 19 **Un quarto di rosso, uno di bianco e mezza bottiglia d'acqua minerale.** *A quarter of a litre of red, one of white and half a bottle of mineral water.*
- a **Un quarto: (lit.) A quarter** This refers to a quarter of a litre.
- b **Rosso and bianco** obviously refer to *red* and *white* wine.
- c **acqua minerale: mineral water** Whilst it is normally quite all right to drink water straight from the tap in Italy, most Italians prefer the flavour and the purity of **acqua minerale**. Italy is rich in spas and mineral waters and bottles of mineral water from the various springs can be bought all over Italy.
- Il lavoro di Marino** *Marino's work*
- 20 **Ti ho visto un po' stanco in questi ultimi giorni, Marino. Cosa c'è?** *You have looked rather tired these last few days, Marino. What's the matter?*
- a **Ti ho visto un po' stanco: (lit.) I've seen you a little tired** Notice how this expression is phrased in Italian. Thus, **Ti vedo bene: You look well** and **Lo vedo bene: He looks well**.
- b **Cosa c'è?: What's the matter?** This is a useful idiomatic expression to remember.
- 21 **Sto lavorando come un pazzo e sono pieno di preoccupazioni.** *I'm working like a maniac and I'm full of worries.*
- a **Sto lavorando: I'm working** This is the present continuous form of the *are* verb **lavorare** (Notes 6c and 9a).
- b **un pazzo: a maniac** (lit. *madman*)
- 22 **Per i progetti di quel nuovo quartiere?** *Because of (lit. For) the plans for that new neighbourhood?*
quel: that This is the form of **quello** normally used in front of masculine singular nouns, except those beginning with *z* or *s* and another consonant or with a vowel, e.g. **quel signore** but **quello studio**.
- 23 **Sì, li stiamo finendo adesso.** *Yes, we're finishing them now.*
stiamo finendo: we're finishing This is the present continuous form of **finire**. The *ire* verbs form their gerund by replacing the *ire* infinitive with the letters **endo**. Thus, the gerund of **dormire: to sleep** is **dormendo**, that of **capire: to understand** **capendo** etc.
- 24 **Perché con questa crisi generale non ci daranno altri fondi e non potremo costruire gli asili e l'ospedale.** *Because with this general crisis they won't give us any other funds and we won't be able to build the nursery schools and the hospital.*
- a **questa crisi: this crisis** Notice that **crisi** is a feminine word.
- b **daranno: they will give** This is the **loro** form of **dare** in the future tense.

- c **potremo: we will be able** This is the irregular future of **potere** in the **noi** form; the **io** form is **potrò** (L12, N3c and Appendix 10).
- d **gli asili: the nursery schools** Children of pre-school age (i.e. from four to six) can attend the **asilo: nursery school** if they wish. **Asili** can be run either by the local authority or private organisations and individuals.
- 25 **Ma non mi hai detto che il comune ha messo a disposizione una grossa cifra?** *But didn't you tell me that the town-council has made a large sum available?*
Il comune is the word used for *the town-council* or *the local administration*.
- 26 **Sì, ma basterà appena per le case popolari, le strade e i trasporti.** *Yes, but it will scarcely be enough for the council houses, the roads and the buses* (lit. *transports*).
- a **basterà: it will be enough** This is the future tense of **bastare** in the 3rd person singular form.
- b **i trasporti: (lit.) the transports** In this context **trasporti** must mean *bus service*. Notice that in Italian **trasporto** is written without an **n**.
- 27 **I lavori sono già iniziati?** *Has the work* (lit. *Have the works*) *already begun?*
I lavori: the work Notice that when referring to construction or large-scale engineering work, it is more correct to speak of **i lavori** in the plural.
- 28 **Per fortuna le imprese edilizie stanno facendo un buon lavoro.** *Fortunately the building contractors are doing a good job.*
- a **le imprese edilizie: the building contractors** This is a useful expression to learn. The word **impresa** alone means any kind of *undertaking* or a *firm* that undertakes work.
- b **stanno facendo: are doing** This is the present continuous tense of **fare: to do**. The gerund of **fare, facendo**, is formed irregularly and reflects the Latin infinitive root of **fare** which is *facere*.

Il lavoro di Giovanna *Giovanna's work*

- 29 **E i tuoi studi, Giovanna?** *And what about your studies, Giovanna?*
Tuoi is the masculine plural form of **tuo** which follows the same pattern as **suo** (L5, N23a and Appendix 4d).
- 30 **Mi resta solo la tesi.** *I've only got the thesis to do* (lit. *There remains to me only the thesis*).
- a **Mi resta: (lit.) There remains to me** Here **mi** is the indirect object pronoun meaning *to me*.
- b **la tesi: the thesis** Notice that like **la crisi: crisis**, **la tesi** is of Greek derivation and is feminine although ending with **si** in the singular (Note 24a). The plural of words of this type is **le tesi: the theses** and **le crisi: the crises**.

- 31 **La stai già facendo?** *Are you already doing it?*
stai facendo?: are you doing? Remember that this is the present continuous form of **fare: to do** (Note 28b).
- 32 **Sto scrivendo il primo capitolo. Pensi che ce la farò a finire per novembre?** *I'm writing the first chapter. Do you think I'll manage to finish it for November?*
- a **Sto scrivendo: I'm writing** This is the present continuous form of **scrivere: to write** (Note 6c).
- b **ce la farò a finire: I'll manage to finish** The expression **farcela: to manage to do something** is very idiomatic. **Ce** and **la** never change in this expression; only the verb changes according to who is doing the action, e.g. **Ce la fai?: Can you manage it?**; **No, non ce la faccio: No, I can't manage it.** In this sentence, Giovanna uses the future of **fare** and follows the phrase with another verb, viz **finire**. Notice that in this case she must say **A finire**, e.g. **Ce la fai a chiudere la porta?: Can you manage to close the door?**; **Non ce la facciamo a venire a quell'ora: We can't manage to come at that time.**
- 33 **Sono sicuro di sì. Vedrai, non sarà difficile.** *I'm sure you will. You'll see, it won't be difficult.*
- a **Sono sicuro di sì: I'm sure you will** (lit. *I'm sure of yes*). This is a very useful idiom to remember. **Sono sicuro di no** would mean *I'm sure you won't*.
- b **Vedrai: You'll see** This is the irregular future of **vedere: to see**.
- c **non sarà: it won't be** This is the irregular future of **essere: to be**.
- 34 **Ho ancora quattro mesi davanti: luglio, agosto, settembre e ottobre.** *I've still got four months in front (of me): July, August, September and October.*
- a **davanti: in front of me** Although **davanti** only means *in front*, in English we must add the words *of me* to make the meaning clear.
- b **luglio: July** Pay special attention to the pronunciation of **luglio**.
- 35 **E a dicembre ci sposiamo.** *And in December we'll get married.*
- a **a dicembre: in December** Notice that to say *IN* a month, we say **A** in Italian.
- b **ci sposiamo: we'll get married** (lit. *we marry us*) **Mi sposo** means *I'm getting married*, **ti sposi: you're getting married** and **si sposa: he's getting married**. We will see further examples of this type of verb later on in the course.
- 36 **Spero proprio di sì.** *I really hope so.*
Spero di sì: I hope so. This is the same type of idiom as **Sono sicuro di sì** in Note 33a. **Spero di no** means *I hope not*.
- 37 **Lo cercherò io ma dovrai fare la supplente all'inizio.** *I'll look for one* (lit. *it*) *but you'll have to be a temporary at the beginning.*

- a **Lo: it** This refers to **un posto nelle scuole** of the previous sentence.
- b **cercherò: I'll look for** This is the future tense of **cercare: to look for**. Notice that we must add **h** after the second **c** in order to show that this letter preserves its hard sound in the future.
- c **dovrai: you'll have to** This is the irregular future of **dovere: to have to**.
- d **fare la supplente: be a temporary teacher** **Fare** is often used with professions to express the idea of *working as* or *being something*, e.g. **Che cosa fa lei?: What do you do?** **Faccio l'insegnante: I'm a teacher (L10, N10a).**
- e **la supplente: temporary teacher** **Supplente** can be either a masculine word (**il supplente**) or a feminine word (**la supplente**) according to whether a man or woman is doing the job. A *temporary teacher* and a *supply teacher* are both translated by **supplente** in Italian.
- 38 **Certo, tesoro. Non vedo l'ora di averti qui.** *Certainly, darling. I can't wait to have you here.*
- a **Tesoro** literally means *treasure*, but when someone is addressed as **tesoro** it means *darling* in English.
- b **Non vedo l'ora: I can't wait** Remember this idiomatic expression from L6, N11a.
- 39 **Verrò giù subito, appena finita la tesi.** *I'll come down straight away as soon as I've finished the thesis.*
- a **Verrò: I'll come** This is the irregular future of **venire: to come**.
- b **appena finita la tesi: as soon as I've finished the thesis** (lit. *scarcely finished the thesis*). Here **finita** is the past participle of **finire** used in the feminine form to agree with **la tesi**. Further examples of this type of construction are **Appena visto il palazzo, è andata a casa: As soon as she had seen the palace, she went home; Appena fatte le spese, Alberto ha preso il tram: As soon as he had done the shopping, Alberto caught the tram.**

Il conto The bill

- 40 **Allora ... mezza minerale, vino, servizio, IVA.** *Now then ... half of mineral water, wine, service, VAT.*
- a **servizio: service** There is normally a service charge of between 10% and 15% added to bills in Italian restaurants. If this service charge is not included, it is customary to leave a tip of between 10% and 15% of the total bill.
- b **IVA** stands for **Imposta di Valore Aggiunto: (lit.) Tax of Added Value** and is the exact equivalent of **Value Added Tax** in Britain.
- 41 **Un momento, vado alla cassa e le porto il resto.** *Just a moment, I'll go to the cash-desk and bring you the change.*
- il resto: the change** **Il resto** literally means *the rest* or *the remainder* and here has the sense of *the change*.

- 42 **Hai degli spiccioli per la mancia, Giovanna?** *Have you got any small change for the tip, Giovanna?*
- degli spiccioli: small change** **Spiccioli** normally means *change* in the sense of small coins.
- 43 **Eccoli.** *Here they are.*
- The **li** at the end of **eccoli** refers back to the masculine plural **spiccioli** of the previous sentence (Note 9d).

Part three: What happens

In trattoria In the restaurant

Dr. Neri is a regular customer at this restaurant and discusses the menu with the proprietor.

Impresa edilizia Building contractors

An accountant and a surveyor discuss the general economic situation in the building industry.

Part three: New words

il brasato braised meat
gennaio January
il geometra surveyor
l'impianto plant, installation
il minestrone vegetable soup
il padrone owner
il primo starters, first course
il quartino quarter of a litre
il ragioniere accountant
il ragù meat sauce
gli spaghetti spaghetti
il tavolo table

la bistecca ai ferri grilled steak
la ripresa recovery, pick-up
la trattoria restaurant

fisso fixed
poco little
quegli those

credere di sì to think so, to believe so

a prezzo fisso fixed price
ai ferri grilled

Part three: Notes

In trattoria In the restaurant

- 44 Whilst a **ristorante** is usually quite a smart place, a **trattoria** is less elegant but serves good food cheaply, probably without the style and fuss of a **ristorante**.
- 45 **Padrone** *Owner*
- In keeping with the smaller and more personal nature of a **trattoria**, it is the **padrone** here who takes the customer's order.

- 46 **Buongiorno, dottore.** *Good afternoon, doctor.*
dottore: *doctor* We already know that as well as meaning *doctor*, **dottore** is the name given to someone who has graduated from an Italian university. **Dottore** is the correct way to address such a person instead of the usual **signore**. In the same way, a professional person such as an engineer is addressed as **ingegnere** whilst Paolo would be addressed as **avvocato** by those who knew him.
- 47 **Eccolo.** *Here it is.*
 Here **lo** refers back to the word **tavolo** of the previous sentence.
- 48 **No, il solito menù a prezzo fisso.** *No, the usual fixed price menu.*
a prezzo fisso: *fixed price* In most smaller restaurants and **trattorie** a **menù a prezzo fisso** is offered as well as the normal choice of menu. For an all-in sum a choice of a couple of starters is offered, followed by a choice of two or three dishes for the main course, usually finishing with either fresh fruit, ice-cream or cheese. A small quantity of wine, mineral water or beer is often included in the all-in price.
- 49 **Allora come primo ci sono gli spaghetti o il minestrone.** *Well as a first course there is spaghetti or vegetable soup.*
a ci sono gli spaghetti: (lit.) *there are the spaghetti* **Spaghetti** is plural in Italian, one strand of spaghetti being **uno spaghetti**.
b minestrone: *vegetable soup* This is usually made from fresh vegetables and contains small pieces of pasta.
- 50 **Spaghetti al ragù, per favore.** *Spaghetti with meat sauce, please.*
Spaghetti al ragù is also known as **spaghetti alla bolognese:** *spaghetti Bolognese-style* in Italy.
- 51 **Prendo il brasato e un quartino di vino.** *I'll have the braised meat and a quarter of a litre of wine.*
un quartino di vino: *a quarter of a litre of wine* **Un quartino** is the same as the **quarto** that Marino refers to in Note 19a, i.e. *a quarter of a litre*. In general, words ending in **ino** or **ina** are diminutives like words ending in **etto** or **etta** (L5, N2b); thus, **una ragazza:** *a girl* but **una ragazzina:** *a little girl*; **un tavolo:** *a table* but **un tavolino:** *a small table* etc.

Impresa edilizia *Building contractors*

- 52 **Rag. Salvini** (lit.) *Accountant Salvini*
Rag. is the abbreviation of **ragioniere** which is what one becomes after following the prescribed secondary school studies in book-keeping and accountancy. It is also customary to address a **ragioniere** as **ragioniere** or **ragioniera**, if she is a woman, instead of **signore** or **signora** etc.
- 53 **Come vanno gli affari, geometra?** *How's business, (lit.) surveyor?*
a Gli affari in the plural is the word generally used for *business*. Remember **per affari:** *on business* (L1, N50d).

- b geometra:** *surveyor* **Geometra** is what one becomes after following the prescribed secondary school course of study in surveying. Like **ragioniere**, **ingegnere** and **avvocato**, it denotes professional status and is used when addressing a surveyor. Its written abbreviation is **geom.**
- 54 **Non state lavorando a quegli impianti fuori città?** *Aren't you working on those installations out of town?*
a state lavorando: *you are working* This is the present continuous form of **lavorare**; the **ragioniere** uses the **voi** form because he is referring to the surveyor and his colleagues.
b quegli: *those* This is the form of **quello** used in front of masculine plural nouns beginning with either a vowel, or **z**, or **s** and another consonant.
c impianti: *installations* **Impianto** is the general word for any sort of *installation* or *industrial plant*.
- 55 **Credo di sì.** *I think so.*
 This is the same type of phrase as **Sono sicuro di sì** (Note 33a) and **Spero di sì** (Note 36). *I don't think so* or *I think not* is translated by **Credo di no**.
- 56 **Pensa che ci sarà una ripresa?** *Do you think that things will pick up?*
a ci sarà: (lit.) *there will be* This is the future of **c'è:** *there is*.
b una ripresa: (lit.) *a recovery* The **ragioniere** is here referring to an economic recovery.
- 57 **Noi non avremo niente da fare da ottobre a gennaio.** *We won't have anything to do from October to January.*
avremo: *we will have* This is the irregular future of **avere:** *to have*.

Lezione tredici

Lesson thirteen

Part one: What happens

A warder at the Uffizi art gallery in Florence talks about his work. He would love to be an official guide but feels too old to undertake the necessary studies and so is content to be a warder.

Part one: New words

l'artista (m. pl. **gli artisti**) *artist*
il Capodanno *New Year's Day*

Andando al museo

Going to the museum

il capolavoro *masterpiece*
il custode *warder*

maggio May
 il museo museum
 il Natale Christmas
 il quadro picture, painting
 il Rinascimento Renaissance
 il visitatore visitor

la galleria gallery
 la galleria d'arte art gallery

la Pasqua Easter
 capace capable, able
 famoso famous
 ricco rich
 tredicesimo thirteenth

tredici thirteen

Part one: Notes

- 1 **Andando al museo** *Going to the museum*
 museo: *museum* Museo means not only *museum* in Italian but also any place where objects of art are collected together. In this case it refers to the Uffizi art gallery in Florence.
- 2 **Custode degli Uffizi** *Warder at the Uffizi*
 a custode: *warder* Whilst custode is the general word for *caretaker* or *custodian*, it here refers to one of the uniformed people patrolling the gallery and watching over the paintings.
- b Uffizi The **palazzo degli Uffizi** was so-called because it housed the **uffizi** or *offices* of municipal government in the sixteenth century. It is now a world-famous picture gallery.
- 3 **Questa è una delle gallerie d'arte più ricche del mondo.** *This is one of the richest art galleries in the world.*
 a ricche: *rich* The masculine singular form of this word is **ricco**; notice that we must add **h** after the second **c** in order to preserve the hard **c** sound in the feminine plural form.
- b **più ricche del mondo**: *richest in* (lit. *of*) *the world* Notice that in this type of phrase, Italian uses **DI** where English uses **IN**, e.g. *the largest IN the city*: **il più grande DELLA città**; *the most beautiful IN the area*: **il più bello DEL quartiere** etc.
- 4 **Siamo agli Uffizi e possiamo vedere quadri di Giotto, Botticelli, Leonardo, Michelangelo, Raffaello e altri famosi artisti del Rinascimento.** *We're at the Uffizi and we can see paintings by Giotto, Botticelli, Leonardo, Michelangelo, Raphael and other famous artists of the Renaissance.*
 a Giotto (1267-1336) was born near Florence and was one of the great, early Renaissance painters. His best-known works are at the church of St. Francis at Assisi and in the Scrovegni chapel at Padua. In addition he was an architect and a designer for sculpture.
- b Botticelli (1445-1510) was a Florentine painter whose best-known works, Spring and The Birth of Venus, are to be found in the Uffizi Gallery.

- c **Leonardo da Vinci** (1452-1519) was a painter, sculptor, architect and engineer. He worked mainly in Florence and Milan, his most famous works being the Mona Lisa which is now at the Louvre in Paris and his painting of the Last Supper which was painted directly onto the wall of Santa Maria delle Grazie convent church in Milan.
- d **Michelangelo Buonairoti** (1475-1564) was a sculptor, architect, painter and a poet who worked both in Florence and in Rome. Among his best-known works are the statue of David and the Medici tombs in Florence and his wall and ceiling paintings of the Sistine chapel in Rome.
- e **Raffaello**: *Raphael* (1483-1520) worked at Perugia, Florence and Rome and produced a prodigious number of paintings in his short lifetime.
- f **Rinascimento**: *Renaissance* The **Rinascimento** is the name given to the rebirth or reawakening of interest in art and architecture that started in Italy (principally Florence) in the fourteenth century and which led to an explosion in learning and culture in the rest of Europe over the following two centuries.
- 5 **Io guarderei questi capolavori per ore ed ore, e penso che sarei capace di parlarne ai visitatori del museo.** *I could* (lit. *would*) *look at these masterpieces for hours and hours, and I think I could* (lit. *would be able to*) *talk about them to the visitors to the museum.*
 a **guarderei**: *I would look* This is the **io** form of **guardare** in a new tense, called the conditional. It is formed in the same way as the future tense except that the ending is different. Instead of **ò** (the **io** future ending) the **io** conditional ending is **ei** (L11, N2a and Appendix 9).
- b **sarei capace**: (lit.) *I would be capable* **Sarei** is the **io** conditional form of **essere**: *to be*.
- c **capace di parlarne**: (lit.) *capable of speaking of them* We have already seen that **ne** means *of it* or *of them* (L10, N8a). Here **ne** has been added to the infinitive **parlare** like the other pronouns we saw in Lesson 12 (Note 5a), and in this case it has the meaning of *about them*.
- 6 **Mi piacerebbe tanto fare la guida, ma ci vorrebbero studi speciali.** *I'd like* (lit. *It would please me*) *so much to be a guide, but I would need* (lit. *there would be necessary*) *special studies.*
 a **Mi piacerebbe**: (lit.) *It would please me* You already know that **mi piace** means *I like* (lit. *it pleases me*); **mi piacerebbe** is the conditional form of **mi piace**. The **ebbe** ending is typical of the 3rd person singular of the conditional tense, e.g. **guarderei**: *I would look at* (Note 5a) but **guarderebbe**: *he/she/you would look at*; **sarei**: *I would be* (Note 5b) but **sarebbe**: *he/she/you would be*.
- b **fare la guida**: *to be a guide* Notice once again the use of **fare** in this expression connected with a profession (L12, N37d).
- c **ci vorrebbero**: (lit.) *there would be necessary* You have already met the

expression *ci vogliono*: *there are necessary* (L6, N9). The irregular future form of *ci vogliono* is *ci vorranno*: *there will be necessary*; from this you can see that *ci vorrebbero* is the conditional form *there would be necessary*. The *ebbero* ending is typical of the *loro* form in the conditional, e.g. *vorrei*: *I would like* (which you already know from L6, N28), *vorrebbe*: *he/she/you would like* and *vorrebbero*: *they would like*; *sarei*: *I would be*, *sarebbe*: *he/she/it would be* and *sarebbero*: *they would be*.

- 7 **E io sono troppo vecchio ormai.** Così faccio il custode. *And I'm too old now. So I work as a warder.*
- a ormai: *now* Remember how to use this word (L11, N30d).
- b faccio il custode: *I work as a warder* Remember the use of *fare* with professions and occupations (Note 6b).
- 8 **Di solito chiude al lunedì, a Natale, a Capodanno, a Pasqua, il primo maggio e il quindici agosto.** *Usually it shuts on Mondays, at Christmas, on New Year's Day, at Easter, on May 1st and August 15th.*
- a al lunedì: *on Mondays* When speaking about *every Monday* or when translating *on Mondays* we must say *al lunedì* or *il lunedì* in Italian; however, when speaking about one particular Monday, we must just say *lunedì* and perhaps add *prossimo*: *next* or *scorso*: *last* to add to the meaning.
- b il primo maggio: *May 1st* May Day has been adopted by the workers as the day for political speeches and parades and is therefore a public holiday all over Italy.
- c il quindici agosto: *August 15th* This is the religious holiday of the Assumption which is observed as a public holiday throughout Italy and is also known as **Ferragosto**.
- d To say the date in Italian we must use the cardinal numbers with the exception of the 1st of the month. Thus, **il primo maggio**, but **il due agosto**, **il tre gennaio** etc.

Part two: What happens

Indecisione Undecided

Alberto explains to Marino that he prefers to go sightseeing on his own rather than go to the goldsmiths' shops on the Ponte Vecchio with his mother and sister. Marino advises him to start with the Uffizi gallery as he can see some of the other sights the next day when he and Paolo go to visit their friend Sergio.

Come si arriva al museo. How to get to the museum.

Alberto will have to visit the Uffizi alone as his father has a headache and Marino is too busy. Marino gives him directions for getting to the gallery and they arrange to meet at lunchtime.

Sull'autobus sbagliato On the wrong bus

Alberto gets on a bus going in the wrong direction.

Alberto chiede di nuovo indicazioni. Alberto asks the way again.

Alberto gets further directions from a passer-by. He, in turn, is asked the way to the Uffizi by a girl tourist. Alberto suggests they walk along together and hopes that she will agree to go round the gallery with him.

Part two: New words

l'autobus bus
il battistero baptistery
il campanile bell-tower
il caos chaos, mess
il Duomo cathedral
l'isolato block
il mal di testa headache
il male pain, ache, sickness
il metro metre
il mezzo middle
il mezzogiorno midday
il palazzo building
il (or la) passante passer-by

la cattedrale cathedral
la croce cross
la direzione direction
l'indecisione indecision
l'indicazione direction
la mezza half hour
l'oreficeria goldsmith's shop, jeweller's shop
la strada way, road
la traversa road going across
la via street, road
la visita visit

la voglia desire

loro them
lui him
me me
te you

facile easy
opposto opposite
sbarrato barred, crossed
troppo too much
vostro your

attraversare to cross
avere voglia to want to, to feel like
continuare to continue
proseguire to continue, to proceed

secondo according to
secondo te according to you, in your opinion
sotto under, beneath

dritto straight on
in mezzo in the middle
volentieri willingly, with pleasure

Part two: Notes

Indecisione Undecided (lit. Indecision)

- 9 **Esci stamattina, Alberto?** *Are you going out this morning, Alberto?*
Esci is the *tu* form of the irregular verb *uscire* in the present tense (L10, N39 and Appendix 10).

- 10 **Si, esco fra poco.** *Yes, I'm going out soon.*
Esco is the **io** form of **uscire** in the present tense (Note 9). Compare the hard pronunciation of the **c** in **esco** with the soft pronunciation of **esci**.
- 11 **Anche Giovanna ha detto che esce. Uscite insieme?** *Giovanna said that she was going out too. Are you going out together?*
a **esce:** *she is going out* This is the 3rd person singular form of **uscire**; again pay careful attention to the pronunciation.
b **uscite?:** *are you going out?* This is the **voi** form of **uscire** in the present tense; remember that the **noi** form is **usciamo**, spelt with a **u**, but that all the other persons change the **u** to **e** (Appendix 10). Again pay careful attention to the pronunciation of **uscite**.
- 12 **No, lei e la mamma vanno a Ponte Vecchio verso mezzogiorno. Vogliono vedere le oreficerie.** *No, she and mother are going to Ponte Vecchio about midday. They want to see the jewellers' shops.*
a **Ponte Vecchio** is the most famous bridge over the River Arno in Florence. On either side of the narrow road across the bridge are small boutiques and jewellers' shops.
b **oreficerie:** *goldsmiths, jewellers' shops* Florence is particularly well-known for its work in gold, silver and semi-precious stones.
- 13 **Perché non vai con loro?** *Why don't you go with them?*
con loro: *with them* Notice that **loro** does not change its form when it follows a preposition. e.g. **loro vanno:** *they are going* and **con loro:** *with them*. In this way you can see that **loro** means both *they* and *them*.
- 14 **Preferirei andare agli Uffizi, o a Santa Croce o al Duomo. Secondo te, da dove è meglio cominciare?** *I'd prefer to go to the Uffizi, or to Santa Croce or the cathedral. In your opinion, where is it best to start?*
a **Preferirei:** *I would prefer* This is the conditional tense of **preferire** in the **io** form.
b **Santa Croce:** (lit.) *Holy Cross* The church of **Santa Croce** contains many works of art as well as the tombs of Michelangelo, Galileo, Machiavelli, Rossini and other famous Italians.
c **al Duomo:** *to the cathedral* The cathedral was begun in 1296 and also contains many works of art; its famous dome was designed by Brunelleschi and finished in 1436.
d **secondo te:** *in your opinion*, (lit.) *according to you* Notice that **ti:** *you* becomes **te** when it follows a preposition.
- 15 **Sarebbe meglio cominciare dagli Uffizi, perché forse non basterà una visita sola.** *It would be best to begin with the Uffizi, because one visit may not be enough.*
a **Sarebbe:** *It would be* Remember that this is the conditional tense of **essere** in the 3rd person singular form (Note 6a).

- b **non basterà:** (lit.) *will not be enough* Notice that **basterà** is the 3rd person singular form of **bastare** in the future tense.
- 16 **Veramente avrei voglia di vedere la cattedrale, il battistero e il campanile di Giotto, con questo bel sole.** *Really I'd like to see the cathedral, the baptistery and Giotto's bell-tower, in this lovely sunshine.*
a **avrei voglia:** *I'd like* (lit. *I would have desire*) **Avrei** is the conditional form of **avere**; **avere voglia di fare qualcosa** can often be translated by *to want to do something* or *to feel like doing something*.
b **la cattedrale:** *the cathedral* **La cattedrale** and **il Duomo** refer to the same place and both mean *cathedral*.
c **il battistero:** *the baptistery* The baptistery stands next door to the cathedral and is built in the shape of an octagon; it is particularly well-known for its three gilt doors, one of which is the so-called Gate of Paradise.
d **il campanile di Giotto:** *Giotto's bell-tower* The bell-tower stands next door to the cathedral and the baptistery. Designed by Giotto, it was begun in 1334 but remained unfinished at his death; his plans were however, carried out in every detail.
- 17 **Ma potreste vederli domani tu e tuo padre, mentre andate a trovare il vostro amico Sergio.** *But you and your father could see them tomorrow when (lit. while) you go to visit your friend Sergio.*
a **potreste:** *you could* This is the **voi** form of **potere** in the conditional tense; the **este** ending is typical of the **voi** conditional form (Appendix 10).
b **vederli:** *see them* Here **li:** *them* has been added to the infinitive form **vedere** (L12, N5b).
c **il vostro amico:** *your friend* Just as **nostro:** *our* is the possessive form for **noi**, so **vostro:** *your* is the possessive form for **voi** (Appendix 4d).

Come si arriva al museo. *How to get to the museum.*

- 18 **Vieni con me?** *Are you coming with me?*
con me: *with me* The form **mi:** *me* becomes **me** when it follows a preposition (Note 14d). Thus, **He sees me:** **Mi vede**, but **He comes with me:** **Viene con me**.
- 19 **Ci verrei volentieri, ma ho troppo lavoro. Se tuo padre è libero, perché non vai con lui?** *I'd love to come (lit. I would come willingly), but I've got too much work. If your father is free, why don't you go with him?*
a **verrei:** *I would come* As **verrò:** *I will come* is the irregular future of **venire:** *to come*, **verrei** is the conditional tense of **venire** in the **io** form.
b **troppo lavoro:** *too much work* Notice that as well as being an adverb meaning *too much* (e.g. **Fumo troppo:** *I smoke too much.*), **troppo** is also an adjective and agrees with the noun it describes. Thus, **troppa fortuna:** *too much luck*; **troppi ragazzi:** *too many children* and **troppe sigarette:** *too many cigarettes*.

- c con lui: *with him* Notice that *lui*: *he* does not change its form when it follows a preposition, e.g. **Lui è inglese, vado con lui**: *He's English, I'm going with him*. In this way, *lui* can mean both *he* and *him*.
- 20 **Ha mal di testa e vorrebbe dormire. Vado da solo. Potresti dirmi come ci arrivo?** *He's got a headache and would like to sleep. I'll go alone. Could you tell me how I get there?*
- a **mal di testa**: *headache* The word **mal** is the shortened version of the noun **il male** which literally means a *pain, hurt* or *ache*.
- b **vorrebbe**: *he would like* Remember that the **ebbe** ending is typical of the 3rd person singular in the conditional tense (Notes 6a and 15a).
- c **da solo**: *alone* This is a useful phrase to learn. A girl or woman saying *I'll go alone* would say **Vado da sola**, the adjective **solo** taking on its feminine singular form (L7, N33); two men going alone would say **Andiamo da soli**, whilst two girls would say **Andiamo da sole**.
- d **Potresti?**: *Could you?* This is the **tu** form of the conditional tense of **potere**: *to be able*. The **esti** ending is typical of the **tu** form of the conditional.
- e **dirmi**: *tell (lit. say) me* Here **mi** has been added to the infinitive of **dire**.
- 21 **Quando esci, attraversa la strada e prendi l'autobus qui davanti, il numero dodici. Ma non prendere quello sbarrato.** *When you go out, cross the road and catch the bus opposite here (lit. here in front), the number twelve. But don't get the one with a bar across.*
- a **esci**: *you go out* Remember that this is the **tu** form of **uscire**: *to go out* (Note 9).
- b **attraversa**: *cross* This is the **tu** command form of the **are** verb **attraversare**: *to cross*. The **tu** command form of all **are** verbs ends in **a**, e.g. **Guarda!**: *Look!* and **Telefona a Giovanna!**: *Phone Giovanna!* In form it looks like the 3rd person singular of the present tense (Appendix 9).
- c **prendi**: *catch* This is the **tu** command form of **prendere**: *to take, to catch*. The **i** ending is typical of the **tu** command form of **ere** verbs, e.g. **Chiudi la porta!**: *Close the door* and **Scrivi quel rapporto!**: *Write that report!* The **tu** command form of **ere** verbs looks like the 2nd person singular of the present tense.
- d **non prendere**: (lit.) *don't take* The **tu** command form of all verbs in the negative is very simple: you merely use **non** followed by the infinitive of the verb. Thus **Non andare** means *Don't go*, **Non fumare**: *Don't smoke*, **Non finire la lezione**: *Don't finish the lesson* and **Non venire troppo tardi**: *Don't come too late* etc.
- e **quello sbarrato**: *the one with a bar across* Some bus numbers in Italy have a line or bar running through them from one of the top corners to the corner diagonally opposite: a number 12 bus would take a different route from a number 12 with a bar through it.

- 22 **Scendi alla seconda fermata di via Verdi.** *Get off at the second stop in via Verdi.*
- a **Scendi**: *Get off* This is another **tu** command form of an **ere** verb (Note 21c).
- b **via**: *street, road* **Via** is the word used specifically for a *street* or a *road* in the town.
- 23 **Non attraversare la strada. Gira subito a destra e prosegui dritto. Alla terza traversa gira a sinistra e continua per cento metri circa. Il palazzo degli Uffizi è nell'ultimo isolato prima del Lungarno.** *Don't cross the road. Turn right straight away and carry straight on. Take the third turning on the left and continue for about a hundred metres. The Uffizi building is in the last block before the Lungarno.*
- a **Non attraversare la strada**: *Don't cross the road.* This is the **tu** command form of **attraversare** in the negative (Note 21d).
- b **la strada**: *the road* Whilst **via** is used specifically in towns (Note 22b), **strada** is normally the word used for a *main road* i.e. one connecting two towns.
- c **Gira**: *Turn* This is the **tu** command form of **girare**: *to turn* (Note 21b).
- d **prosegui**: *carry on* This is the **tu** command form of **proseguire**: *to carry on*. Notice that this is an **ire** verb and that the **tu** command form of all verbs ends in **i**, just like the **tu** command form of all **ere** verbs (Note 21c and Appendix 9).
- e **Alla terza traversa**: *At the third road going across* **Una traversa** is the term used for a road that crosses another one.
- f **continua**: *continue* This is the **tu** command form of **continuare**: *to continue*.
- g **Il palazzo**: *The building* Notice that **palazzo** is used here, not in the sense of *palace*, but of *large building* (L10, N3b).
- h **prima del Lungarno**: *before the Lungarno* We have already met the word **lungofiume** (L5, N4), which literally means *along the river*. The **Lungarno** is the name given to the road that follows the side of the Arno river in Florence.
- 24 **Penso che avrò finito per l'una. Ti aspetto sotto il tuo ufficio.** *I think I'll have finished by one o'clock. I'll wait for you outside (lit. under) your office.*
- a **avrò finito**: *I'll have finished* This is an example of what is known as the future perfect tense. It is constructed in the same way as the future perfect tense in English, i.e. the future form of the auxiliary verb (here **avere**) followed by the past participle of the main verb. Further examples of verbs in the future perfect are **Avremo mangiato**: *We will have eaten*, **Maria avrà preso il treno**: *Maria will have caught the train* and **Avranno venduto quella casa**: *They'll have sold that house*.

- b sotto il tuo ufficio: (lit.) *under your office* In English we talk about waiting for someone *outside* his office or flat meaning in the street outside or below; in Italian, if the office or flat is above ground level, we must use the word *sotto*.
- 25 A quell'ora sarò già uscito. Vieni alla mezza se puoi. *I'll have already come out by that time. Come at half past twelve if you can.*
- a sarò già uscito: *I'll have already come out* This is another example of the future perfect tense (Note 24a) but this time the main verb *uscire* is one that uses *essere* to help form its perfect tense. All verbs that need *essere* to help form their perfect tense also need *essere* to help form their future perfect tense. Some further examples of these verbs in the future perfect tense are *Le due ragazze saranno partite*: *The two girls will have left*, *Noi saremo arrivati per le otto*: *We'll have arrived by eight o'clock*, *Teresa sarà andata a Venezia*: *Teresa will have gone to Venice* and *Franco sarà già tornato*: *Franco will have already returned*.
- b alla mezza: *at half past twelve* Whilst *la mezza* means *the half-hour*, the expression *alla mezza* means specifically *at half past twelve* whilst *È la mezza* means *It's half past twelve*.

Sull'autobus sbagliato *On the wrong bus*

- 26 Scusi, quest'autobus porta in via Verdi? *Excuse me, does this bus go to via Verdi?*
 porta: (lit.) *goes* Remember this special use of *portare* meaning *to take to* or *to go to* (L4, N51).
- 27 Certo, certo, salga in fretta. *Of course, of course, get on quickly.*
 salga: *get on* This is the *lei* command form of *salire*: *to get on* (Appendix 10).
- 28 Avanti, avanti, signori. C'è posto. *Move forward, move forward (ladies and) gentlemen. There's room.*
 Avanti: *Move forward* Local buses in Italy normally have two doors, one at the front near the driver and one at the back. The conductor usually sits to the right of the back door and having paid their fares the passengers then move down the bus to allow room for new passengers to get on and pay their fare; they then get off the bus through the front door. That is why the conductor here shouts *Avanti*: (lit.) *Forward*. In some areas, the conductor has been replaced by ticket machines just inside the rear door, but the same principle applies.
- 29 Scusi, potrebbe dirmi quando arriviamo alla seconda fermata di via Verdi? *Excuse me, could you tell me when we get to (lit. arrive at) the second stop in via Verdi?*
- a potrebbe?: *could you?* This is the 3rd person singular conditional form of *potere*, ending with the characteristic *ebbe* (Notes 17a and 20d).

- b dirmi: *tell me* This is the same construction as in Note 20e.
- 30 Non stia lì in mezzo adesso. Vada avanti e scenda alla prima fermata. *Don't stand there in the middle now. Go forward and get off at the first stop.*
- a Non stia lì: *Don't stand there* *Stia* is the *lei* command form of *stare*: *to stay* or *to stand* (Appendix 10).
- b Vada: *Go* This is the *lei* command form of *andare*: *to go* (Appendix 10).
- c scenda: *get off* This is the *lei* command form of *scendere*: *to get off*.

Alberto chiede di nuovo indicazioni. *Alberto asks the way again.*

- 31 Giri a destra qui all'angolo e prenda Borgo dei Greci. Alla terza traversa giri a sinistra e prosegua per cento metri. *Turn right here at the corner and take Borgo dei Greci. Take the third on the left and carry on for a hundred metres.*
- a giri ... prenda ... prosegua: *turn ... take ... carry on* These are all *lei* command forms.
- b Borgo dei Greci is the name of a street.
- c Alla terza traversa: *At the third road going across* Remember the word *traversa* from Note 23e.
- 32 Prima salgo sull'autobus sbagliato, poi dimentico la strada. *First I get on the wrong bus, then I forget the way.*
- a salgo: *I get on* This is the *io* form of *salire*: *to get on* in the present tense which is very irregular (Appendix 10).
- b dimentico la strada: *I forget the way* Notice that whilst *strada* literally means *street* or *road*, *dimenticare la strada* is the expression used for *forgetting the way*.
- 33 Scusi, signore, sa dirmi dove sono gli Uffizi? *Excuse me sir, can you tell me where the Uffizi is (lit. are)?*
- a sa dirmi?: *can you tell me?* (lit. *do you know how to tell me?*) This is a useful phrase to learn and remember as it is one of the commonest ways of asking someone directions in Italy.
- b dove sono gli Uffizi: *where the Uffizi is* (lit. *are*) Remember that *gli Uffizi* is plural in Italian and that we must consequently use the plural verb form *sono*.
- 34 Credo proprio di sì. Ci sto andando. Vuol venire con me? *I (really) think I do. I'm going there (myself). Would you like to come with me?*
- a Credo di sì: *I think so* Remember this expression from L12, N55.
- b Ci sto andando: *I'm going there* Remember this progressive form of the present tense from L12, N6c.
- 35 Mi basta sapere ... *It's enough for me to know ...*
 Mi basta: (lit.) *It's enough to me* Remember the verb *bastare*: *to be enough* (L3, N17a) and notice that *is* is used here with the indirect object

pronoun *mi*: *to me*. Further examples of its use in this way are **Gli bastano dieci gettoni**: *Ten telephone tokens are enough for him* and **Ci basta mangiare qualcosa**: *All we need is to eat something* (lit. *It's enough for us to eat something*).

- 36 **Prego, prego**. *Per me è più facile accompagnarla. Va bene per lei?* *Please don't mention it. It's easier for me to go with you. Is that all right for you?*
- a **Prego, prego**: *Please don't mention it*. Notice that **prego** can also be used in this type of context meaning *please don't mention it*.
- b **è più facile**: *it's easier*. To make the comparative form of most adjectives in Italian, we must use **più**: (lit.) *more* followed by the adjective we want to use; thus, *more beautiful*: **più bello**, *richer*: **più ricco**, *freer*: **più libero** etc.
- c **è più facile accompagnarla**: (lit.) *it's easier to accompany you*. Here *la*: *you* has been added to the infinitive **accompagnare**.
- d **per lei**: *for you*. Notice that like **lui**: *he*, **lei**: *you* also retains its *lei* form when it follows a preposition (Note 19c). This is also true when *lei* means *her*; thus **per lei** can mean both *for you* or *for her* according to context.
- 37 **E se è d'accordo, signorina, potremmo visitare la galleria insieme**. *And if you agree, signorina, we could visit the gallery together.*
potremmo: *we could*. This is the **noi** form of **potere** in the conditional tense. The **emmo** ending is typical of the **noi** form in the conditional, e.g. *we would take*: **prenderemmo**, *we would be*: **saremmo**, *we would say*: **diremmo** etc.

Part three: What happens

Qualcosa di diverso *Something different*

Pina doesn't know what to do and so Sara invites her and her cousin to join her family in a drive to two neighbouring villages and to go to an open air theatre with them.

Il vigile *The policeman*

A policeman gives a motorist directions for getting to piazzale Michelangelo.

Part three: New words

l'automobilista motorist
 il cugino cousin
 l'incrocio crossroad

il paese village, small town
 il piazzale square
 il programma programme, plan

il teatro theatre
 il teatro all'aperto open-air theatre
 il vigile policeman

l'attenzione attention
 la complicazione complication
 l'indicazione stradale road sign
 l'intenzione intention

noi us

diverso different

stradale road

avere intenzione di to intend to
 fare attenzione a to watch out for, to
 pay attention to
 girare to turn round

all'aperto in the open air
 indietro back
 per conto loro on their own
 vicino near

Part three: Notes

Qualcosa di diverso *Something different*

- 38 **Non so cosa fare oggi. I miei genitori escono per conto loro**. *I don't know what to do today. My parents are going out alone* (lit. *on their own account*).
- a **escono**: *they're going out*. This is the **loro** form of **uscire** in the present tense (Note 11b).
- b **per conto loro**: (lit.) *on their account*. **Per conto mio**: *on my own*, **per conto tuo**: *on your own*, **per conto nostro**: *on our own* etc. are further examples of the use of this phrase.
- 39 **Vieni con noi e porta anche tuo cugino**. *Come with us and bring your cousin too*.
- a **Vieni**: *Come*. This is the **tu** command form of **venire**: *to come* (Note 23d).
- b **con noi**: *with us*. Notice that **noi** means both *we* and *us* and does not change its form when it follows a preposition, e.g. **Noi andiamo**: *We are going* but **Giovanna viene con noi**: *Giovanna is coming with us*.
- c **porta**: *bring*. This is the **tu** command form of **portare**.
- 40 **Se per voi non è una complicazione ...** *If it's not a complication for you ...*
per voi: *for you*. Notice that **voi** also does not change its form when it follows a preposition.
- 41 **Qual è il vostro programma?** *What (lit. Which) is your programme?*
- a **Qual?**: (lit.) *Which?* **Quale**: *which* can be abbreviated to **qual** and never needs an apostrophe in front of a vowel.
- b **vostro**: *your*. Remember that **vostro**: *your* is the possessive form that corresponds to **voi**: *you*.
- 42 **Avremmo intenzione di visitare due paesi qui vicino**. *We'd like to visit a couple of villages near here*.
- a **Avremmo intenzione di**: (lit.) *We would have intention of*. **Avere intenzione di fare qualcosa**: *to intend to do something* is a useful expression to remember. **Avremmo** is the conditional tense of **avere** in the **noi** form.

- b **due paesi:** *a couple of* (lit. *two*) *villages* The word *paese* has two distinct meanings, that of *country* (as in L11, N1) and that of *small town* or *village*. Here it obviously means *village* or *small town*.
- 43 **E più tardi vorremmo andare al teatro all'aperto.** *And later we'd like to go to the open-air theatre.*
vorremmo: *we'd like* We met **vorremmo** in L8, N40a; however you can now see that it is the conditional of **volere** in the **noi** form.

Il vigile *The policeman*

- 44 A **vigile** is a person employed by the local authority to ensure generally that its rules and laws are enforced. His duties also include those performed by a British traffic-warden, i.e. he sometimes directs traffic, makes sure that parking regulations are observed and has the power to fine pedestrians and motorists on the spot if they infringe the law.
- 45 **Automobilista** *Motorist*
 This is another word ending in *ista* that can be either masculine or feminine (L10, N10b).
- 46 **Avrei bisogno di un'informazione.** *I need some information.*
 a **Avrei bisogno:** (lit.) *I would have need* This is a very polite way of saying *I need* or *I want*.
 b **un'informazione:** (lit.) *an information* Notice that both the singular and the plural form of *information* exist in Italian; **un'informazione:** *a piece of information* and **delle informazioni:** *some information*.
- 47 **È questa la strada che porta a piazzale Michelangelo?** *Is this the road that leads to piazzale Michelangelo?*
 a A **piazzale** is a wide space normally larger than a **piazza**.
 b **Piazzale Michelangelo** is situated on a hill above Florence and gives a panoramic view over the city and the river.
- 48 **Torni indietro all'incrocio e prenda la strada alla sua destra.** *Go back to the crossroads and take the road on your right.*
all'incrocio: *to the crossroads* Notice the difference between **un incrocio** and **una traversa** (Note 23e); **un incrocio** is *a crossroads* or a place where two or more roads meet, whilst **una traversa** is the word for a road that crosses another.
- 49 **Sempre dritto.** *Straight ahead* (lit. *Always straight on*).
- 50 **Posso girare la macchina qui?** *Can I turn the car round here?*
girare: *turn* Notice that **girare** can be used for *turning into a street* (N23c) and also for *turning something round*, as here.
- 51 **Sì, ma faccia attenzione al semaforo.** *Yes, but watch out for the traffic lights.*
faccia attenzione: (lit.) *make attention* The expression **fare attenzione** means *to pay attention to* or *to watch out for*. **Faccia** is the irregular **lei** command form of **fare**.

Lezione quattordici

Lesson fourteen

Andando alla posta sotto la pioggia

Going to the post office in the rain

Part one: What happens

Paolo writes to Emilia, who will be joining them in Florence at the weekend, to let her know that Antonio, the Landucci's son-in-law whom Emilia already knows, is going to offer her a job as an assistant at a sports club in Florence of which he is the manager.

Part one: New words

l'assistente assistant (m. or f.)
 il caso chance
 il direttore manager, director
 il genero son-in-law
 giugno June

affettuoso affectionate
 quattordicesimo fourteenth
 sportivo sports

interessare to interest

la pioggia rain
 la posta post office
 la riga line
 la società club
 la società sportiva sports club

da at the house of

per caso by chance

quattordici fourteen

Part one: Notes

- 1 **Andando alla posta sotto la pioggia** *Going to the post office in the rain*
sotto: (lit.) *beneath, under* Notice how *in the rain* is translated by **sotto la pioggia** in Italian.
- 2 **Firenze, 14 giugno** *Florence, 14th June*
 a In Italian, when writing a letter to a friend, it is not necessary or usual to put your address on the letter; it is more usual, as here, merely to put the town from which you are writing. The return address is often then written on the back of the envelope.
 b **14 giugno:** *14th June* Notice that when writing a date in Italian we must use the cardinal, not the ordinal number, i.e. there is no translation of *14th*, only the number **14** here.

- 3 **Carissima Emilia, solo due righe per dirti che siamo a Firenze dai Landucci e che ti aspettiamo per il fine-settimana.** *Dearest Emilia, just a couple of lines (lit. only two lines) to tell you that we are staying with the Landuccis in Florence (lit. that we are in Florence at the house of the Landuccis) and that we are expecting you for the weekend.*
- a **Carissima Emilia:** *Dearest Emilia* Just as *dear* has the double meaning of *beloved* and *expensive* in English, so too has **caro** in Italian. Here, however, Paolo does not merely use **Cara Emilia** but prefers the more affectionate **Carissima Emilia**.
- b Notice that whilst in English we use a capital letter to begin the main text of a letter, in Italian we must use a small letter; here, therefore, **solo** begins with a small **s**.
- c **due righe:** (lit.) *two lines* The singular form of **righe** is **riga**. As we have seen with other examples, the hard **g** is preserved in the plural by inserting **h** after the **g**.
- d **per dirti:** *to tell you* Remember that **mi, ti, lo, la** etc. can follow and be joined to an infinitive form and that in these cases, the final **e** of the infinitive is dropped (L12, N5a).
- e **dai Landucci:** (lit.) *at the house of the Landuccis* The word **da** can be used to mean *at the house or the shop or office* of someone, e.g. *Come to my house: Venga da me; Let's go to Luisa's: Andiamo da Luisa; I'm going to the lawyer's office: Vado dall'avvocato.* Here **da** and **i Landucci** have combined to form **dai Landucci**, the Landuccis of course being Marino's family.
- f **ti aspettiamo:** *we're expecting you* Notice once again that **aspettare** has the double meaning of *to wait for* and *to expect* according to context.
- 4 **I Landucci sono molto contenti di averti a casa loro.** *The Landuccis are very happy to have you to stay (lit. at their house).*
a casa loro: *at their house* This is the same type of expression as **a casa mia:** *at my house* (L12, N1b). Notice once again that the possessive **loro** follows the word **casa** in this phrase and that **loro:** *their* never changes its form (L10, N21c).
- 5 **Ieri, mentre parlavo di te, è arrivato il loro genero Antonio.** *Yesterday, while I was talking about you, their son-in-law Antonio arrived.*
mentre parlavo di te: *while I was talking about you* **Parlavo** is the **io** form of a past tense that we meet here for the first time, the imperfect. It is formed by removing the final **re** of the infinitive and adding **vo** in the **io** form, e.g. *I was waiting: Aspettavo, I was finishing: Finivo, I was reading: Leggevo.*
 The imperfect tense is always used in Italian where we use a past continuous form in English, e.g. *I was talking, They were waiting* etc. One of its main uses is for an incomplete action that was going on when

something else happened (as in this case). Further examples of this use are **Mentre leggevo il giornale, mia madre ha cominciato a preparare la cena:** *Whilst I was reading the paper, my mother began to get the dinner ready; Mentre aspettavo l'autobus, ho visto Giovanna:* *Whilst I was waiting for the bus, I saw Giovanna.*

- 6 **Mi ha detto che ti ha conosciuto tre anni fa, quando abitava a Milano, e mi ha chiesto se tu stavi per caso cercando un nuovo lavoro.** *He told me that he met you three years ago, when he was living in Milan, and he asked me if by (any) chance you were looking for a new job.*
- a **ti ha conosciuto:** *he met you* Remember that **conoscere** means not only *to know* a person but also *to get to know, to meet, or to meet for the first time*.
- b **quando abitava:** *when he was living* **Abitava** is the imperfect of **abitare** in the 3rd person singular form; just as the **vo** ending is characteristic of **io**, the 1st person singular, in the imperfect, so the **va** ending is characteristic of the 3rd person singular (Appendix 6f).
 The imperfect tense is also used to describe background facts or events in the past, i.e. events that happened and continued to happen over a fairly long period of time in the past. We must use the imperfect in this sentence to describe the background fact that Antonio lived in Milan for a while. Notice however that **ha conosciuto** is in the perfect tense (**passato prossimo**) because it is not a background action and only happened on one clearly defined occasion in the past.
- c **tu stavi ... cercando un nuovo lavoro:** *you were looking for a new job* The **vi** ending of **stavi** is typical of the **tu** form of the imperfect. (Appendix 6f). **Stavi** is the imperfect of **stare** in the **tu** form. *You are looking for a new job* therefore would have been translated by **Stai cercando un nuovo lavoro;** the past tense i.e. *You were looking for a new job* is therefore translated by using the imperfect of **stare** followed by **cercando**, just as in the present tense.
- 7 **Adesso lui è direttore di una società sportiva a Firenze e ti offrirebbe un posto da assistente. Ti interessa?** *Now he runs (lit. he is the manager of) a sports club in Florence and would offer you a job as (his) assistant. Are you interested (lit. Does it interest you)?*
- a **una società sportiva:** *a sports club* Although **società** here means *club*, its commercial meaning is that of a *company*.
- b **un posto da assistente:** *a job as (his) assistant* Notice the special use of **da** in this phrase.
- c **Ti interessa?:** (lit.) *Does it interest you?* *To interest someone* is **interessare** A qualcuno in Italian; thus, *It interests me* is translated by **Mi interessa** and *It interests him* by **Gli interessa** etc.
- 8 **Pensaci in questi giorni e quando verrai giù ne parleremo.** *Think about it (lit. in these days) and when you come down, we'll talk about it.*

- a **Pensaci:** *Think about it* Where pronouns like *mi, gli, le, lo, ne, ci* etc. are used with the **tu** command form of verbs, they must follow and join up with the **tu** command form just as they follow and join up with infinitives (L12, N5a). *To think ABOUT something* is **pensare A qualcosa** in Italian, e.g. *I'm thinking about having a trip to Italy:* **Penso a fare un viaggio in Italia**. But, *I'm thinking about it:* **Ci penso**. In this case, the whole phrase **fare un viaggio in Italia** is replaced by the one word **ci**. In the same way, **pensaci** is formed from **pensa:** *think* (the **tu** command form of **pensare**) and **ci:** *about it*. Remember, however, that these pronouns precede **lei** command forms, e.g. **Ci pensi, signore:** *Think about it, sir.*
- b **quando verrai giù ne parleremo:** (lit.) *when you will come down we will talk of it* In English we say *When you come down* (present tense) *we will talk about it* (future tense). In Italian however, we must use two future tenses as both actions, *come down* and *talk*, will take place in the future. A further example would be *When I arrive, I shall go straight to bed:* **Quando arriverò, andrò subito a letto.**
- 9 **Gent.ma Sig.rina Emilia Tosi Corso Venezia 24 20121 Milano**
- a Paolo is here writing Emilia's name and address on the envelope; it is not customary to write the name and address of the person you are writing to at the foot of the letter.
- b **Gent.ma Sig.rina** This is an abbreviation for **Gentilissima Signorina** and normally precedes the name of an unmarried woman on an envelope; it can either be written above the name as here, or on the same line. When addressing a married woman, one should write **Gent.ma Sig.ra**, the abbreviation for **Gentilissima Signora**, on the envelope. A man's name, however, is preceded by **Egr. Sig.**, the abbreviation for **Egregio Signore**; **egregio** literally means *distinguished, eminent*.
- c **Corso Venezia 24** **Corso Venezia** is the name of a street in Milan. Notice that the name of the street precedes the number of the house or flat when writing addresses in Italy.
- d **20121 Milano** The figures are the post code for the area in which Emilia lives; notice that in Italy they precede the name of the town.
- e Notice that throughout the address, Paolo uses no commas or full stops except for the abbreviation of **Gent.ma Sig.rina**.

Part two: What happens

Bisogna andare alla posta. *We have to go to the post office.*

Giovanna and her mother are going out to visit Antonio and Susanna and intend to call at the tobacconist's as well. Paolo asks them to post some letters and to buy him some cigars and a newspaper. A storm is forecast for later.

Brutto tempo *Bad weather*

Maria Teresa and Giovanna make sure they are suitably dressed for the wet weather. They have to borrow an umbrella.

Sale e tabacchi *Salt and tobacco*

At the tobacconist's they buy cigarettes, matches, cigars, postcards, stamps and envelopes. They ask where they can buy a newspaper.

Di ritorno *Back home*

Maria Teresa and Giovanna return home drenched. The weather was too bad for them to do all they had planned but they have posted Paolo's letters. There was some confusion caused at the post office by two men in a hurry.

Part two: New words

il cerino wax match
il corso avenue
il cotone cotton
il filtro filter
il francobollo stamp
il freddo cold
il golf sweater
l'impermeabile raincoat
il lampo lightning
l'ombrello umbrella
il sigaro cigar
il soprabito coat, light coat
lo stivale boot
il tabaccaio tobacconist
il tabacco tobacco
il temporale storm
il tuono thunder
il vestito dress

l'anticamera hall
la busta envelope
la camicetta blouse
la cartolina postcard
l'edicola newspaper kiosk
la forza force
la gonna skirt
la lana wool
la lettera letter
la pantofola slipper
la paura fear
la Posta Centrale general post office

la scarpa shoe
la scatola box
la ventina about twenty

bagnato wet
bagnato fradicio wet through
celeste light blue
centrale central
espresso express
fradicio soaked
giallo yellow
leggero light
nazionale national
nero black
normale normal
previsto forecast
raccomandato registered
sciocco silly, stupid

avere freddo to be cold
avere paura to be afraid
cercare di to try to
dispiacere to displease
fare lo sciocco to be silly
imbucare to post
mancare to be missing, to lack
mettere to put on
minacciare to threaten
passare da to drop into, to pass by
piovere to rain
prendere la pioggia to get wet
spedire to send

per forza without doubt, certainly
per piacere please
via aerea by airmail

dai! go on!
sedici sixteen

Part two: Notes

Bisogna andare alla posta. *We have to go to the post office.*

- 10 Che cosa pensavi di fare oggi? *What were you thinking of doing today?*
pensavi?: *were you thinking?* This is the imperfect of **pensare** in the **tu** form.
- 11 Pensavo di uscire con la mamma. *I was thinking of going out with mum.*
Pensavo: *I was thinking* This is the imperfect of **pensare** in the **io** form.
- 12 Allora uscite subito: più tardi è previsto un temporale. *Well then go out straight away: a storm is forecast for later on.*
uscite: *go out* This is the **voi** command form of **uscire**. With the exception of **essere** and **avere**, the **voi** command form of all verbs is identical to the present tense of the verb in the **voi** form, but with the word **voi** omitted, e.g. **Andate a Firenze!**: *Go to Florence!*, **Vendete la vostra macchina!**: *Sell your car!*, **Finite questa lezione!**: *Finish this lesson!*
- 13 Se non vi dispiace, vi do questo rapporto da spedire. *If you don't mind, I'll give you this report to send.*
- a Se non vi dispiace: *If you don't mind* We have already seen the expression **Mi dispiace**: *I'm sorry* (L7, N22). Here however, **Se non vi dispiace** literally means *If it doesn't displease you* which we express colloquially in English as *If you don't mind*.
- b vi do: *I'll give you* **Do** is the **io** form of **dare**: *to give* in the present tense. Remember that **vi** can mean both *you* and *to you*.
- c da spedire: *to send* Remember the use of **da** in this kind of phrase (L7, N40).
- 14 Sarà meglio andare alla Posta Centrale. *We'd better go* (lit. *It will be better to go*) *to the general* (lit. *central*) *post office.*
Whilst stamps can be bought at all tobacconists' shops in Italy, it is better to go to the central post office of a town for important postal business.
- 15 Raccomandato, via aerea. E imbucate anche questa lettera per Emilia, per favore. *Registered, air mail. And post this letter for Emilia too, please.*
- a Raccomandato: *Registered* **Raccomandato** is used in its feminine form in the sense of **una raccomandata**: *a registered letter.*
- b imbucate: *post* **Imbucare** is the special word for dropping a letter in the post box. **Imbucate** is the **voi** command form in the present tense.
- 16 Aggiungete i saluti, se volete. *Add your* (lit. *the*) *greetings if you want.*

- a Aggiungete: *Add* This is the **voi** command form of **aggiungere**: *to add.*
- b In Italy it is common practice for members of a family to add a couple of lines to the bottom of a letter sent to another member of the family or close friends. It is also common for a postcard to be signed by several people, all sending their individual **saluti**.
- 17 Manca il francobollo. Espresso o normale? *There's no stamp. Express or ordinary?*
- a Manca: (lit.) *is missing, is lacking*
- b Espresso: *Express* In Italy an *express letter*: **un espresso** is delivered as soon as it reaches its post office of destination.
- 18 Volevamo andare da Antonio e Susanna. Il loro bambino non stava tanto bene ieri. E pensavamo di passare anche dal tabaccaio. *We wanted to go to Antonio and Susanna's. Their baby wasn't very well yesterday. And we also thought we'd go to the tobacconist's.*
- a Volevamo: *We wanted* This is the imperfect tense of **volere**: *to want* in the **noi** form. With the exception of **essere**, the **noi** form of all verbs in the imperfect is formed by removing the **re** infinitive ending and adding the letters **vamo**. The imperfect of **volere** in the forms you know so far is therefore **volevo**: *I wanted*, **volevi**: *you wanted*, **voleva**: *he/she/it/you wanted*, **volevamo**: *we wanted*. Pay particular attention to the pronunciation of **volevamo** and notice how the stress falls on the **a** of **vamo**. In the **noi** form of the imperfect, the stress always falls in this place.
- b da Antonio e Susanna: *to Antonio and Susanna's* Notice once again the use of **da** (Note 3e).
- c non stava tanto bene: *wasn't very well* **Stava** is the imperfect of **stare** in the 3rd person singular. Remember that **stare** is used when talking about someone's state of health, e.g. **Non sto bene**: *I'm not well.*
- d pensavamo: *we thought* This is the **noi** form of **pensare** in the imperfect tense. Notice once again that the **a** of **vamo** is stressed in the recording (Note a above).
- e dal tabaccaio: *to the tobacconist's* This is another example of **da** being used to indicate *at* or *to the house or shop of* (Note 3e).
- 19 Allora prendete una scatola dei miei soliti sigari. E compratemi anche il giornale, per piacere. *Well then buy a box of my usual cigars. And buy me the paper as well, please.*
- a prendete: *buy* This is the **voi** command form of **prendere**: (lit.) *to take.* Notice how **prendere** is used here with the sense of *to buy*.
- b compratemi: *buy me* **Comprate** is the **voi** command form of **comprare**: *to buy* and it is here followed immediately by **mi**: *me*. From this you can see that if pronouns are used they must be added not only to infinitives and **tu** command forms, but also to **voi** command forms (Note 8a), e.g. **Andateci!**: *Go there!*, **Parlategli!**: *Speak to him!*, **Prendetene!**: *Take some!*

- c **per piacere:** *please* This is another expression meaning *please*; it is completely interchangeable with **per favore**.

Brutto tempo *Bad weather*

20 **Che tempo fa?** *What's the weather like?*

Notice the idiomatic use of **fare** in this expression and remember that it is used in other weather expressions like **fa caldo:** *it's hot*, **fa fresco:** *it's chilly*, **fa bel tempo:** *the weather's nice*.

21 **Il cielo è coperto e minaccia temporale.** *The sky is dark (lit. covered) and a storm is brewing (lit. threatening).*

22 **Per forza: dobbiamo spedire della roba per papà.** *We have to: we've got to send some things for father.*

- a **Per forza** means *certainly, of course, whether we want to or not* and is used when something must be done of necessity, even if it is against one's will.

- b **spedire della roba:** *send some things* Remember that **roba** is a general word meaning *stuff, matter, things* (L11, N15b).

23 **Non hai freddo tu?** *Aren't you cold?*

The expression **avere freddo:** *to be cold* is another belonging to the group of idioms like **avere fame:** *to be hungry*, **avere caldo:** *to be hot*, **avere ragione:** *to be right* etc.

24 **Sì. Penso di mettere la gonna nera di lana e la camicetta celeste con un bel golf pesante.** *Yes. I think I'll put on my black woollen skirt and light blue blouse with a nice heavy sweater.*

- a **mettere:** *put on* **Mettere** can mean both *to put* and *to put on* when it refers to articles of clothing.

- b **gonna nera di lana:** *black woollen skirt* Notice once again the use of **di** in the phrase **di lana**; remember to use **di** when saying that something is *made of* or *out of* a particular material (L10, N27c).

- c **la camicetta:** *blouse* A shirt is **una camicia** (L10, N9) but for ladies the word used is **una camicetta:** *a blouse*. Notice the *etta* ending indicating that **camicietta** is the diminutive form of **camicia** (L5, N2b).

- d **celeste:** *light blue* The word **celeste** is derived from **cielo:** *sky* and literally means *sky-blue*. This is the third word we have seen for the colour *blue*, the others being **azzurro**, which can be used for any shade of *light blue*, and **blu** which generally means a *dark blue*.

- e **golf:** *sweater* **Un golf** can be any knitted garment such as a *sweater, pullover, jumper, cardigan* and is the general word used to indicate any one of these garments.

25 **Io ho questo vestito di cotone: è un po' leggero. Mi dai il soprabito giallo e le scarpe da pioggia?** *I'm wearing (lit. I have) this cotton dress: It's rather light. Will you give me my (lit. the) yellow coat and my (lit. the) rain shoes?*

- a **vestito di cotone:** *cotton dress* Notice once again how **di** is used to indicate that the dress is *made out of* cotton (Note 24b).

- b **dai:** *you give* This is the **tu** form of **dare** in the present tense.

- c **le scarpe da pioggia:** *rain shoes* **Scarpe da pioggia** really has the meaning of *shoes for the rain*.

26 **Eccoli.** *Here they are.*

The **li** ending of **eccoli** refers back to **il soprabito giallo** (a masculine singular object) and **le scarpe da pioggia** (feminine plural objects). Because there is a mixture of both masculine and feminine objects, we must use the masculine plural **li**.

27 **Chiedilo alla mamma di Marino.** *Ask Marino's mother for it.*

Chiedilo: *Ask for it* Remember that *to ask someone for something* is **chiedere qualcosa A qualcuno** (L6, N37a). **Chiedi** is the **tu** command form of **chiedere** and **lo:** *it* refers back to **l'ombrello** of the previous sentence; the two words here join together to make one. Maria Teresa says **ALLA mamma di Marino** because Marino's mother is whom she must ask.

28 **Lo portavo quando avevo sedici anni.** *I used to wear it when I was sixteen.*

- a **Lo portavo:** *I used to wear it* **Portavo** is the imperfect tense of **portare** in the **io** form. Giovanna used the imperfect here because a further use of the imperfect is for events that happened regularly or habitually in the past, e.g. *Ten years ago, I used to read a lot: Dieci anni fa, leggevo molto; I used to go to school every day: Andavo a scuola ogni giorno.* Here Giovanna uses the imperfect **portavo** because she *used to wear* the raincoat regularly and habitually when she was sixteen. This completes the main uses of the imperfect tense (Notes 5, 6b).

- b **quando avevo sedici anni:** *when I was sixteen* **Avevo** is the **io** form of **avere** in the imperfect tense. Giovanna uses the imperfect tense because she is talking about the background fact of when she was sixteen, i.e. she was not sixteen just on one clearly defined occasion in the past, but continued to be sixteen for a fairly long period of time (Note 6b).

29 **Ma dai! Non fare la sciocca. Con gli stivali starà benissimo, e almeno non prendi la pioggia.** *Go on! Don't be silly. It'll go very well with boots, and at least you won't get wet.*

- a **Ma dai!:** *Go on!* **Dai** is a familiar expression of encouragement or mild reproach.

- b **Non fare la sciocca:** *Don't be silly.* This expression is similar to that of **Alberto fa il turista:** *Alberto plays the tourist* (L10, N10a) and **Così faccio il custode:** *So I work as a warder* (L13, N7b). **Sciocco** means *foolish* or *silly*, so **fare lo sciocco** (or **la sciocca** in the feminine form) means *to play the fool* or *to be silly*.

- c **stivali:** *boots* Notice the difference between **stivali:** *boots* and **scarponi** (L8, N38) which meant *ski boots*.

- d **starà benissimo: it'll go very well** Notice that this is another use of the verb **stare**. Someone wishing to pay her friend a compliment could say **Stai bene con quel vestito: You look good in that dress, That dress suits you.** Or, **Il verde non sta bene con il rosso: Green doesn't go well with red.**
- e **non prendi la pioggia: you won't get wet (lit. you don't take the rain)** Notice this useful idiomatic expression.

Sale e tabacchi *Salt and tobacco*

- 30 Here Maria Teresa and Giovanna go into a tobacconist's shop. In Italy, the sale of salt and tobacco is a State monopoly and both can only be purchased at a **tabaccheria: tobacconist's shop** which also sells postage stamps; the tobacconist is also authorised to sell **carta da bollo** which is special lined paper about the size of a foolscap sheet and which is taxed by the State and carries its official stamp. This paper is used for official documents or State business, e.g. when making an application for a job in the civil service. In addition, a tobacconist usually sells postcards, stationery, sweets, cigarette lighters, matches and other useful common objects.
- 31 **Vorremmo due pacchetti di nazionali con filtro, due scatole di cerini, dei sigari e ... quante cartoline, Giovanna? We'd like two packets of nationals with filter tips, two boxes of matches, some cigars and ... how many postcards, Giovanna?**
- a **nazionali: nationals** These are cigarettes that are manufactured in Italy by the State. The tobacco used is generally of poorer quality than that of the imported cigarettes and the cigarettes are consequently a little cheaper than the foreign brands.
- b **cerini: matches** These are very small matches made of **cera: wax**.
- 32 **E ci dia anche i francobolli, per favore. And give us the stamps too, please.**
dia: give This is the **lei** command form of **dare**. Remember that with the **lei** command form, pronouns precede the verb, but that with the **tu** and **voi** command forms, the pronoun follows the verb, e.g. **Guardala!: Look at her! (tu command form); Guardatela!: Look at her! (voi command form); La guardi!: Look at her! (lei command form).** See Note 8a.
 The **noi** command form also follows the same rule as the **tu** and **voi** command forms; thus **Guardiamola!: Let's look at her!**
- 33 **Solo saluti? Only greetings?**
 In Italy there are two rates for the postage of postcards. If not more than five words of **saluti: greetings** are written on the card, it travels at a cheap rate; more than five words cost more.
- 34 **Prendiamo anche una ventina di buste. We'll have about twenty envelopes too.**

una ventina: about twenty **Ventina** is derived from **venti: twenty**. The **ina** ending can be added to most multiples of ten to mean *about* that number, e.g. **una trentina: about thirty, una quarantina: about forty**. In addition there is also **una decina: about ten** (notice that the **i** of **dieci** is dropped), **una quindicina: about fifteen** and **una dozzina: about twelve, a dozen**.

- 35 **Nell'edicola sul corso, signorina. At the newspaper kiosk in the avenue, miss.**
- a **edicola: newspaper kiosk** **Edicole** selling only newspapers, magazines and paperbacks can be found not only at airports and railway stations but also in the middle of the broad pavements lining some Italian streets.
- b **corso: avenue** There are many names for *street* or *road* in Italian. A **corso** is normally a wide, fairly modern street outside the old centre of most Italian towns (Note 9c).

Di ritorno *Back home*

- 36 **Sì, siamo bagnate fradicie. Yes, we're wet through.**
bagnate fradicie: wet through **Bagnato** literally means *wet* whilst **fradicio** means *soaked*; the two words used together therefore mean *wet through* or *soaked to the skin*.
- 37 **Non avevate l'ombrello? Didn't you have the umbrella?**
Non avevate?: Didn't you have? This is the imperfect of **avere** in the **voi** form. Listen carefully to the recording and notice that the stress falls on the **a** of **vate**, just as in the **noi** form the stress falls on the **a** of **vamo** (Notes 18a and d). The **vate** ending is typical of the **voi** form in the imperfect tense. Notice that Paolo uses the imperfect tense here because he is referring to the background state of Giovanna and Maria Teresa not having an umbrella (Note 6b).
- 38 **Sì, ma guarda come piove. Yes, but look how it's raining.**
piove: it's raining The verb **piovere: to rain** of course exists only in the infinitive and 3rd person singular forms.
- 39 **Poverette! Venite a prendere un caffè. Poor things! Come and have a coffee.**
- a **Poverette!: Poor things!** Remember this exclamation (L7, N38); when speaking of a man you would say **poveretto!**
- b **Venite: Come** This is the **voi** command form of **venire**.
- 40 **No, pioveva troppo, e la mamma aveva paura dei tuoni e dei lampi. No, it was raining too hard and mother was afraid of the thunder and the lightning.**
- a **pioveva: it was raining** This is the imperfect of **piovere: to rain**. Giovanna uses the imperfect tense here because it is a state of affairs that was continuing for some time and was happening while the main action (**Avete fatto tutto?**) was taking place (Notes 5 and 6b).
- b **aveva paura: was afraid (lit. had fear)** This is another idiomatic expression using the verb **avere** (Note 23).

- c aveva paura dei tuoni e dei lampi: *was afraid of the thunder and the lightning*. Il tuono and il lampo can both be used in the singular as well as the plural form, **tuono** meaning a *clap of thunder* and **lampo** meaning a *flash of lightning*.
- 41 Mentre lo spedivo, c'erano due signori che avevano fretta e cercavano di passare davanti agli altri. L'impiegato non capiva più niente. *While I was sending it, there were two men who were in a hurry and trying to get in front of the others. The clerk was getting into a terrible mess (lit. didn't understand anything any more).*
- a spedivo: *I was sending* This is the imperfect of the ire verb **spedire** in the io form.
- b c'erano: *there were* This is the imperfect of **essere** in the 3rd person plural. Notice that **essere** forms its imperfect tense differently from other verbs:
- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| ero: <i>I was</i> | eravamo: <i>we were</i> |
| eri: <i>you were</i> | eravate: <i>you were</i> |
| era: <i>he/she/it was, you were</i> | erano: <i>they were</i> |
- Listen carefully and notice that the stress falls on the **e** of **erano**, whilst with **eravamo** and **eravate** the stress falls of course on the **a** of **vamo** and the **a** of **vate** respectively.
- c che avevano fretta: *who were in a hurry* Notice the expression **avere fretta**: *to be in a hurry* which together with **avere paura** and **avere freddo** is another example of the idiomatic usage of **avere** (Notes 23 and 40b). Notice too that the stress falls on the **e** of **avevano** and not at the end of the word. In the imperfect tense, only the **noi** and **voi** forms put the stress towards the end of the word; this is true of all **noi** and **voi** verb forms in the imperfect tense.
- d cercavano di: *were trying to* When **cercare** is followed by a noun it means *to look for*, e.g. **Cerco la mia macchina**: *I'm looking for my car*. However, when it is followed by **di** and another verb, it means *to try to*, e.g. **Cerco di capire l'italiano**: *I'm trying to understand Italian*.
- e non capiva: *did not understand* This is the imperfect of the ire verb **capire** in the 3rd person singular form.
- 42 Datemi la ricevuta, per piacere. *Give me the receipt, please.*
Datemi: *Give me* This is **date**, the **voi** command form of **dare**: *to give* followed by **mi**: *me*.
- 43 Prendila dalla mia borsa in anticamera, Giovanna. E portami anche un paio di pantofole, per favore. *Get it from my bag in the hall, Giovanna. And bring me a pair of slippers too, please.*
- a Prendila: (lit.) *Take it* This is the **tu** command form of **prendere** followed by **la** referring back to **la ricevuta**.
- b portami: *bring me* This is the **tu** command form of **portare** followed by **mi**: *me*.

Part three: What happens

In un portone *In a doorway*

Giovanni and Cristina shelter from the storm until a taxi comes along.

Alla Posta Centrale *At the general post office*

Aldo sends a registered parcel by airmail.

Part three: New words

il portone doorway
il tempaccio bad weather

sembrare to seem
d'inverno in winter

contenere to contain

Part three: Notes

In un portone *In a doorway*44 In un portone *In a doorway*

Portone is the word used for the *main door* at the entrance to a block of flats, a courtyard or a large public building and is derived from **porta**: *door*. Just as the suffix **etto** or **etta** can be added to an Italian word to indicate that it is small (e.g. **villetta**: *small villa*, **scarpetta**: *small shoe*), so **one** can be added to a word to make the object large or heavy, e.g. **una macchina**: *a car* but **un macchinone**: *a large car*; **una scarpa**: *a shoe* but **uno scarpone**: *a large, heavy shoe or boot* (Note 29c and L8, N38); **una porta**: *a door* but **un portone**: *a large door or gateway*. As you can see from these examples, adding **one** also has the effect of changing feminine words to masculine ones. Furthermore, in the cases of **scarpone** and **portone** and several other words ending in **one**, the original meaning has been lost; **scarpone** is now used only for a special walking or skiing boot whilst **portone** has acquired the special meaning of *gateway or doorway*.

45 Che tempaccio! Sembra di essere d'inverno. *What awful weather! It's like winter.*

- a tempaccio: *awful weather* **Tempaccio** derives from **tempo**: *weather*. The **accio** ending on the word is used to denote something that is bad, e.g. **un ragazzo**: *a boy* but **un ragazaccio**: *a bad boy*; **una vita**: *a life* but **una vitaccia**: *a bad life*. Notice that masculine words tend to remain masculine and that feminine words tend to remain feminine when the suffix **accio** or **accia** is added.

- b **Sembra di essere d'inverno.**: (lit.) *It seems to be in winter.* Notice the idiomatic construction **sembra**: *it seems* which you can also see used in the following sentences. **Gli sembra di capire l'italiano**: (lit.) *It seems to him to understand Italian, He thinks he understands Italian.* **Mi sembra di conoscerlo**: (lit.) *It seems to me to know him, I think I know him.*
- c **d'inverno**: *in winter* This is a useful phrase to remember.
- 46 **Volevo prenderlo prima di uscire.** *I wanted to get it before coming out.* **prima di uscire**: *before coming out* Notice that we use **prima di** followed by the infinitive of a verb to translate *before doing something* in English.
- 47 **Ce la fai ad attraversare la strada?** *Can you manage to get across the street?*
Remember the expression **Ce la fai a?**: *Can you manage to?* (L12, N32b). Notice too how **a** becomes **ad** in front of another vowel.
- 48 **Chiamalo!** *Call it!*
This is the **tu** command form of **chiamare** followed by **lo** referring back to **un taxi**.

Alla Posta Centrale *At the general post office*

- 49 **Che cosa contiene?** *What does it contain?*
contiene: *it contains* The infinitive of this verb is **contenere** and it follows a similar pattern to **venire** in the present tense (Appendix 10).

Lezione quindici

Lesson fifteen

Spettacoli a Roma

Shows in Rome

Part one: What happens

Maria Teresa, Paolo and Alberto have now come to Rome and are staying with Signora Guarini, Maria Teresa's mother. The porter of the house in which Maria Teresa's mother lives talks about the arrival of the family from Florence. She says that Signora Guarini would have preferred a fortnight at the seaside leaving the flat to her relatives. The porter doesn't know where she will put them all. Alberto's friends arrive.

Part one: New words

il cinema cinema
il concerto concert
il nipote grandson, grandchild
lo spettacolo show

povero poor
quindicesimo fifteenth

ospitare to accommodate
stare per to be about to, to be on the point of

la nipote granddaughter, grandchild
la portinaia porter, caretaker
la quindicina about fifteen

abbastanza enough

Part one: Notes

- Spettacoli a Roma** *Shows in Rome*
spettacoli: *shows* The word **spettacolo** can be used for any kind of dramatic spectacle at the theatre, the opera or the cinema.
- La portinaia** *The porter, The caretaker*
La portinaia is the woman who sits at the entrance to a block of flats, watching over the comings and goings, making sure no-one unauthorised enters, receiving parcels for the tenants, answering queries, locking the **portone** at night (L14, N44) and opening it in the morning, keeping the entrance clean and tidy and generally looking after the building. She usually lives on the ground floor with her family; her husband often goes out to work while she stays at home looking after the premises. A man (**il portinaio**) sometimes, but less commonly, does the job; the quarters overlooking the entrance hall where the caretaker is usually installed is called **la portineria**.
- Sono arrivati la figlia, il genero, il nipote.** *Her daughter, her son-in-law and her grandson have arrived.*
il nipote: *grandson* The word **nipote** can be either masculine or feminine according to whether a *grandson* or a *granddaughter* is intended. According to context, it can also mean *nephew* or *niece*.
- E sta per arrivare anche la nipote più grande che è rimasta a Firenze dal fidanzato una settimana in più.** *And her elder grandchild (lit. the bigger grandchild) who stayed at her fiancé's in Florence for an extra week is about to arrive too.*
a **sta per arrivare**: *is about to arrive* The expression **stare per fare qualcosa** is the only way of saying *to be about to do something*, e.g. **Sto per uscire**: *I'm about to go out, I'm on the point of going out*; **Stiamo per arrivare**: *We're about to arrive, We're on the point of arriving etc.*
b **la nipote**: *grandchild* Here **nipote** refers to Giovanna so it is **la** and not **il nipote**.

- c **che è rimasta:** *who stayed* **Rimasto** is the past participle of **rimanere:** *to stay, to remain* (L7, N3). Because **rimanere** forms its perfect tense with the verb **essere**, the past participle **rimasto** here becomes **rimasta** to agree with **Giovanna**.
- d **dal fidanzato:** *at her fiancé's* Remember that **da** can mean *at the house of* (L14, N3e).
- e **una settimana in più:** (lit.) *a week more* Notice that the words in **più** are added to this expression to mean *more*.
- 5 **Non so dove la metteranno: l'appartamento non è abbastanza grande per ospitare tanta gente così!** *I don't know where they'll put her: the flat isn't large enough to accommodate as many people as that!*
- a **la metteranno:** *they will put her* Remember that the *they* future form ends with the letters **anno** (L11, N8c).
- b **abbastanza grande per:** *big enough to* We have already met the word **abbastanza** with the meaning *quite* (L11, N30). However, when it is used with a negative verb or when it is followed by something other than just an adjective, it is translated in English as *enough*, e.g. **Questa macchina è abbastanza grande:** *This car is quite big* but **Questa macchina non è abbastanza grande:** *This car is not big enough* and **Questa macchina non è abbastanza grande per me:** *This car is not big enough for me*.
- c **tanta gente così!:** *as many people as that!* Notice the use of **così** in this phrase meaning *like that*.
- 6 **Lei avrebbe preferito lasciare la casa ai parenti e andare al mare per una quindicina di giorni.** *She would have preferred to leave the house to her relatives and go to the sea-side for about a fortnight.*
- a **avrebbe preferito:** *would have preferred* This is an example of the perfect conditional tense which is formed in Italian in exactly the same way as it is formed in English, i.e. by using the conditional form of *have* (here **avrebbe**) and the past participle of the verb (here *preferred*: **preferito**). Further examples are **Avrei parlato:** *I would have spoken*, **Avremmo fatto:** *We would have done*, **Avrebbero venduto la casa:** *They would have sold the house*.
- b **una quindicina di giorni:** *about a fortnight* Remember that Italians tend to speak of **quindici giorni** where in English we use the expression *a fortnight* (L6, N43). Remember too that **una quindicina** means *about* or *approximately fifteen* (L14, N34).
- 7 **Ma voleva stare un po' con sua figlia, e io la capisco.** *But she wanted to be with her daughter for a while and I (can) understand her.*
- a **voleva:** *she wanted* This is the imperfect of **volere** in the 3rd person singular form (L14, N6b).
- b **stare un po':** (lit.) *stay a little* Remember that **stare** means both *to stay* and *to be*.

- 8 **Che cos'è questo va e vieni?** *What's this coming and going?*
questo va e vieni: *this coming and going* Notice the idiomatic usage of **va e vieni**.
- 9 **La signora mi ha detto che stasera vanno tutti fuori a teatro o al cinema o al concerto.** *Mrs. Guarini told me that this evening they're all going out to the theatre or the cinema or to a concert.*
- a **La signora:** *Mrs. Guarini* Here **la signora** must refer to Maria Teresa's mother, Mrs. Guarini.
- b **vanno ... a teatro:** *they're going ... to the theatre* The expression **andare a teatro** means *to go to the theatre* in general, not to one specific theatre. It is possible to say **andare AL teatro** in the same way that one can say **andare AL cinema** and **andare AL concerto**, but **andare A teatro** is more common.

Part two: What happens

Si combina di andare al cinema. *Arranging to go to the cinema*

Alberto lets his friends in and there is some discussion as to where they should go. Luigi doesn't fancy going to the cinema and appears to favour a disco-thèque or some jazz. However, he gives way to the others' preference.

Noi invece andiamo all'opera. *We're going to the opera.*

Paolo and Maria Teresa decide to go to the open air opera. Maria Teresa asks Paolo to ring Giovanna in Florence although by now she should be on her way to Rome.

Alle Terme di Caracalla *At the Caracalla Baths*

It is a fine, clear night and Paolo and Maria Teresa arrive just in time for the start of the opera.

Tornando a casa *Coming back home*

Paolo and Maria Teresa have enjoyed the opera very much. It has turned cold and looks like rain as they near home. Alberto is not yet back having probably gone to a pizzeria after the cinema. They find Giovanna fast asleep in an arm-chair fully dressed.

Part two: New words

l'ascensore lift
 l'atto act
 l'attore actor

il campanello bell
 il destino destiny
 il favore favour

il film film
 il giallo detective story
 il jazz jazz
 il miracolo miracle
 il peccato shame
 lo scialle shawl

la discoteca discothèque
 la fatica effort
 la fila row
 la forma form
 la giacca jacket
 la luna moon
 la musica music
 l'opera opera
 l'orchestra orchestra
 la pazienza patience
 la pizzeria pizza restaurant
 la poltrona armchair
 la scala step, stair
 la serata evening
 le terme (pl.) spa, hot springs
 la trama plot

abbronzato sun-tanned

addormentato asleep
 calmo calm
 fresco cool, chilly
 qualunque any, whatever
 tragico tragic
 tranquillo calm
 zitto quiet

adorare to adore
 attaccare to begin
 combinare to arrange,
 to organise
 dare un film to show a film
 essere di troppo to be in the way
 fare in tempo to be in time
 immaginare to imagine
 piangere to cry
 salutare to say goodbye

improvvisamente unexpectedly,
 suddenly
 male bad, badly
 mica at all
 piano quietly

Part two: Notes

Si combina di andare al cinema. *Arranging to go to the cinema*

- 10 **Si combina di andare al cinema.** (lit.) *One arranges to go to the cinema.*
Si combina: *One arranges* Remember this impersonal use of **si** (L8, N20). Remember too that **combinare** means *to organise, to bring about, to arrange* (L8, N37c).
- 11 **Va' ad aprire e fa' attenzione allo scalino.** *Go and open (the door) and watch out for the step.*
- a **Va':** *Go* This is the **tu** command form of **andare**. It is short for **vai** which is also sometimes used. Notice that it does not follow the normal pattern of **are** verbs for forming the **tu** command form (L13, N21b) but that like **ere** and **ire** verbs, it takes its **tu** command form from the **tu** form of the present tense. Do not forget the apostrophe when you write **va'**.
- b **Va' ad aprire:** (lit.) *Go to open* Notice that **a** becomes **ad** here in front of the vowel at the beginning of **aprire**.
- c **fa' attenzione:** *watch out for* **Fa'** is the **tu** command form of **fare** and is short for **fai** which is also used. Notice that like **va'** it does not follow the usual pattern of **are** verbs for forming the **tu** command form, but takes its **tu** command form from the present tense.

- 12 **Dovrei saperlo ormai.** *I should know it by now.*
Dovrei: *I should, I ought to* **Dovrei** is the conditional of **dovere** in the **io** form.
- 13 **Allora, che cosa danno al cinema?** *Well then, what's on at the cinema?*
che cosa danno?: *what's on?* (lit. *what are they giving?*) **Danno** is the **loro** form of **dare:** *to give* in the present tense; notice how it is used idiomatically here.
- 14 **Vecchi film con vecchi attori. Roba degli anni cinquanta.** *Old films with old actors. Stuff from the 'fifties.*
- a **vecchi film:** *old films* Notice that the masculine plural form of **vecchio** is **vecchi**.
- b **film:** *films* Like most Italian nouns ending with a consonant, **film** does not alter its form in the plural.
- c **Roba degli anni cinquanta:** *Stuff from the 'fifties.* Remember the word **roba** meaning *stuff* or *things* (L11, N15b).
- d **degli anni cinquanta:** *from the 'fifties* Luigi is here referring to the *nineteen-fifties*. The *'sixties* would be translated as **gli anni sessanta**, the *'seventies* as **gli anni settanta** etc.
- 15 **Da' qui il giornale. Questo film qui in piazza Barberini non è mica male.** *Let me see the paper* (lit. *Give here the paper*). *This film (here) in piazza Barberini isn't at all bad.*
- a **Da':** *Give* This is the **tu** command form of **dare:** *to give*; it is short for **dai** which is also used. Notice that it follows the same pattern as **va'** and **fa'** (Notes 11b and c).
- b **mica:** *at all* This is a very useful word to learn.
- c **mica male:** *not at all bad* This is a very colloquial expression. Whilst **male** literally means *badly* rather than **bad**, it is used very frequently in colloquial expressions of this type.
- 16 **Se ti piacciono i gialli.** *If you like detective stories.*
- a **ti piacciono:** *you like* Remember that with a plural subject, **piace** becomes **piacciono** (L6, N18b).
- b **i gialli:** *detective stories* **Un giallo** is the common colloquial name for a *detective* or *police film* or *story*.
- 17 **Luigi, di' la verità: non ne hai voglia.** *Luigi, tell the truth: you don't feel like it.*
- a **di':** *tell* (lit. *say*) This is the **tu** command form of **dire:** *to say* (Appendix 10).
- b **non ne hai voglia:** *you don't feel like it* Remember the expression **avere voglia:** *to want to, to fancy* or *to feel like* (L13, N16a).
- 18 **L'avrei immaginato. Stiamo per decidere una cosa, e tu ne tiri fuori un'altra. Vacci tu alla discoteca!** *I thought so* (lit. *I would have imagined it*). *We're about to decide on one thing and you start talking about another* (lit. *pull out another from it*). *You go to the discothèque.*

- a **L'avrei immaginato:** (lit.) *I would have imagined it* Remember that this is the perfect conditional tense (Note 6a).
 - b **Stiamo per decidere:** *We're about to decide* This is another example of the expression **stare per:** *to be on the point of* (Note 4a).
 - c **tu ne tiri fuori un'altra:** (lit.) *you pull out another from it* This is a very colloquial phrase; Francesca is obviously annoyed with Luigi.
 - d **Vacci tu alla discoteca!:** *You go to the discothèque!* **Vacci** is **va'**: **go** and **ci:** *there* put together. In this case, the **c** of **ci** is doubled and the one word **vacci** formed; this running together of two words is very common with the shortened **tu** command forms (e.g. **da'**, **fa'**, **di'**, **va'**). Because Francesca is angry, she emphasises *you go* by saying **vacci tu**; with a normal **tu** command, the actual word **tu** does not appear as it does here.
- 19 **No, no, sta' calma. Facevo per dire. Andiamo dove volete voi.** *No, no, calm down (lit. keep calm). I was only saying that. We'll go where you (two) want to go.*
- a **sta' calma:** *calm down* **Sta'** is the **tu** command form of **stare**.
 - b **facevo:** (lit.) *I was doing* **Facevo** is the imperfect of **fare** in the **io** form. Just as **facendo:** *doing*, the gerund of **fare**, is formed from the Latin infinitive **facere** (L12, N28b), so too is the imperfect form of **fare** (Appendix 10).
 - c **facevo per dire:** *I was just saying that* This is a useful idiom to learn. Luigi uses it here because he is teasing Francesca by making her think that he wants to do something different.
 - d **Andiamo dove volete voi:** *We'll go where you (two) want to go.* Luigi emphasises *you* by using the word **voi** at the end of the sentence; by using **voi** he also indicates that he is referring to both Alberto and Francesca.

Noi invece andiamo all'opera. *We're going to the opera.*

- 20 **Noi invece andiamo all'opera.** (lit.) *We instead are going to the opera.*
invece: (lit.) *instead* Notice how **invece** is used in Italian to contrast two different things or actions. In English we would say *You're going to the cinema but we're going to the opera*, emphasising *You're* and *we're* strongly in our speech. In Italian, the translation would be **Voi andate al cinema, noi invece andiamo all'opera**; the emphasis showing the difference between two things is achieved with the word **invece** and the use of **voi** and **noi** which are normally omitted.
- 21 **Sarei andata volentieri anch'io a vedere quel vecchio film.** *I would like to have gone to see that old film too* (lit. *I would have gone willingly I too ...*).
sarei andata: *I would have gone* This is the perfect conditional of

andare; it follows exactly the same pattern as **avrebbe preferito** (Note 6a) and **l'avrei immaginato** (Note 18a) except that the conditional of **essere** is used instead of that of **avere** because **andare** uses **essere** to help form its perfect tense (**passato prossimo**) and not **avere**. Thus, *I would have spoken:* **Avrei parlato** but *I would have gone:* **Sarei andato**; *We would have spoken:* **Avremmo parlato** but *We would have gone:* **Saremmo andati**. Remember that the past participle of **andare** and other verbs that go with **essere** in the perfect tense must agree with the person who is doing the action. In this case, **andata** agrees with the feminine singular Maria Teresa.

- 22 **Saresti stata di troppo.** *You would have been in the way* (lit. *too much*).
- a **Saresti stata:** *You would have been* Remembering that **stato** is the past participle of **essere**, we can see that **saresti stata** is the perfect conditional of **essere** in the **tu** form. Remember too that **essere** is another of those verbs that goes with **essere** in the perfect tense. Thus **Sono stato:** *I have been* but **Sarei stato:** *I would have been* (Note 21).
 - b **di troppo:** *in the way* (lit. *too much*), *superfluous*
- 23 **No, facciamo ancora in tempo. Di' alla nonna se vuol venire.** *No, we've still got enough time. Ask (lit. Say to) granny if she wants to come.*
- a **facciamo ancora in tempo:** *we've still got enough time* The expression **fare in tempo** means both *to be in time* to do something or *to have enough time* to do something.
 - b **Di':** (lit.) *Say* Remember that this is the **tu** command form of **dire** (Note 17a). As well as meaning *to say*, **dire** can also mean *to tell*, *to order to* and *to ask*.
- 24 **Lo spettacolo è all'aperto e fa troppo fresco per lei.** *The show's in the open and it's too chilly for her.*
- a **Lo spettacolo:** *The show* (Note 1)
 - b **fa troppo fresco:** *it's too chilly* Remember to use the verb **fare** with expressions of weather (L5, N7c). Notice that as well as meaning *fresh*, **fresco** also means *cool* or *chilly* and that **fresco** is less cold than **freddo**.
- 25 **Allora va' a salutarla e dille che non staremo via molto.** *Well then go and say goodbye to her and tell her that we won't be away long.*
- a **va' a salutarla:** *go and say goodbye to her* The verb **salutare** here means *to say goodbye*; it can however also mean *to say hello*.
 - b **dille:** *tell her* We have already seen that **di'** is the **tu** command form of **dire**. Here **dì:** *say* and **le:** *to her* have been run together to form **dille** in the same way as **va'** and **ci** were run together to form **vacci** (Note 18d).
 - c **non staremo via:** *we won't stay away* **Staremo** is the future of **stare** in the **noi** form.
 - d **molto:** *long* Here **molto** stands for **molto tempo:** *a long time*.

- 26 Tu fammi un favore intanto. Giovanna sta per partire da Firenze. Dalle una telefonata. *While I'm doing that do me a favour (lit. You do me a favour in the meantime). Giovanna's about to leave (from) Florence. Give her a call.*
- a **fammi un favore:** *do me a favour* Here **fa'**: *do* and **mi**: *me* have been run together to form **fammi**. Notice that in all the examples of this that we have seen so far, the middle consonant has been doubled (Note 25b).
- b **Giovanna sta per partire:** *Giovanna's about to leave* Notice once again this special idiom using the verb **stare** (Notes 4a and 18b).
- c **Dalle una telefonata:** *Give her a telephone call* **Dalle** is formed from **da'**: *give* (the **tu** command form) and **le**: *to her*. As with **fammi** and **dille** (Note a above) the middle consonant is doubled when the two words are joined together.
- 27 **Ha detto che avrebbe preso il treno delle sette. Non ci sarà più a casa.** *She said that she would catch (lit. she would have caught) the seven o'clock train (the train of seven o'clock). She won't be at home any more.*
- a **Ha detto che avrebbe preso:** (lit.) *She said that she would have caught* In English we can follow a past tense with a present conditional tense, e.g. *She said (past tense) that she would catch (present conditional) the train*. In Italian however, the conditional tense following and depending on a past tense must be a perfect conditional, e.g. **Ha detto che** (past tense) **avrebbe preso** (past conditional) **il treno**. Further examples are **Giovanni ha detto che avrebbe comprato questa casa:** *Giovanni said that he would buy this house*; **Paolo pensava che avrebbero capito:** *Paolo thought that they would understand*; **Ha detto che sarebbe venuta:** *She said that she would come*.
- b **il treno delle sette:** *the seven o'clock train* Notice how this phrase is expressed in Italian.
- c **Non ci sarà più a casa:** *She won't be at home any more.* Paolo could just as easily have said **Non sarà più a casa** omitting **ci**; here however he puts it in for emphasis even though it is not essential to the meaning of the sentence.
- 28 **Sii gentile. Prova lo stesso.** (lit.) *Be kind. Try all the same.*
Sii: *Be* This is the irregular **tu** command form of **essere**.

Alle Terme di Caracalla *At the Caracalla Baths*

- 29 The Caracalla Baths were built in 206 A.D. and could hold 1,600 people. The ruins of the building over the baths are now used in summer for open-air opera performances. The word **terme** by itself means *spa*, or *hot springs* and is often used after the name of Italian towns that are also spas.

- 30 **Ce l'abbiamo fatta per miracolo.** *We've made it by a miracle.*
Ce l'abbiamo fatta: *We've made it* Remember the expression **farcela:** *to manage* (L12, N32b). In the way it is used here, the past participle **fatta** is in the feminine singular form because it is agreeing with **l'** preceding it which of course stands for **la**.
- 31 **Peccato!** *What a shame!*
Peccato is used here as the shortened version of **Che peccato!:** *What a shame!* (L2, N41a).
- 32 **Abbi pazienza. Per andare nelle prime file non avremmo dovuto comprare i biglietti all'ultimo momento.** *Be patient (lit. Have patience). To get in the front (lit. first) rows, we shouldn't have bought the tickets at the last moment.*
- a **Abbi:** (lit.) *Have* This is the irregular **tu** command form of **avere**.
- b **non avremmo dovuto:** *we shouldn't have* This is the past conditional of **dovere:** *to have to*.
- 33 **È una bella serata.** *It's a lovely evening.*
serata: *evening* Just as **giorno** and **giornata** both mean *day* (L12, N2b), so **sera** and **serata** both mean *evening*; **serata**, however, is used for time spent doing something, e.g. **Che bella sera!:** *What a lovely evening!* (i.e. the weather is fine and it is not raining) but **Che bella serata!:** *What a lovely evening out!* (i.e. I enjoyed my evening out).
- 34 **Sta' zitta ora. L'orchestra sta per attaccare.** *Be quiet now. The orchestra's about to begin.*
- a **Sta' zitta:** *Be quiet* Remember that **sta'** is the **tu** command form of **stare** (Note 19a).
- b **sta per attaccare:** *is about to begin* We have already met the verb **attaccare** in the expression **attaccare bottone** (L9, N26b). Its most usual translations in English are *to attach, to connect, to switch on, to start*.
- 35 **Dammi il programma.** *Give me the programme.*
Dammi: *Give me* This is the **tu** command form **da'** and **mi** joined together to form one word; notice once again that the middle consonant (here **m**) is doubled (Notes 26a and c).
- 36 **Fa' piano.** *Be as quiet as you can (lit. Do quietly).*
 Notice the useful expression **fare piano:** *to do something quietly*.

Tornando a casa *Coming back home*

- 37 **Avrei dovuto portare uno scialle.** *I should have brought a shawl.*
Avrei dovuto portare: *I should have brought* Once again this is the past conditional of **dovere**, here in the **io** form (Note 32b).
- 38 **Il tempo è cambiato improvvisamente. Sta per piovere.** *The weather has changed unexpectedly. It's about to rain.*

- a Il tempo è cambiato: *The weather has changed* When the verb *cambiare* is followed by a direct object, it makes its perfect tense (**passato prossimo**) with *avere*, e.g. **Ho cambiato la gomma**: *I have changed the tyre*. However, when *cambiare* is not followed by a direct object, it makes its perfect tense with *essere* as here.
- b Sta per piovere: *It's about to rain*. Notice once more **sta per**: *it's about to*.
- 39 Ti è piaciuto lo spettacolo? *Did you like the show?*
The verb *piacere*: (lit.) *to please* makes its perfect tense with *essere*.
- 40 Sì, ma ho pianto nell'ultimo atto. "La Forza del Destino" è un'opera così tragica. *Yes, but I cried in the last act. "La Forza del Destino" (lit. "The Force of Destiny") is such a tragic opera.*
- a ho pianto: *I cried* Pianto is the irregular past participle of *piangere*: *to cry*.
- b "La Forza del Destino" is a tragic opera composed by Giuseppe Verdi in 1862.
- 41 Io adoro la musica di Verdi in qualunque forma. *I love Verdi's music in any form.*
qualunque: *any* Qualunque is an adjective meaning *any* or *whatever*; it never changes its form and can be used only with singular nouns.
- 42 Eccoci a casa. Che fatica queste scale! *Here we are at home. What an effort these stairs are!*
- a Eccoci: *Here we are* Remember that words like *ti, mi, lo, la* etc. can be added to *ecco*.
- b Che fatica queste scale!: *What an effort these stairs are!* Because this is an exclamation, Maria Teresa leaves out the verb in this sentence.
- 43 Avrebbero dovuto mettere l'ascensore: ma è difficile in queste case vecchie. *They should have put (in) a lift: but it's difficult in these old houses.*
- a Avrebbero dovuto: *They should have* Once again this is the past conditional of *dovere* (Note 37), this time in the *loro* form.
- b queste case vecchie: *these old houses* Notice that while the masculine plural of *vecchio* is *vecchi* (Note 14a), the feminine plural form is *vecchie*, i.e. it is quite regular.
- 44 Alberto non c'è ancora. Ha detto che sarebbe tornato presto. *Alberto isn't in yet. He said that he would be back (lit. come home) early.*
- a non c'è ancora: (lit.) *isn't there yet*
- b Ha detto che sarebbe tornato: *He said that he would come home*
Remember that we must use the past conditional form in Italian in this type of sentence (Note 27a). As *tornare* goes with *essere* in the perfect tense, the past conditional must also be formed with *essere*, hence *sarebbe* and not *avrebbe*.

- 45 Sta' tranquilla. Saranno andati in pizzeria a fare uno spuntino. *Don't worry (lit. Stay calm). They'll have gone to a pizzeria to have a snack.*
- a Saranno andati: *They'll have gone* This is an example of what we call the future perfect tense. It is made from the future of *essere* or *avere* and followed by the past participle of the verb required, e.g. **Avrò finito di costruire questa casa per luglio**: *I'll have finished building this house by July*; **Sarò arrivato a Roma per le cinque**: *I'll have arrived in Rome by five o'clock*. In this case, Paolo uses the future perfect for something that he does not know for certain but that he considers very probable. The future tense can also be used in this way, e.g. **Dov'è Maria? Sarà dalla nonna o sarà andata dallo zio**: *She'll be at her granny's or she'll have gone to her uncle's.*
- b in pizzeria: *to a pizzeria* A **pizzeria** is a place where **pizze** are made and sold. **Pizza** is a speciality of Naples which has been copied and is now eaten all over Italy. It is fairly common to eat **pizza** after an evening out just as Alberto has probably done here.
- 46 Giovanna addormentata sulla poltrona, tutta vestita! *Giovanna asleep in the armchair, fully dressed!*
- a addormentata: *asleep* The verb *dormire* means *to sleep* whilst the adjective **addormentato** really means *having fallen asleep*.
- b tutta vestita: *fully (lit. all) dressed* **Vestito** is the past participle of *vestire*: *to dress*.

Part three: What happens

A teatro *At the theatre*

Mario has enjoyed the comedy very much but in spite of the good acting Vittorio was bored.

Prenotazione *A booking*

Signor Bianchi books seats at the theatre box-office. He cannot get front stalls as they are sold out, but manages to get good seats in the dress circle.

Part three: New words

il loggione the gods

la seconda galleria upper circle

la commedia play, comedy

esaurito sold out

la platea stalls

la poltrona seat

ridere to laugh

la prima galleria dress-circle

A teatro *At the theatre*

- 47 Che commedia divertente! *What a funny play!*
 a **commedia**: *play* The word **commedia** here means *comedy* although **una commedia** is not always necessarily funny; it can often be translated as *play* in English.
 b **divertente**: *funny* We have already met **divertente** with the meaning of *interesting* or *amusing* (L2, N10).
- 48 Ti è piaciuta? *Did you like it?*
 Remember that **piacere** goes with **essere** in the perfect tense and that **piaciuto** here ends with an **a** because it refers to the feminine singular **commedia**.
- 49 Da morire. Ho riso dall'inizio alla fine. *Tremendously. I laughed from beginning to end.*
 a **Da morire**: *Tremendously*. Remember this expression from **fa un caldo da morire** (L6, N10b).
 b **Ho riso**: *I laughed* **Riso** is the irregular past participle of **ridere**: *to laugh*.
- 50 Io avrei voluto andare via dopo il primo atto. *I would have liked (lit. wanted) to go away after the first act.*
avrei voluto: *I would have liked* This is yet another example of the past conditional, this time with the verb **volere** (Note 43a).
- 51 Almeno gli attori ti sono piaciuti? *At least you liked the actors?*
 ti sono piaciuti?: *you liked?* This time the verb **piacere** goes into the loro form to agree with **gli attori** (Note 48).

Prenotazione *A booking*

- 52 Vorremmo tre poltrone in seconda o terza fila per domani sera. *We'd like three seats in the second or third row for tomorrow evening.*
tre poltrone: *three seats* As well as meaning *armchair* (Note 46), **poltrona** also means a *seat* at the theatre; it is the special name normally given to the more expensive seats in the stalls.

Lesson sixteen

Part one: New words

l'aiuto *help*
 l'estratto conto *statement of account*
 il terreno *land, piece of land, ground*
 l'uomo *man*

la corrispondenza *correspondence*
 l'epoca *time, period*
 la società *company*

arretrato *outstanding, overdue*

Business correspondence

giovane *young*
 sedicesimo *sixteenth*

amministrare *to manage, to run*
 sbrigare *to clear, to dispatch, to get through*
 verificare *to verify, to check*

a quell'epoca *at that time*
 nemmeno *not even*

Part one: Notes

- Ci sono conti arretrati da pagare, estratti conto della banca da verificare, e altro ancora. *There are overdue bills to pay, bank statements to check and still other things to do.*
altro ancora: *still other things (to do)* Notice that **altro** here has the rather vague meaning of *other things*.
- Avrebbe bisogno di una segretaria. *She really needs (lit. She would need) a secretary.*
Avrebbe bisogno: *She really needs* Here Maria Teresa uses the conditional tense **avrebbe** because she is not stating a fact but rather putting forward her opinion about the matter.
- Quando c'era mio padre, lui sì che aveva la testa per gli affari. *When my father was alive, now he had a head for business (lit. When there was my father, he yes that he had a head for business).*
 a **Quando c'era mio padre**: *When my father was alive* (lit. *there was my father*) Remember that **c'era** is the imperfect form of **c'è**: *there is*.
 b Take careful note of the idiomatic and colloquial way that this sentence is constructed. Notice too that both **c'era** and **aveva** are in the imperfect tense because both verbs describe a state of things as they were in the past.
- È stato lui che ha comprato la casa in via Merulana e il terreno vicino a piazza San Giovanni. *It was he who bought the house in via Merulana and the piece of land near piazza San Giovanni.*
È stato lui che ha comprato: *It was he who bought* Notice that **È stato**

and **ha comprato** are both in the perfect tense because they refer to actions that only took place on one specific occasion in the past.

- 5 **Ma non ha capito una cosa: che la mamma non avrebbe saputo amministrarli nemmeno con l'aiuto del ragioniere Taviani che a quell'epoca faceva quasi tutto.** *But he didn't understand one thing: that mother wouldn't know (lit. have known) how to manage them, not even with the help of ragioniere Taviani who at that time was doing almost everything.*
- a **non avrebbe saputo:** lit. *wouldn't have known* Remember that this must be in the perfect conditional tense in Italian (L15, N27a).
- b **amministrarli:** *manage them* Amministrare means *to manage* in the sense of *to administer*. Li refers to both **la casa in via Merulana** and **il terreno**; notice once again how the masculine plural is used when referring to masculine and feminine objects together in the plural.
- c **ragioniere Taviani** Remember that words like **signore, dottore** and **ragioniere** drop their final *e* in front of a surname.
- 6 **Povero ragioniere, lui diceva sempre che sapeva tutto della società.** *Poor ragioniere, he always said that he knew everything about the company.*
diceva sempre: *he always said* Diceva is the imperfect of **dire**; in the same way as **faceva** is formed from the Latin infinitive **facere**, so **diceva** is formed from the Latin **dicere**. Maria Teresa uses the imperfect **diceva** here because it is something that the accountant *used to say* often.
- 7 **Ma era un uomo che beveva troppo ed è morto giovane.** *But he was a man who drank too much and he died young.*
- a **beveva:** *drank* This is the imperfect form of **bere**: *to drink*. Notice that it is formed as though the infinitive form were **bevere**.
- b **è morto:** *he died* Morire is one of the verbs that forms its perfect tense with **essere**; notice that its irregular past participle is **morto** (Appendix 10).
- c The two verbs **beveva** and **è morto** show very clearly the difference between the perfect and the imperfect tenses. The first verb **beveva**: *he drank, he used to drink* refers to an action that happened regularly and habitually in the past, whilst **è morto**: *he died* describes an action that happened only once in the past.

Part two: New words

l'avviso reminder, warning
il cenno acknowledgement
il credito credit
il gas gas
il materiale material
il pagamento payment
il sollecito (di pagamento) request, demand (for payment)

il tetto roof
l'ultimo avviso final demand
la bolletta bill
la ditta firm
la fattura invoice
la fornitura supply, provision
la mente mind

la posta post
la prigione prison
la richiesta request, demand
la richiesta di pagamento demand note
la risposta reply
la via legale legal channel

costretto forced, obliged
distinto distinguished
legale legal
precedente previous
scadente inferior
spett. = spettabile respectable, honourable
spiacente sorry
unito attached
u.s. = ultimo scorso last
Vs. = Vostro your

comunicare to inform
confessare to confess
fermare to stop
gradire to appreciate, to like
inviare to send
pettegolare to gossip
procedere to proceed
rispondere to reply
saldare to settle (an account)
sollecitare to press for

entro within

a metà halfway
a saldo di in settlement of
in ogni caso anyway, in any case
naturalmente naturally
ripetutamente repeatedly
sotto down, downstairs

Part two: Notes

Una richiesta di pagamento A demand note (lit. A request of payment)

- 8 **Da quanto tempo sei lì a fare i conti?** *How long have you been there doing the accounts?* (lit. *From how much time are you there doing the accounts?*)
Da quanto tempo sei lì? *How long have you been there?* Notice that in English we use the perfect tense *have been* where the Italians use the present tense. Because Maria Teresa is still sitting there doing the accounts, i.e. the action is still going on, Italians feel they cannot use a past tense; they therefore use the present tense and **da** when an action that was begun in the past is continuing through to the present, e.g.
Da quanto tempo abita in Italia? *How long have you lived in Italy?*
Abito a Roma da dieci anni: *I've lived in Rome for ten years.*
- 9 **Sono qui dalle otto e mezzo, e non sono nemmeno a metà!** *I've been (lit. I am) here since half past eight and I'm not even halfway!*
Sono qui dalle otto e mezzo: *I've been here since half past eight* Notice that Maria Teresa uses the present tense **sono** followed by **da** (Note 8).
- 10 **Se la mamma va avanti così, finirà in prigione.** *If mother goes on like this, she'll end up (lit. finish) in prison.*
- 11 **Spett. Ditta L. Guarini & C.** *Messrs. Guarini and Co.*
- a As this is a commercial letter, the name and address of the person to whom it is being written appears on the top left-hand side of the letter.
- b **Spett.** is the abbreviation of **Spettabile** which literally means *respectable* but which means *Messrs.* in a business context.

- c **Guarini & C.** C. stands for **Compagnia: Company**.
- d Notice once again that the number of the building follows the name of the street in Italian addresses (L14, N9c) and that there is no punctuation at the end of the lines in the address.
- 12 **Ci dispiace comunicarVi che il pagamento della fornitura di materiale per il tetto della casa di via Merulana 61 è in ritardo di più di sei mesi.** *We are sorry to inform you that the payment for the supply of material for the roof of the house at 61 via Merulana is more than six months late.* Notice that with a commercial letter, it is not the practice to address anyone in particular but that the letter is addressed to the firm as a whole. The company writing to **L. Guarini & C.** addresses them as **Voi** (although only **Vi** the object form of **Voi** is used here) and refers to itself as **noi**; this is normal commercial usage and in such cases **Voi** and **Vi** are always spelt with a capital letter.
- 13 **L'abbiamo ripetutamente sollecitato senza ricevere risposta.** *We have repeatedly pressed for it but have received no reply* (lit. *without receiving reply*).
- a **L'abbiamo ... sollecitato:** *We have pressed for it* The verb **sollecitare** is used rather formally here and means *to urge, to press for, to solicit*.
- b **senza ricevere risposta:** (lit.) *without receiving reply* Notice that **senza:** *without* is followed by an infinitive form, e.g. **senza finire la lettera:** *without finishing the letter*, **senza mangiare:** *without eating*, **senza vendere la casa:** *without selling the house*.
- 14 **Se il conto non sarà saldato entro dieci giorni, saremo costretti a procedere per vie legali.** *If the account is not settled within ten days, we shall be obliged to proceed through legal channels.*
non sarà saldato: (lit.) *will not be settled* Notice that the future tense **sarà:** *will be* is used here where in English we use the present.
- 15 **Distinti saluti. p. Giuseppe Pozzi & C.** *Yours faithfully* (lit. *Distinguished greetings*). **p.p. Giuseppe Pozzi and Co.**
- a **Distinti saluti** is the formal way in which to end both commercial letters and letters to people with whom you are not on familiar terms.
- b **p. Giuseppe Pozzi & C.:** *p.p. Giuseppe Pozzi and Co.* The letter **p.** stands for **per:** *for, on behalf of*.

Altri conti arretrati *Other overdue accounts*

- 16 **Naturalmente tua madre non ha ancora risposto.** *Of course your mother hasn't replied yet.*
risposto: *replied* This is the irregular past participle of **rispondere**.
- 17 **Vai a cercarla, per piacere. Deve firmare subito un assegno e lo spedirò io prima dell'una.** *Go and look for her, please. She must sign a cheque straight away and I'll send it off before one o'clock.*

- a **Vai a cercarla:** *Go and look for her* Here **vai**, the **tu** command form of **andare** is used in its unabbreviated version (L15, N11a).
- b **lo spedirò io:** *I'll send it off* Listen carefully to the recording and notice that **io** is stressed to give extra emphasis to the fact that Maria Teresa herself intends to send off the cheque.
- 18 **Sì, la bolletta del gas: è l'ultimo avviso.** *Yes, the gas bill: it's the final demand* (lit. *warning*).
la bolletta del gas: *the gas bill* The word **bolletta** is used to translate **bill** in the case of a **gas bill** (as here), an **electricity bill**, a **telephone bill** etc.; i.e. it is the word used for **bill** when referring to the provision of some public service. In all other cases, e.g. at a restaurant, a shop, a hotel etc., the word **conto** is used.
- 19 **Da quanto tempo non paga i conti questa benedetta donna?** *How long is it since she paid the bills* (lit. *Since how long is she not paying the bills*) *this blessed woman?*
non paga i conti: *she hasn't paid the bills* Notice once again the use of **da** and the present tense in Italian where we use a perfect tense in English. With this construction **da** can be translated not only by **for** in English (Note 8) but also by **since**, e.g. *I have lived in Rome since January: Abito a Roma da gennaio.*
- 20 **Mi ha confessato che non li paga più da tre mesi.** *She's confessed to me that she hasn't paid them for three months.*
non li paga più da tre mesi: *she hasn't paid them* (lit. *any more*) *for three months.*
- 21 **È da un po' di tempo che non sta tanto bene.** *She hasn't been very well for some time now* (lit. *It's since a little while that she isn't very well*).
- 22 **Dovrebbe prendere una segretaria, almeno per un pomeriggio alla settimana.** *She should get a secretary, at least for one afternoon a week.*
un pomeriggio alla settimana: *one afternoon a week* Notice how this type of expression is constructed in Italian, e.g. **una volta all'anno:** *once a year*, **tre volte al giorno:** *three times a day*.
- 23 **Prima diceva che l'avrebbe presa, ma adesso dice che la prenderà solo quando non ce la farà più.** *Before, she used to say that she would get one, but now she says that she will get one only when she can't manage any more.*
- a **diceva:** *she said, she used to say* (Note 6)
- b **diceva che l'avrebbe presa:** *she said she would get one* (lit. *her*) Remember that we must use the past conditional in Italian in sentences of this type where the present conditional is used in English (L15, N27a).
- c **dice che la prenderà solo quando non ce la farà più:** *she says she will get one* (lit. *her*) *only when she can't* (lit. *won't be able to*) *manage any*

more Remember that when two actions will both take place in the future, both must be in the future tense in Italian (L14, N8b).

La risposta alla ditta Pozzi *The reply to Pozzi and Co.* (lit. *the Pozzi firm*)

- 24 **Oh, non hai trovato la mamma? Dove sarà?** *Oh, haven't you found mother? Where can she be?*
Dove sarà?: *Where can she be?* (lit. *Where will she be?*) (L15, N45a)
- 25 **Sarà andata sotto a vedere la posta e la portinaia l'avrà fermata per pettegolare.** *She must have* (lit. *will have*) *gone downstairs to see if there's any* (lit. *to see the*) *post and the caretaker must have* (lit. *will have*) *stopped her to gossip.*
- a **sotto:** *downstairs, down* **Sotto** is both a preposition, e.g. **sotto il tavolo:** *under the table*, and an adverb as here, e.g. **Vado sotto:** *I'm going down.*
- b **a vedere la posta:** (lit.) *to see the post* In most blocks of flats in Italy there are numbered post boxes on the ground floor, one for each flat. Mrs. Guarini has presumably gone downstairs to see if there is any post for her.
- c **la portinaia l'avrà fermata:** (lit.) *the caretaker will have stopped her* As in Note 24, this is an action that Paolo considers probable.
- 26 **Allora intanto ti leggo quello che ho scritto alla ditta Pozzi. Dimmi se va bene secondo te.** *Well then, in the meantime I'll read you what I've written to Pozzi and Co. Tell me if you think it's all right* (lit. *Tell me if it's all right in your opinion*).
Dimmi: *Tell me* This is the **tu** command form **di'** followed by **mi**; remember that when two such words are joined together, the middle consonant is doubled, giving **dimmi** (L15, N26a).
- 27 **Siamo spiacenti di non aver risposto ai precedenti solleciti di pagamento e Vi inviamo qui unito un assegno della Banca di Credito per lire 950.000 a saldo della Vs. fattura in data 7 gennaio u.s.** *We are sorry for not having replied to your previous requests for payment and are enclosing* (lit. *sending here attached*) *a Banca di Credito cheque for 950.000 lire in settlement of your invoice of 7th January.*
- a **Siamo spiacenti:** *We are sorry* Notice that when writing on behalf of her mother's firm, Maria Teresa uses the **noi** form. The phrase **siamo spiacenti** is only used as a commercial form and would never be used in everyday speech.
- b **di non aver risposto:** *for not having replied* Notice the infinitive followed by a past participle in this construction. A further example would be **Sono contento di vederti:** *I'm pleased to see you* and in the past **Sono contento di averti visto:** *I'm pleased to have seen you.*
- c **Vi inviamo:** *we are sending you* Remember that when writing commercial letters, firms are always addressed as **Voi** written with a capital letter

unless of course you are writing to a particular person in the firm in which case you would use the normal **lei** polite form.

- d **a saldo della Vs. fattura:** *in settlement of your invoice* Notice the expression **a saldo di:** *in settlement of.* **Vs.** is the abbreviation of **Vostra** used in commercial letters; notice that this too is spelt with a capital letter.
- e **in data 7 gennaio u.s.:** *of 7th January* Notice the commercial use of **in data.** The abbreviation **u.s.** stands for **ultimo scorso**, i.e. *7th January last.*
- 28 **Gradiremmo un cenno di ricevuta. Distinti saluti.** *We should like an acknowledgement* (lit. *sign*) *of receipt. Yours faithfully.*
Gradiremmo: *We should like, We should appreciate* The verb **gradire:** *to like* is used in formal situations and letters, but rarely in everyday speech.
- 29 **Ma cosa ti viene in mente? Deve pagare in ogni caso.** *But what are you thinking of* (lit. *what is coming to you in mind*)? *She has to pay anyway.*
- 30 **Non si sa mai. Oh eccola qui! Chiediamolo a lei.** *You never know* (lit. *One never knows*). *Oh here she is! Let's ask her.*
Chiediamolo a lei: *Let's ask her* (lit. *Let's ask it to her*). Remember that you **chiedere qualcosa a qualcuno** in Italian. Notice that we can put a pronoun not only at the end of **tu** and **voi** command forms but also on the **noi** command form, e.g. **Chiediamolo:** *Let's ask it*, **Andiamoci:** *Let's go there* etc. Listen to the pronunciation of **Chiediamolo** and notice that the stress remains on the **a** of **Chiediamo** even though **lo** has been added to it.

Part three: New words

il consulente	consultant	nessuno	no-one
il problema	problem		
il trimestre	quarter, a three-monthly period, term	enorme	enormous
		immobiliare	property
		solo	single
l'agenzia immobiliare	estate agency		
la resa dei conti	rendering of accounts, showdown, final reckoning	spiegare	to explain
la vendita	sale	in vendita	for sale
		sia ... che	both ... and

Part three: Notes

Agenzia immobiliare *Estate agency* (lit. *Property agency*)

- 31 **E non avete ancora trovato nessuno per comprarlo?** *And haven't you found anyone* (lit. *no-one*) *to buy it yet?*
non avete?: *haven't you?* Notice that when referring to the firm, the client uses the **voi** form of the verb.

- 32 Veramente ieri è venuto un consulente della ditta Bianchi a discuterne. *Actually (lit. Really) a consultant from Bianchi & Co. came yesterday to talk about it.*
a discuterne: *to talk about it* To discuss something is **discutere** di qualcosa in Italian. Thus, **Discuto degli affari**: *I'm talking about business.*
- 33 No, la ditta vorrebbe un terreno più grande per costruirci sia la fabbrica che gli uffici. *No, the firm would like a larger piece of land where they could built (lit. to build there) both the factory and the offices.*
sia ... che: *both ... and* Notice how **sia ... che** is used; a further example would be **Sia l'architetto che il geometra vanno a lavorare a Roma**: *Both the architect and the surveyor are going to work in Rome.*

La resa dei conti! *The final reckoning!* (lit. *The rendering of accounts!*)

- 34 **La resa dei conti!**: *The rendering of accounts!* This is a deliberate pun as the following scene does show a husband and wife arguing over a telephone bill that is to be paid; however, **la resa dei conti** also means *the rendering of accounts* in the figurative sense of a *showdown*. This scene is a *final reckoning* in both senses of the phrase.
- 35 No, no, è la bolletta per un solo trimestre. *No, no, it's the bill for only one (lit. a single) quarter.*
- 36 Sai, quando tu eri via, io telefonavo spesso a mia madre. *You know, when you were away, I often used to telephone my mother.*
telefonavo: *I used to telephone* Notice the use of the imperfect tense here to indicate that the action happened repeatedly in the past.
- 37 Ma tu non mi chiamavi mai! Con chi potevo parlare dei problemi di casa? *But you never used to ring me! Who (else) could I talk to about the problems of the house?*
- a Notice once again the imperfect tense in **chiamavi** and **potevo** showing that both actions happened repeatedly and continuously in the past.
- b **problemi**: *problems* The singular of **i problemi** is **il problema**.

Lezione diciassette

In ufficio

Lesson seventeen

At the office

Part one: New words

il pezzo piece
il pezzo di ricambio spare part
il ricambio replacement
lo stipendio salary
l'auto car
l'entrata entrance
le ferie holidays
la mensilità monthly payment
la stenodattilografa shorthand typist(f.)

diciassettesimo seventeenth
interno internal
invidiabile enviable
personale personal

fuori orario overtime

S.p.A. = Società per Azioni Co.
Ltd.

Part one: Notes

- È mezz'ora che l'aspetto e lei non è ancora venuta giù. *I've been waiting for her for half an hour and she hasn't come down yet.*
È mezz'ora che l'aspetto: (lit.) *It's half an hour that I'm waiting for her*
Notice that in English we must use the perfect tense for this construction whilst Italian uses the present tense.
 - Sono nell'entrata degli uffici della Meccanosette S.p.A., che è una grossa fabbrica di pezzi di ricambio per auto. *I'm in the entrance to the offices of Meccanosette Co. Ltd. which is a large factory that makes spare parts for cars.*
- a **gli uffici della Meccanosette S.p.A.**: *the offices of the Meccanosette Co. Ltd.* A company or firm is generally considered feminine from the grammatical point of view, e.g. **la Fiat** (the car manufacturing company).
- b **S.p.A.: Co. Ltd.** These initials stand for **Società per Azioni**: (lit.) *Company by Shares* and are used in the same way as **Co. Ltd.** is used in English.
- c **auto: cars** **Auto** is the abbreviation of **automobile**, another word for car. The plural of **l'auto**: *the car* is **le auto**: *the cars*.
- Il portiere è molto gentile: me la sta chiamando con il telefono interno. *The porter is very kind: he's calling her for me on the internal phone.*
me la sta chiamando: *he's calling her for me* **He's calling her** is translated by **La sta chiamando**; *for me* is translated by **mi** (lit. *to me*) which in front of **la** changes to **me**. The rule is that when both direct and indirect object pronouns occur in the same sentence, the indirect object precedes the direct and **mi**: *to me*, **ti**: *to you*, **ci**: *to us* and **vi**: *to you*

(voi form) change to *me*, *te*, *ce* and *ve* respectively in front of *lo*, *la*, *li*, *le* and *ne*; e.g. *Maria me lo dice: Maria tells it to me; Giovanna te la da: Giovanna gives it to you; Ce li mandano: They send them to us; Ve le leggiamo: We read them to you.* Notice that in all these cases, both pronouns precede the verb (Appendix 3).

- 4 **Chissà perché proprio oggi deve lavorare fuori orario.** *Who knows why today of all days she has to work overtime.*
- 5 **È vero che adesso non è più una stenodattilografa nell'ufficio generale.** *It's true that now she's no longer a shorthand typist in the general office.*
una stenodattilografa: a shorthand typist Although you have learnt that it is incorrect to use the article *un* or *una* in front of the name of a profession, this is not the case when some further information is added about the profession as here, e.g. **È dattilografa: She's a typist** but **È una dattilografa che parla italiano: She's a typist who speaks Italian.**
- 6 **Da sei mesi è la segretaria personale di uno dei direttori, e prende un ottimo stipendio, con quattordici mensilità e un mese di ferie all'anno.** *She's been the personal secretary to one of the directors for six months and gets an excellent salary with fourteen monthly payments and a month's holiday a year.*
- a **Da sei mesi è: For six months she has been (L16, N8)**
- b **prende: she gets** Notice the use of **prendere** meaning *to get* or *to earn*.
- c **stipendio: salary** A **stipendio** is paid monthly and is normally used in connection with white collar and office workers.
- d **quattordici mensilità: fourteen monthly payments** It is common practice in many Italian companies to pay the employees a month's bonus at Christmas and a month's bonus just before the summer holidays, making fourteen monthly payments per year.
- e **un mese di ferie all'anno: one month's holiday a year** Remember to use *a* in this type of construction (L16, N22).
- 7 **Glielo hanno dato quando lavorava nell'ufficio da solo tre mesi.** *They gave it to her when she had been working in the office for only three months.*
- a **Glielo hanno dato: They gave it to her** **Glielo** is the combination of *le: to her* and *lo: it*. **Le: to her** and **gli: to him** both change to **glie** in front of *lo*, *la*, *li*, *le* and *ne* and combine with them to form one word. Thus, *le* followed by *lo* becomes **glielo**; *gli* followed by *li* becomes **glieli**; *le* followed by *la* becomes **gliela** etc. (Note 3 and Appendix 3).
- b **quando lavorava nell'ufficio da solo tre mesi: when she had been working in the office for only three months** To say *She has been working here for three months* in Italian, we must use the present tense, i.e. **Lavora qui da tre mesi**; to say *She had been working here for three months* we must use the imperfect tense i.e. **Lavorava qui da tre mesi**.

Part two: New words

l'altro ieri the day before yesterday
 l'amministratore director
 l'amministratore delegato managing director
 il bilancio budget, balance-sheet
 il capo head
 il capoufficio office supervisor, head
 il carovita cost of living
 il consiglio council
 il consiglio di amministrazione board of directors
 il contratto contract
 i dati data, figures
 il datore giver
 il datore di lavoro employer
 il fattorino office boy, messenger
 l'operaio (manual) worker
 il premio bonus, prize, award
 il reparto section, department
 il resoconto report, minutes
 il sacco sack, pile
 il salario wages, pay
 il salario base basic pay
 il sindacalista trade unionist
 il sindacato union

l'amministrazione management
 la base base
 la contabilità accountancy, accounting
 la copia copy
 l'indennità indemnity, allowance
 l'indennità di carovita cost of living allowance
 l'inflazione inflation
 l'ordinazione order
 la produzione production, output

la proporzione proportion
 la statistica statistic
 l'urgenza urgency

nulla nothing
 ve = vi you

delegato delegated
 esatto correct, exact, precise
 opportuno suitable, appropriate
 presente present
 stabilito laid down, established
 triplice triple

battere to hit, to beat
 battere a macchina to type
 convocare to call (a meeting)
 promettere to promise
 ricordare to remind
 ripetere to repeat
 scusare to excuse
 soddisfare to satisfy
 stenografare to take down in shorthand
 tenere to hold
 toccare to touch
 toccare a to be up to

da parte mia for me, on my part
 di sicuro for sure
 d'urgenza urgently
 dopodomani the day after tomorrow
 in triplice copia in triplicate
 ugualmente just the same

anche even
 anzi on the contrary, indeed

Part two: Notes

Nell'ufficio del direttore *In the director's office*

- 8 **Sì, glielo ho mandate subito.** *Yes, I sent them to him straight away.*
Gli: to him followed by **le: them** (i.e. the orders) becomes **glielo** (Note 7a).
- 9 **No, non gliene ho ancora parlato. So che è molto occupato: sta facendo i bilanci del mese, gli stipendi e i salari.** *No, I haven't talked to him about it yet. I know he's very busy: he's doing the budgets for the month, the salaries and the wages.*

- a **gliene ho parlato:** *I've spoken to him about it* (lit. of it) Here **gli:** to him and **ne:** of it are joined together to form **gliene** (Note 7a).
- b **i salari:** *the wages* Whilst **stipendio** refers to money paid monthly, (Note 6c), **salario** is normally paid weekly and is usually used in connection with non white-collar workers.
- 10 **Glielo ricordi ugualmente, per favore.** *Remind him of it* (lit. Remember it to him) just the same, please.
glielo ricordi: *remind him of it* **Ricordare** can mean both to remember and to remind, as it means here. However, to remind someone OF something is **ricordare qualcosa A qualcuno** in Italian which is why we see **glielo** in this sentence (i.e. **gli:** to him followed by **lo:** it giving **glielo**). Remember that pronouns precede the **lei** command form.
- 11 **Sì, l'ho stenografato e l'ho battuto a macchina in triplice copia.** *Yes I took it down in shorthand and I typed it in triplicate.*
l'ho battuto a macchina: *I typed it* The **macchina** referred to here is **una macchina da scrivere:** *typewriter*. The verb **battere** by itself means to hit or to beat.
- 12 **I dati della produzione di maggio non sono esatti. Me li controlli per domani mattina, per piacere.** *The figures for the output for May aren't correct. Check them for* (lit. to) *me for tomorrow morning, please.*

Le richieste del sindacato *The union's demands*

- 13 **Del salario base non si può discutere: è quello stabilito dal contratto nazionale.** *There's no question of talking about the basic pay* (lit. One cannot discuss the basic pay): *it's what's been laid down by the national contract.*
- 14 **Ma per l'indennità di carovita tocca al datore di lavoro decidere.** *But it's up to the employer to decide about the cost of living allowance.*
tocca al datore di lavoro decidere: *it's up to the employer to decide*
 One of the meanings of the idiomatic expression **toccare a** is to be up to someone to do something, e.g. **Tocca a Giovanni dire quando vuole venire:** *It's up to Giovanni to say when he wants to come.* Otherwise it can be used to say that it is someone's turn, e.g. **Tocca a me:** *It's my turn; **Tocca a Giovanni:** *It's Giovanni's turn; **Tocca a lui:** *It's his turn.***
- 15 **Ve l'abbiamo aumentata in proporzione all'inflazione degli ultimi quattro mesi.** *We've increased it for you in proportion to the inflation of the last four months.*
Ve l'abbiamo aumentata: *We've increased it for you* Remember that **vi** changes to **ve** in front of **lo**, **la** etc. (Note 3).
- 16 **Agli impiegati e ai capi reparto, non agli operai e ai fattorini.** *For the office workers and the heads of department, not for the manual workers and the office boys.*

- a **agli operai:** *for the workers* Remember that whilst **impiegato** denotes a white-collar office worker, an **operaio** is a manual worker normally connected with some sort of industry.
- b **ai fattorini:** *for the office boys* A **fattorino** is used to denote an office boy or messenger, i.e. a factotum who may be called upon to run any sort of errand.
- 17 **Credo che non potremo far nulla fino a dopo le ferie.** *I don't think we'll be able to do anything until after the holidays.*
- a **nulla:** (lit.) *nothing* **Nulla** is completely interchangeable with **niente**.
- b **le ferie:** *the holidays* So far you have seen both **vacanza**, **vacanze** and **ferie** all translated as *holiday*. **Una vacanza** is generally a holiday taken away from home, **le vacanze** are holidays from school or other academic institutions, whilst **le ferie** refers specifically to the break from work taken by industrial and office workers. Although **le ferie** can be taken at any time of year, they are most often taken at the end of July when many factories and offices close for three or four weeks.
- 18 **Sarebbe opportuno fare qualcosa prima, anche solo un piccolo premio di produzione.** *It would be best* (lit. appropriate) *to do something before* (that), *even* (if it's) *only a small production bonus.*
 The trade unionist makes this suggestion because all Italian workers expect to receive special extra pay before the summer holiday.
- 19 **Non glielo prometto. Ne discuteremo alla riunione del consiglio di amministrazione che terremo dopodomani.** *I can't promise. We'll discuss it at the board meeting* (that we will hold) *the day after tomorrow.*
- a **Non glielo prometto:** (lit.) *I don't promise it to you* Here **le:** to you and **lo:** it have been joined together to form **glielo** (Note 7a).
- b **che terremo:** *that we will hold* The irregular future of **tenere:** to hold is **io terrò, tu terrai** etc. (Appendix 10).

In ritardo *Late*

- 20 **Glielo ripeta da parte mia, per piacere. No, anzi, me lo passi al telefono.** *Tell him from me please. No, wait a minute, I'll talk to him* (lit. pass him to me on the phone).
- a **da parte mia:** *from me* (lit. from my part)
- b **anzi:** *wait a minute* **Anzi** literally means either *more than that, indeed* or *on the contrary*, e.g. **Questi spaghetti sono buoni, anzi ottimi!** *This spaghetti is good, no, excellent!* **Quella casa non è bella, anzi è brutta:** *That house is not beautiful, on the contrary, it's ugly.*
- 21 **Scusa, ancora cinque minuti e sono da te.** *Sorry, just another five minutes and I'll be with you.*
Scusa: (lit.) *Excuse (me)* We have already met **scusi:** *excuse me* which is really the **lei** command form of the verb **scusare:** to excuse. Similarly

scusa is the *tu* command form of *scusare*. Thus you should say *scusi* to a person with whom you are on formal terms and *scusa* to a friend or member of your family, etc.

- 22 **Se hai da fare, posso tornare più tardi.** *If you've got a lot to do I can come back later.*

Un sacco di lavoro *A pile of work*

- 23 The expression **un sacco di** is very colloquial and is used similarly to **un mucchio di** (L9, N2a).
- 24 **Ci voleva anche questa. L'ascensore non funziona.** *That's all we needed. The lift's not working.*
- a **Ci voleva anche questa:** *That's all we needed* Here the idiomatic expression **ci vuole** is used in the imperfect tense with a slightly different meaning from the one we have seen before (L6, N20a).
- b **questa:** (lit.) *this* Here **questa** is in the feminine form because it really stands for **questa cosa:** (lit.) *this thing*.
- 25 **Non me lo daranno di sicuro. Sono solo sei mesi che faccio la segretaria personale.** *You can be sure they won't give it to me. I've only been a personal secretary for six months* (lit. *They are only six months that I am being a personal secretary*).
- Sono solo sei mesi che faccio la segretaria personale:** *I've only been a personal secretary for six months.* This is the same type of construction that we saw in Note 1.
- 26 **Te la porto io.** *I'll carry it for you.*
In this sentence **ti** has become **te** in front of **la** (Note 3). Notice how here too **te** is not translated as *to you* but as *for you*.
- 27 **Grazie, non è il caso.** *Thank you but it's all right.*
non è il caso: *it's all right, it's not necessary* This is a useful phrase to learn.
- 28 **Oggi pomeriggio l'amministratore delegato ha convocato d'urgenza una riunione e ho dovuto essere presente tutto il tempo.** *This afternoon the managing director called an urgent meeting and I had to be present all the time.*
ha convocato d'urgenza una riunione: (lit.) *called urgently a meeting*

Part three: New words

la carriera career
la colpa fault

insoddisfatto dissatisfied

avercela con to have it in for, to be angry with
consegnare to give, to deliver
mi importa di I care about

Part three: Notes

Un lavoro urgente *An urgent job*

- 29 **Capoufficio:** *office supervisor* can be both masculine and feminine.
- 30 **E le spieghi che è colpa mia.** *And explain to her that it's my fault.*
colpa mia: *my fault* In this expression, **colpa** always precedes the possessive adjective, e.g. **colpa tua:** *your fault*, **colpa nostra:** *our fault*, **colpa loro:** *their fault* etc. Other similar expressions are **a casa mia:** *at my home*, **in camera mia:** *in my room*, **da parte mia:** *from me*.

Insoddisfatto *Dissatisfied*

- 31 **Non me ne importa più niente.** *I don't care about it any more.*
The expression from which this phrase is constructed is **importare di qualcosa A qualcuno** i.e. *to matter to someone about something*, e.g. **Gli importa di sua figlia:** *His daughter matters to him, He minds about his daughter.* To say *He minds about her* we must translate **Gliene importa** with **ne** replacing **di sua figlia**. Thus, the phrase **Non me ne importa più niente** here stands for **Non mi importa più niente del mio lavoro**, the **ne** replacing **del mio lavoro** and **mi** changing to **me** in front of **ne** (Note 3).
- 32 **Come sarebbe a dire?** *What do you mean by that?*
Learn this idiomatic expression as it stands, but be careful to use it only with people you know well as it implies a high degree of familiarity.
- 33 **Il capoufficio ce l'ha con me.** *The office manager has got it in for me.*
The verb **avercela con qualcuno** means both *to have a grudge against someone* and *to be angry with someone*, e.g. **Ce l'ho con te:** *I'm angry with you;* **Il dottore ce l'ha con lui:** *The doctor's got it in for him* etc.
- 34 **Me lo hanno aumentato ben poco, e sono sempre nello stesso ufficio.** *They've given me a very small increase and I'm still in the same office.*
- a **Me lo hanno aumentato:** (lit.) *They've increased it to me*
- b **Ben poco** is used here as a colloquial substitute for **pochissimo**.

Lezione diciotto

Lesson eighteen

Part one: New words

il cambio exchange
l'elettricista electrician
il frigorifero refrigerator

Commissioni

Errands

il supermercato supermarket
la faccenda affair, matter

le faccende di casa household duties,
housework
la finta pretence, sham
la scusa excuse
la tintoria dry cleaner's

diciottesimo eighteenth

aggiustare to put right, to repair
fare finta di to pretend
presentare to introduce

pulire to clean
risuolare to re-sole
sparire to disappear
stirare to iron

fino as far as

né ... né neither ... nor

diciotto eighteen

Part one: Notes

- 1 Arrivando a Roma, ho trovato un mucchio di lavoro da fare. *When I arrived (lit. Arriving) in Rome, I found a heap of work to do.*
Arrivando: (lit.) Arriving Remember that this is the gerund form of arrivare. Here it is used to translate *When I arrived* or *On arriving*.
- 2 Papà e mamma sono troppo occupati a sbrigare gli affari della nonna, e, con una scusa o con l'altra, a me toccano tutte le faccende di casa e le commissioni. *Dad and mum are too busy settling granny's business and one way and another (lit. with one excuse or with the other), I have to see to all the household duties and the errands.*
a me toccano: *I have to see to, it's up to me to do (L17, N14)*
- 3 Alberto non si vede più. Secondo me, ha una nuova ragazza, ma non vuole né dirmelo né presentarmela. *Alberto's no longer to be seen. I think (lit. According to me) he's got a new girlfriend, but he won't tell me nor will he introduce her to me.*
 - a non vuole né ... né: (lit.) *he doesn't want neither ... nor* When né ... né is used with a verb, the verb must be in the negative.
 - b non vuole né dirmelo né presentarmela.: (lit.) *he doesn't want neither to say it to me nor to introduce her to me.* Dirmelo is dire followed by mi followed by lo, all run together. Notice that the combinations of pronouns we saw in Lesson 17 (N3) follow exactly the same rules as the individual pronouns regarding their position in the sentence.
 - c presentarmela: *introduce her to me* This is presentare followed by mi: to me followed by la: her (Appendix 3).
- 4 Ieri sono riuscita a mandarlo al supermercato, promettendogli in cambio un buon pranzetto. *Yesterday I managed to send him to the supermarket by promising him a lovely (lit. good little) lunch in exchange.*
 - a sono riuscita a: *I managed to* Remember that the verb riuscire a means to manage to or to succeed in doing something (L12, N2a). Remember

too that being a compound of uscire, it forms its perfect tense with essere and not avere. Notice that *to succeed IN* doing something or *to manage TO* do something is translated by riuscire A followed by the infinitive form of the verb in Italian.

- b promettendogli: (by) *promising him* (lit. to him) Promettendo is the gerund of promettere: to promise. To promise someone something is promettere qualcosa A qualcuno; in this way *promising him* is translated by *promising TO him* i.e. promettendogli. Notice too that where there are pronouns, they follow and are attached to gerund forms, e.g. andandoci: *going there*; vedendola: *seeing her* etc.
- 5 Oggi speravo di mandarlo almeno fino in tintoria, ma lui facendo finta di niente è sparito prima di colazione. *Today I was hoping at least to send him to the dry-cleaner's, but he, all innocence (lit. pretending nothing), disappeared before breakfast.*
 - a facendo finta di niente: (lit.) *pretending nothing*, i.e. acting as though he knew nothing of my plans Fare finta di means to pretend, e.g. Lucia fa finta di non capire: *Lucia is pretending not to understand.*
 - b è sparito: *disappeared* The verb sparire: to disappear forms its perfect tense with essere, e.g. Giovanna è sparita: *Giovanna disappeared.*
- 6 Vediamo un po': devo far venire l'elettricista ad aggiustare il frigorifero, devo far risuolare le scarpe, far pulire i vestiti e far stirare le camicie. *Let me see: I must get the electrician to come and repair the refrigerator, I must have the shoes re-soled, have the clothes cleaned and have the shirts ironed.*
 - a devo far venire l'elettricista: *I must get the electrician to come* To get someone to do something or to have someone do something is translated by fare (or far) followed by an infinitive followed by the name of the person, e.g. Devo far entrare l'avvocato: *I must get the lawyer to come in* or *I must let the lawyer in.* Faccio venire mia cugina: *I'm sending for my cousin* or *I'm getting my cousin to come.*
 - b devo far risuolare le scarpe, far pulire i vestiti e far stirare le camicie: *I must get the shoes re-soled, have the clothes cleaned and have the shirts ironed.* To get something done is translated by the same construction as in Note 6a, i.e. fare (or far) followed by the infinitive form of another verb followed by the object of this second verb, e.g. Faccio risuolare queste scarpe: *I'm having these shoes re-soled*; Maria fa pulire i vestiti: *Maria's having the clothes cleaned*; Fanno stirare le camicie: *They're having the shirts ironed.* Here and in a above the noun object of the second verb follows the verb and does not come before it as in English.

l'abito dress, suit
 l'abito a giacca dress and jacket
 l'ago needle
 l'arrosto roast
 il bacio kiss
 il calzolaio shoe-mender, cobbler
 il cappotto coat, overcoat
 i collant tights
 il compito homework, task
 i dintorni surroundings, vicinity
 l'elastico elastic
 il filo cotton, thread
 il frigo = frigorifero refrigerator
 il guasto breakdown
 il maglione sweater, pullover
 gli occhiali glasses
 gli occhiali da sole sunglasses
 l'ottico optician
 il paio couple
 il piacere pleasure
 il pollo chicken
 il rotolo roll
 il rotolo di foto roll of film, film
 i saldi sales
 il sandalo sandal
 il tacco heel
 il vestito da uomo man's suit

 la lista list
 la merceria haberdasher's shop
 l'occhiata look, glance

la pizza pizza
 la seta silk
 la suocera mother-in-law
 la tavola table
 la tavola calda snack-bar, restaurant

arancione orange
 beige beige
 grigio grey
 invernale winter
 viola mauve

camminare to walk
 consigliare to advise
 contare to count
 dare un'occhiata to have a look
 incontrare to meet
 parere to seem, to appear
 ritirare to collect
 salutare to say hello
 servire to be useful
 sviluppare to develop

gli to them

dentro inside
 semplicemente simply
 sul tardi later on

accidenti! what a nuisance!

Part two: Notes

In tintoria At the dry cleaner's

- 7 il più presto possibile: as soon as possible
- 8 Mi pare dodici. I think twelve.
 Mi pare: I think (lit. It appears or seems to me) This is a useful way of saying you think or believe something; other examples of its use are ti pare: you think; gli pare: he thinks; le pare: she thinks or you think (lei form); ci pare: we think etc.
- 9 E i vestiti? Me li faccia vedere. What about the clothes (lit. And the clothes)? Show them to me.
 a Me li faccia vedere: Show them to me (lit. Make me to see them). To show someone something is far vedere qualcosa a qualcuno (the same

type of construction as in Note 6), e.g. Fa vedere i vestiti a Giovanni: He's showing the clothes to Giovanni; Gli fa vedere i vestiti: He's showing him the clothes (a Giovanni being converted to gli which comes in front of the main verb) and Glieli fa vedere: He's showing them to him (L17, N7a). In the sentence Me li faccia vedere: Show them to me, faccia is the command form of fare and the pronouns mi: to me and li: them come before the verb (L14, N32); in addition mi changes to me in front of another pronoun (Note 3b).

- b In all these constructions notice that fare and the infinitive do not split; either they are followed by nouns or preceded by pronouns.
- 10 Ci sono due vestiti da uomo, uno grigio e uno beige, un maglione viola, un abito a giacca, un vestito di seta arancione, e un cappotto invernale da donna. There are two men's suits, one grey and one beige, a dark mauve sweater, a dress and jacket, an orange silk dress and a lady's winter coat.
 a due vestiti da uomo: two men's suits Remember that vestito can mean both dress when referring to a woman's article of clothing and a suit when referring to a man. The word abito is interchangeable with vestito and can also mean both dress and suit (L6, N4b).
 b Beige: beige, viola: dark mauve and arancione: orange are all invariable adjectives having only one form.
 c un cappotto invernale: a winter coat Learn the difference between cappotto and soprabito (L14, N25), soprabito being a lightweight coat whilst cappotto is a heavy winter coat.
 d un cappotto invernale da donna: a lady's winter coat Notice the expression da donna meaning for a lady and compare it with due vestiti da uomo (Note 10a) where da uomo means for a man. The same use of da is found in expressions like una tazza da tè: a teacup (i.e. a cup for tea).
- 11 Ne avrei bisogno prima. I really need them before that (lit. I would have need of them before). (L16, N2)
- 12 Un momento, contiamole: ah, sono solo otto. Just a moment, let's count them: ah, there are only eight.
 contiamole: let's count them The le at the end of contiamole refers of course to le camicie. Remember that pronouns follow the noi command form of verbs (L14, N32).
- 13 Allora gliele faccio stirare per venerdì. Well then, I'll get them ironed for you for Friday.
 gliele faccio stirare: I'll get them ironed for you This again is the same type of construction as in Notes 6b and 9. When a pronoun, not a noun, is the object of the verb following fare, this pronoun precedes the two verbs instead of following them as in Note 6b, e.g. Faccio stirare le camicie: I'm getting the shirts ironed (the noun object le camicie follows

the two verbs), but **Le faccio stirare**: *I'm getting them ironed* (the pronoun object **le**: *them* precedes the two verbs). Remembering that **Le faccio stirare le camicie** means *I'm getting the shirts ironed for you* (the indirect object pronoun **le**: *to you* or *for you* preceding the two verbs), **Gliele faccio stirare** means *I'm getting them ironed for you*; in this latter example the indirect object pronoun **le**: *for you* combines with the direct object pronoun **le**: *them* (referring to **le camicie**) to form **gliel** which precedes the two verbs.

- 14 **Può mandarmele a casa? Sto dalla signora Guarini.** *Can you send them home to me? I'm staying with signora Guarini.*

Può mandarmele?: *Can you send them to me?* **Mandarmele** is **mandare** followed by **mi** followed by **le**; again, as in Note 3c, **mi** becomes **me** in front of another pronoun and both pronouns follow the infinitive **mandare** which has lost its final **e**.

- 15 **Ah sì, gliele faccio portare dal ragazzo verso mezzogiorno.** *Ah yes, I'll get the boy to bring them round to you* (lit. *I'll have them brought to you by the boy*) about midday.

To have something taken round to someone is **far portare qualcosa a qualcuno**. As in Note 13, the object of the verb (**le camicie**) is reduced to the pronoun **le**: *them* which again combines with **le**: *to you* to form **gliel**; both pronouns then precede the two verbs.

Dal calzolaio *At the cobbler's*

- 16 **Vorrei far rifare i tacchi a queste due paia di sandali. E vorrei sentire che cosa mi consiglia per queste scarpe da uomo.** *I'd like to have these two pairs of sandals heeled. And I'd like to know* (lit. *hear*) *what you advise me for these men's shoes.*

Vorrei far rifare i tacchi: (lit.) *I'd like to have the heels re-done* This is a construction of the same type as in Note 6b. Notice here that Giovanna says **Vorrei far rifare i tacchi A queste due paia di sandali**: (lit.) *I'd like to have the heels re-done TO these two pairs of sandals.*

- 17 **Che cos'hanno?** *What's wrong with them* (lit. *What have they got*)? Notice this special use of **che cosa?** and **avere** to ask *what is wrong or the matter with something or someone*, e.g. If a small child is crying you can ask him **Che cos'hai?**: *What's the matter with you?* or *What's wrong?*

- 18 **Sono quasi nuove, ma ci entra l'acqua.** *They're almost new, but they let the water in* (lit. *the water enters there*).

- 19 **Me le dia qui. Basta semplicemente risuolarle.** *Let me see them* (lit. *Give them to me here*). *All they need is re-soleing* (lit. *It's enough simply to re-sole them*).

Me le dia qui: (lit.) *Give them to me here*. Here **dia** (the **lei** command form of **dare**) is preceded by **me**: *to me* and **le**: *them* (Note 9).

- 20 **Ci vorrà molto tempo?** *Will it take a long time?*

- 21 **Glieli faccio per domani mattina.** *I'll do them for* (lit. *to*) *you by* (lit. *for*) *tomorrow morning.*

Glieli faccio: *I'll do them for you* **Glieli** is here **le**: *to or for you* followed by **li**: *them* (i.e. **i sandali**) (L17, N7a).

Per la strada *In the street*

- 22 **Che piacere incontrarti!** *How nice to see you* (lit. *What a pleasure to meet you*)!

- 23 **Sì, con i miei.** *Yes, with my family.*

i miei: *my family* (lit. *mine*) Notice this special use of the possessive in Italian. **I miei**, **i tuoi**, **i suoi** etc. can all be used alone as pronouns to mean someone's family or parents, e.g. **I miei stanno bene; come stanno i tuoi?**: *My family is well; how is yours?*

- 24 **Stai andando in centro?** *Are you on your way to the town centre?*

- 25 **Facciamole insieme, se vuoi. Possiamo parlare camminando.** *We can do them together, if you like* (lit. *Let's do them together, if you want*). *We can talk as we walk along.*

- a **Facciamole**: *Let's do them* (L14, N32)

- b **camminando**: *as we walk along* (lit. *walking*) Notice that this is the gerund of **camminare**: *to walk* and that it is a further example of how the gerund form can be used in Italian (Notes 1, 4b and 5a).

- 26 **Passo un momento dall'ottico. Devo far sviluppare questi rotoli di foto e prendere un paio di occhiali da sole.** *I'm going into the optician's for a moment. I've got to get these rolls of film developed, and buy a pair of sunglasses.*

In Italy the **ottico** not only deals with the fitting and selling of spectacles but also undertakes the developing and printing of films.

- 27 **Io intanto entro in merceria. Ti serve qualcosa?** *Meanwhile, I'll go into the haberdasher's. Do you need anything?*

- a **entro in merceria**: *I'm going into the haberdasher's* The verb **entrare**: *to go in* cannot be followed by a direct object as the verb *to enter* can in English e.g. *I'm entering the cinema*; **entrare** is usually followed by **in**, e.g. **Entro NEL cinema.**

- b **merceria**: *haberdasher's shop* Whereas the **ottico** is the *optician*, i.e. the person who is in the shop, **la merceria** is not the person, but the name of the actual shop where haberdashery is sold.

- c **Ti serve qualcosa?**: *Do you need something* (lit. *Is something useful to you*)? The verb **servire** means *to be useful or of use* and is often used together with the indirect object pronoun, e.g. **Gli servono questi soldi**: *This money is useful to him* i.e. *He needs this money*. **Mi serve questa macchina**: *This car is of use to me* i.e. *I need this car*.

- 28 **Accidenti, uscendo l'ho dimenticata. No, non puoi comprarmeli tu, devo venire dentro anch'io.** *What a nuisance, I left it behind when I came out (lit. going out I forgot it). No, you can't buy them for me, I've got to come in too.*
- a **uscendo:** (lit.) *going out* This is the gerund of *uscire* and here has the sense of *when I came out* (Note 25b).
- b **non puoi comprarmeli tu:** *you can't buy them for me* This is the same type of construction as in Notes 3b and c.

Alla tavola calda *At the snack bar*

- 29 **A tavola calda** is a restaurant or a shop where ready-cooked food, both cold and hot, can be bought and either taken away or eaten there.
- 30 **Entro anch'io con te: devo prendere un pollo arrosto per il pranzo.** *I'll come in with you too: I've got to buy a roast chicken for lunch.*
un pollo arrosto: *a roast chicken* Although *arrosto* appears to be an adjective agreeing with *pollo*, it is in fact a noun *l'arrosto* and is used here in *pollo arrosto* in the same way that we speak of *roast chicken* in English. It behaves like an invariable adjective and never changes its form regardless of what it refers to, e.g. **patate arrosto:** *roast potatoes*.
- 31 **Noi mangiamo solo una pizza, poi porto i bambini a casa e gli faccio fare un po' di compiti delle vacanze.** *We're just having a pizza, then I'm taking the children home and getting them to do a bit of holiday homework.*
- a **gli faccio fare:** *I'm getting them to do* So far we have seen that the pronoun *gli* means *to him* and the pronoun *loro* means *to them* (L11, N9). However, in everyday conversation, *loro: to them* is often replaced by *gli* used with the sense of *to them*; when this happens, *gli* is placed in front of the verb and not after it like *loro*, e.g. **Anna e Roberto? Gli parlo dopo:** *Anna and Roberto? I'll talk to them afterwards.*
- b **gli faccio fare un po' di compiti delle vacanze:** (lit.) *I'm making do to them a bit of holiday homework.* In constructions of this type where both *fare* and the following infinitive (in this case *fare* again) have an object, the object depending on *fare* becomes indirect, e.g. **Faccio firmare questa lettera a Giovanni:** *I'm getting Giovanni to sign this letter.* When a *Giovanni* is replaced by the indirect object pronoun *gli*, we find **GLI faccio firmare questa lettera:** *I'm getting him to sign this letter*; in this latter case the pronoun *gli* precedes both verbs and the noun *lettera* follows them (Note 9b).
- 32 **Salutameli e dagli un bacio da parte mia.** *Give them my love and give them a kiss from me.*
- a **Salutameli:** (lit.) *Greet them* or *Say hello to them for me* We have already seen that the verb *salutare* means *to say goodbye* (L15, N25a); however, it also means *to say hello* as here. **Salutameli** is therefore formed from **Saluta:** (lit.) *Greet* followed by **me:** *for me* followed by **li:** *them*.

- b **dagli un bacio:** *give them a kiss* Here **dagli** is formed from **da': give** (the *tu* command form of *dare*) followed by **gli:** *to them* (Note 31a).
- 33 **Sei libera sul tardi?** *Are you free later on this afternoon?*
- 34 **Penso di no. Alle quattro arriva l'elettricista. Lo devo far entrare e gli devo far vedere il guasto del frigo.** *I don't think so. At four o'clock the electrician is arriving. I must let him in and get him to look at what's wrong with the fridge.*
- a **Lo devo far entrare:** *I must let him in* (lit. *I must make him to come in*) Notice the position of *lo:* *him*; to say **Devo farlo entrare** is also correct.
- b **gli devo far vedere il guasto del frigo:** (lit.) *I must make him see the breakdown of the fridge.* In this phrase, both *far* and *vedere* have objects, so the object of *far* must go into the indirect form *gli:* (lit.) *to him* (Note 31b). As in Note 34a above, pronouns follow normal rules and the word order here could equally well have been **devo fargli vedere il guasto del frigo.**
- 35 **Peccato! Potevamo andare in centro insieme. Io volevo dare un'occhiata ai saldi di fine stagione.** *What a shame! We could have gone into the centre of town together. I wanted to have a look at the end of season sales.*
Potevamo andare: *We could have gone* This really stands for **avremmo potuto andare**, the perfect conditional tense. In speech however, this form is often replaced by the imperfect tense as it is here, e.g. **Avresti potuto telefonarmi** and **Potevi telefonarmi** (more colloquial form): *You could have phoned me.*
- 36 **Pazienza: sarà per un'altra volta. Telefonami domani e combiniamo.** *Never mind: we can do it some other time. Phone me tomorrow and we'll arrange something.*
- a **Pazienza:** *Never mind* (lit. *Patience*) This is often said with a philosophical shrug of the shoulders.
- b **sarà per un'altra volta:** (lit.) *it will be for another time.*

Part three: New words

il formato shape, size, form
 il fotografo photographer
 il numero size

la moda fashion

la svendita sale

alla moda fashion-conscious,
 fashionable

di moda fashionable, in fashion

Part three: Notes

I signori Gambino dal fotografo *Mr. and Mrs. Gambino at the photographer's*

37 Notice how to say *Mr. and Mrs. Gambino*: **i signori Gambino.**

- 38 Come le vogliono? *How do you want them?*
 a Notice that the shop assistant is addressing Mr. and Mrs. Gambino with the **loro**: *you* form here (L9, N18a).
 b **le**: *them* This refers back to **le foto**: *the photos* which are understood from the context.
 39 Allora cercherò di fargliele per mercoledì mattina. *Well then I'll try to get them done for you by Wednesday morning.*
 cercherò di fargliele: *I'll try to do them for you* Here **glie** stands for **gli**: *to or for you* (**loro** form); remember that **gli** can replace **loro**: *to or for you* in spoken Italian (Note 31a). **Le** again refers to **le foto**.

L'amica alla moda *The fashion-conscious girlfriend*

- 40 A person who follows fashion and dresses according to the fashion is **alla moda**.
 41 Le ho prese in una svendita. *I bought them in a sale.* (L10, N8b)
 42 Che numero porti? *What size do you take?*
 Notice that the word **numero** is used for *size* when talking about shoe sizes and remember to use **portare** in expressions of this type (L10, N14).
 43 Me le fai provare? *Will you let me try them?*
 This is the same construction with **fare** that we have seen throughout this lesson; notice that it can sometimes be translated as *let* in English.
 44 Sì, ma come fai a camminare con dei tacchi così alti? *Yes, but how do you manage to walk with such high heels?*
 Notice this colloquial usage of *come* with **fare**.
 45 È un po' difficile, ma sai, sono di moda. *It's rather difficult, but you know, they're in fashion.*
di moda: *in fashion* This is a very widely-used, general expression meaning *fashionable* or *in fashion*.

Lezione diciannove

Lesson nineteen

Part one: New words

il coraggio courage
 il dottore doctor
 il Frascati Frascati (white wine)
 il gelato ice-cream

Dal dottore e in farmacia

At the doctor's and the chemist's

il mal di pancia stomach-ache
 il mal di stomaco stomach-ache
 il mattino morning
 il medico doctor

il reumatismo rheumatism
 lo stomaco stomach

l'afa sultriness, stuffiness
 l'artrite arthritis
 la barba beard
 la faccia face
 la farmacia chemist's shop
 la pace peace
 la pancia stomach

diciannovesimo nineteenth
 tremendo awful, terrible, tremendous

alzarsi to get up
 farsi la barba to have a shave

Part one: Notes

- Non mi sento bene stamattina. *I don't feel well this morning.*
Non mi sento bene: *I don't feel well* **Mi sento**: *I feel* is what is termed a reflexive verb, i.e. one in which the object of the action of the verb is the subject itself. **Mi sento** literally means *I feel myself* just as **Mi chiamo** which we met in Lesson 1 (N1b) and which is another example of a reflexive, literally means *I call myself*.
- Non so se è il gelato che ho mangiato ieri sera o il Frascati che ho bevuto dopo. *I don't know if it's the ice-cream that I ate yesterday evening or the Frascati that I drank afterwards.*
ho bevuto: *I drank* **Bevuto** is the irregular past participle of **bere**.
- Ho mal di stomaco, mal di pancia e la testa che gira. *I've got a pain in my stomach, a pain in my abdomen and my head is spinning.*
mal di stomaco: *stomach-ache* Italians distinguish between the stomach proper, i.e. the part between the esophagus and the intestines which they call **lo stomaco** and the lower stomach or abdomen which they call **la pancia**. Here Paolo says he has a pain in both places. Notice that the expressions **mal di stomaco** and **mal di pancia** are like the phrase **mal di testa** that we have already met (L13, N20a).
- Mia suocera che soffre di reumatismi e di artrite si lamenta continuamente. *My mother-in-law who suffers from rheumatism and arthritis is complaining all the time.*
 - reumatismi**: *rheumatism* *Rheumatism* is often translated by its plural form **i reumatismi** in Italian.
 - si lamenta**: *complains, is complaining* This is another reflexive verb like **mi sento** in Note 1. Reflexive verbs have the same endings as normal verbs but in addition have the reflexive pronoun, e.g. **mi** and **si**, in front

girare to go round
 lamentarsi to complain
 lavarsi to wash oneself, to have a wash
 mi conviene I'd better
 pettinarsi to comb one's hair
 preoccuparsi to be worried
 sbagliarsi to make a mistake
 sentirsi bene to feel well
 soffrire di to suffer from
 spaventarsi to take fright
 vestirsi to get dressed, to dress oneself

altrimenti otherwise
 continuamente continuously
 specie particularly, especially

of them. *Mi* is used for the 1st person singular form whilst *si* is used for the 3rd person singular (Appendix 3). Thus *mi chiamo*: *I call myself* and *mi lamento*: *I'm complaining* but *si chiama*: *he calls himself, she calls herself, you call yourself* (lei form). This is the explanation of *si chiama Maria Teresa* (L1, N6).

- 5 **Veramente è un po' di tempo che anch'io non sto tanto bene, specie al mattino.** *Really, I haven't been very well for some time too, particularly in the morning.*

al mattino: *in the morning* Notice that both **il mattino** and **la mattina** exist in Italian and that there is no difference between them in meaning.

- 6 **Forse mi conviene andare dal medico per poter finire le vacanze in pace.** *Perhaps I'd better go to the doctor's so that I can* (lit. *in order to be able to*) *finish the holidays in peace.*

- a **mi conviene**: *I'd better* **Convenire**, the infinitive form of **conviene**, does exist but the verb is most commonly used in this 3rd person singular form; it literally means *to suit* or *to behove* and is followed by **a** or preceded by the indirect object pronoun, e.g. **A Giovanni conviene partire subito**: *Giovanni ought to leave straight away.*

- b **dal medico**: *to the doctor's* Notice that whilst **dottore** means both a *graduate from university* and a *doctor of medicine*, **medico** is specifically a *doctor of medicine*.

- 7 **Se non mi sbaglio, Alberto ne conosce uno qui vicino.** *If I'm not mistaken, Alberto knows one near here.*

- a **non mi sbaglio**: *I'm not mistaken* This is another example of a reflexive verb (Note 4b). Following the pattern we have seen so far, you should know that *Alberto is mistaken* would be translated by **Alberto si sbaglia**.

- b **Alberto ne conosce uno**: *Alberto knows one* (lit. *of them*) (L10, N8a).

- 8 **Beh, coraggio: ora mi alzo, mi lavo e mi vesto, altrimenti gli altri si preoccupano troppo vedendomi a letto.** *Oh well* (lit. *courage*): *now I'll get up, I'll have a wash and I'll get dressed, otherwise the others will get too worried if they see me in bed.*

- a **ora mi alzo, mi lavo e mi vesto**: *now I'll get up* (lit. *raise myself*), *have a wash* (lit. *wash myself*) and *get dressed* (lit. *dress myself*) These are three more reflexive verbs whose infinitive forms are respectively **alzarsi**, **lavarsi** and **vestirsi**: (lit.) *to raise oneself, to wash oneself* and *to dress oneself*. Remember that *si* is the reflexive pronoun that is used with the 3rd person singular of reflexive verbs (Note 4b) and therefore means not only *himself, herself, itself* but also *oneself*. Notice that reflexive pronouns follow the verb when it is in the infinitive form; the infinitives (here **alzare**, **lavare** and **vestire**) of course drop their final *e*.

- b **mi lavo**: *I'll have a wash* Compare the reflexive form **mi lavo** with the use of **lavare**: *to wash* that we saw in Lesson 5 (N13).

- c **gli altri si preoccupano**: *the others will worry* **Preoccuparsi** is yet another reflexive verb and means *to worry*. Notice that as well as being the reflexive pronoun for the 3rd person singular, *si* is also the reflexive pronoun for the 3rd person plural meaning literally *themselves* (Appendix 3).

- 9 **Se non mi faccio subito la barba e non mi pettino, Maria Teresa si spaventa quando mi vede.** *If I don't have a shave and comb my hair straight away, Maria Teresa will get a shock when she sees me.*
mi faccio la barba: *I have a shave* (lit. *I do the beard to myself*) *He has a shave* is translated as **Si fa la barba** whilst *They shave* is **Si fanno la barba**; from this you can see that it is the verb *fare* that becomes reflexive in this case. Compare the sentence **Mi faccio la barba**: *I shave myself* with **Gli faccio la barba**: *I shave him* (lit. *I do the beard to him*) and **Si fa la barba**: *He shaves himself* with **Gli fa la barba**: *He shaves him* (lit. *He does the beard to him*).

Part two: New words

l'ambulatorio surgery
l'autunno autumn
il colpo blow, stroke
il colpo di tosse cough
il consiglio advice
il cuore heart
il dentifricio toothpaste
il dolore pain
il farmacista pharmacist, chemist
il fegato liver
il flacone bottle
il fluoro fluoride
il mal di gola sore throat
il polmone lung
il raffreddore cold
il ricostituente tonic
il riposo rest
lo sciroppo medicine, syrup
il tranquillante tranquillizer
il tubetto tube

la circolazione circulation
la compressa tablet, lozenge
la cura treatment
la dieta diet
la gola throat
l'indigestione indigestion
l'iniezione injection
la limonata lemonade

la lingua tongue
la mutua national insurance
la pastiglia tablet
la ricetta prescription
la saponetta bar of soap
la tosse cough
la vitamina vitamin

destro right
effervescente effervescent
forte strong
grave serious
leggero slight, mild
sano healthy

annoiarsi to get bored
chiamarsi to be called
correre to run
dimenticarsi to forget
dimostrare to show
divertirsi to enjoy oneself
esagerare to exaggerate, to overdo
figurarsi to imagine
ingrossare to enlarge
mettersi a dieta to go on a diet
muoversi to move around
ricordarsi to remember
ripassare to call back
riposarsi to rest

sentirsi male to feel ill	a posto all right
spogliarsi to get undressed	
stancarsi to tire oneself, to get tired	perbacco good heavens
svegliare to wake up	
tranquillizzarsi to put one's mind at rest	

Part two: Notes

Preoccupazioni Worries

- 10 **Mi sembri un po' giù, Paolo. Ti senti male?** *You seem rather down to me, Paolo. Do you feel ill?*
Ti senti male?: *Do you feel ill?* **Ti senti** is the **tu** form of the reflexive verb **sentirsi** that we first met in Note 1; notice that the reflexive pronoun for the **tu** form of the verb is **ti** (Appendix 3). Learn the two useful expressions **sentirse bene:** *to feel well* and **sentirsi male:** *to feel ill*.
- 11 **Dev'essere una leggera indigestione.** *It must be (a) mild indigestion.*
 a **Leggero** normally means *light*, but can also be translated as *mild* or *slight*.
 b Notice that whereas we talk about *indigestion* in English, we must use the indefinite article **una** or **un'** in front of **indigestione** in Italian.
- 12 **Ti stanchi troppo in questi giorni. Dovresti riposarti un po', invece di correre su e giù per Roma.** *You're getting overtired (lit. in) these days. You should have a bit of a rest instead of running around (lit. up and down through) Rome.*
 a **Ti stanchi:** (lit.) *You're tiring yourself* The infinitive of this reflexive verb is **stancarsi:** *to get tired*. Notice once again that in the **tu** form of reflexive verbs, **ti** is used as the reflexive pronoun (Note 10).
 b **Dovresti riposarti:** (lit.) *You should rest yourself* Here the infinitive form **riposarsi:** (lit.) *to rest oneself* becomes **riposarti:** (lit.) *to rest yourself* because Maria Teresa is talking to Paolo as **tu**. Further examples of this type are **Dovrei riposarmi:** *I should rest (lit. myself)* and **Giovanna dovrebbe riposarsi:** *Giovanna should rest (lit. herself)*.
- 13 **A proposito, ti ricordi l'indirizzo del medico di Alberto?** *By the way, do you remember the address of Alberto's doctor?*
ti ricordi?: *do you remember?* This is the **tu** form of the reflexive verb **ricordarsi:** *to remember*. You have already seen **ricordare:** *to remember* used as a non-reflexive verb (L4); both **ricordare** and **ricordarsi** are used in everyday Italian and there is no difference in meaning between the two.
- 14 **No, non me lo ricordo. Ma è una cosa così grave?** *No, I don't remember it. But is it so serious (lit. it is a thing so serious)?*
non me lo ricordo: *I don't remember it* Here **lo** refers to **l'indirizzo** and the **mi** of **mi ricordo:** *I remember* has become **me** in front of the pronoun **lo**.

- 15 **Figurati! Voglio solo tranquillizzarmi.** *Just imagine! I only want to put my mind at rest (lit. calm myself).*
Figurati!: *Just imagine!* This is the **tu** command form of the reflexive verb **figurarsi:** *to imagine, to fancy*. Notice that **figura**, the **tu** command form of **figurare**, follows the normal rule for **are** verbs and that the reflexive pronoun **ti** is added to it at the end. Thus the **tu** command form of **alzarsi:** *to get up* is **alzati:** *get up*; that of **lavarsi:** *to wash* is **lavati:** *have a wash*; that of **ricordarsi:** *to remember* is **ricordati:** *remember*. In the cases of **alzati**, **lavati** and **ricordati**, the stress in pronunciation falls on the same vowel as it would if the pronoun were not added (Appendix 3)
- 16 **Quando riceve il tuo dottore, Alberto?** *When does your doctor see patients (lit. receive), Alberto?*
- 17 **Tutti i giorni dalle due alle quattro nello studio.** *Every day from two till five at his home (lit. in the study).*
 Patients that a doctor sees at his **studio** (which is normally a room in his home) are usually private patients (L5, N20).
- 18 **Lavora solo in ambulatorio per la mutua.** *He only works in the surgery for the insurance companies.*
 a **in ambulatorio:** *in the surgery* In Italy there is no National Insurance scheme organised by the State. Workers and employers both contribute to private medical insurance schemes that are recognised by and run with the approval of the State. Not all doctors treat patients under these schemes, but those that do, do not see these patients at their **studio** but at the **ambulatorio:** *the surgery or consulting rooms* which is a public place set aside for that purpose.
 b **La mutua** is the collective name given to the private insurance schemes.
- 19 **Io ci sono stato in autunno quando ho fatto una brutta influenza con mal di gola, raffreddore e tosse.** *I went (lit. was) there in the autumn when I had the 'flu badly with a sore throat, a cold and a cough.*
ho fatto una brutta influenza: *I had the 'flu badly* Notice that *to have the 'flu* is **fare un'influenza** in Italian.
- Dal dottor Cavalli *At the doctor's*
- 20 **Che cos'ho, secondo lei, dottore?** *What do you think is the matter with me, doctor (lit. What have I got, in your opinion, doctor)?*
- 21 **Si spogli intanto. Da quello che mi dice non è niente di grave.** *Get undressed in the meantime. From what you tell me it's nothing serious.*
 a **Si spogli:** *Get undressed (lit. Undress yourself)* This is the **lei** command form of **spogliarsi:** *to get undressed*. Notice that the **lei** command form of **spogliare** follows the normal pattern for **are** verbs but that the reflexive pronoun **si** precedes **spogli**; this pattern is typical of the **lei**

command form of reflexive verbs. Compare it with the *tu* command where the reflexive pronoun *ti* is joined to the end of the verb (Note 15).

- b **Da quello che mi dice:** *From what (lit. that which) you tell me* It is impossible to use *che* by itself in this type of phrase (L6, N7b).
- 22 **Perbacco, non li dimostra. Di che cosa si lamenta? Sentiamo il cuore . . . i polmoni . . . un colpo di tosse . . . un altro. Tutto a posto.** *Good heavens, you don't look it (lit. you don't show them). What are you complaining about? Let's listen to your heart . . . your lungs . . . (give) a cough . . . another. Everything fine.*
- a **un colpo di tosse:** *a cough* (lit. *a blow of cough*) The word **colpo** literally means *a stroke* or *a blow*; here the doctor is asking Paolo to cough.
- b **a posto:** *fine* This is a very useful phrase meaning literally *in its right place*; thus to say **tutto a posto** means *everything O.K. i.e. everything's fine* or *as it should be*.
- 23 **Mezza bottiglia di rosso al pasto.** *Half a bottle of red at meal-times.*
al pasto: (lit.) *at the meal-time*.
- 24 **Mi faccia vedere la lingua . . . Si vesta pure.** *Show me your tongue . . . Go ahead and get dressed.*
Si vesta pure: *Go ahead and get dressed* (lit. *Dress yourself nonetheless*).
Si vesta is the *lei* command form of *vestirsi: to get dressed* (Note 21a).

La cura The treatment

- 25 **Macché. Lei è sano come un pesce. Ma segua il mio consiglio: si metta a dieta e si riposi.** *Good heavens no. You're as fit as a fiddle. But follow my advice: go on a diet and rest.*
Lei è sano come un pesce: *You're as fit as a fiddle* (lit. *You're healthy like a fish*). This is an interesting idiom to remember.
- 26 **Più riposi di così: siamo in vacanza da un mese.** *It would be difficult to rest more than this: we've been on holiday for a month.*
Più riposo di così: (lit.) *More rest than thus* Here Paolo is only half expressing what he means.
- 27 **Già, ma vi divertite a girare mezza Italia.** *Yes, but your relaxation is (lit. you're enjoying yourselves by) going round half of Italy.*
- a **vi divertite:** (lit.) *you enjoy yourselves* This is the *voi* form of the reflexive verb *divertirsi: to enjoy oneself*. Notice that the reflexive pronoun used for the *voi* form is *vi* (Appendix 3). Further examples of this form are **vi riposate:** *you rest* and **vi sentite bene:** *you feel well*.
- b **girare:** *going round* Notice that **girare** is used for *turning* (L11, N22d), *turning around* (L13, N50), *spinning* (Note 3) and for *travelling around*.
- 28 **Sa, io e mia moglie ci annoiamo a star sempre nello stesso posto. Ci piace muoverci.** *You know, my wife and I get bored always staying in the same place. We like moving about.*

- a **ci annoiamo:** *we get bored* This is the *noi* form of the reflexive verb *annoiarsi: to get bored, to be bored*. Notice that the reflexive pronoun for the *noi* form is *ci*. Further examples of this form are **ci divertiamo:** *we're enjoying ourselves* and **ci alziamo:** *we're getting up*.
- b **Ci piace muoverci:** (lit.) *We like moving ourselves* Remember that the *ci* at the end of *muovere* is the reflexive pronoun for the *noi* form and notice that this construction is of the same type as in Note 12b. Thus, **Mi piace muovermi:** *I like moving around*; **Ti piace muoverti:** *You like moving around*; **Gli piace muoversi:** *He likes moving around* etc.
- 29 **Intanto io le do una piccola cura per il fegato.** *Meanwhile I'll give you something (lit. a small treatment) for your liver.*
cura: *treatment* Notice that *cura* does not mean *cure*, but *treatment*.

In farmacia At the chemist's

- 30 **Lo sciroppo . . . ce l'abbiamo, ma le pastiglie devo ordinargliele.** *We've got the medicine but I'll have to order the tablets for you.*
- a **ce l'abbiamo** In Italian it is impossible to use one of the pronouns *lo*, *la*, *li* or *le* alone with the verb *avere* where *avere* means *to have* or *to possess*; we must insert *ce* in front of the pronoun in order to give weight to the sentence, e.g. **Non ho la chiave; ce l'hai tu?** *I haven't got the key; have you got it?*
- b **devo ordinargliele:** *I must order them for you* Remember that pronouns can be added to infinitives (L12, N5b). Here *glie* stands for *le: for* or *to you*, while *le: them* refers back to *le pastiglie*.
- 31 **Quando ci saranno?** *When will you have them* (lit. *When will they be there*)?
- 32 **Come si chiama? Non mi ricordo più.** *What's it called? I don't remember (lit. any more).*
Come si chiama?: *What's it called?* Remember that we met the verb *chiamarsi: to be called* in Lesson 1 (Notes 1b and 6). When speaking to someone you do not know, **Come si chiama?:** (lit.) *How do you call yourself?* is the normal way of asking the person's name.
- 33 **Oh sì, mi dimenticavo: un tubetto di dentifricio al fluoro e due saponette grandi.** *Oh yes, I was forgetting: a small tube of fluoride toothpaste and two large bars of soap.*
- a **mi dimenticavo:** *I was forgetting* This is the 1st person singular form of the reflexive verb *dimenticarsi: to forget*, used here in the imperfect tense. Both *dimenticare* and the reflexive *dimenticarsi* are used with exactly the same meaning in everyday Italian.
- b **due saponette:** *two bars of soap* The general word for *soap* is *il sapone*, whilst *a bar of soap* is *una saponetta*.

19 Part three: New words

l'attacco attack
l'attacco di cuore heart attack
il nonno grandfather

la colite colitis
la febbre temperature, fever
la malattia illness
la nausea sickness

la nuora daughter-in-law

cavarsela to get by, to pull through
guarire to recover
sentire dire to hear

in fin di vita dying

Part three: Notes

Una malattia grave A serious illness

34 È in fin di vita. He's dying.

To say that someone is in fin di vita literally means he is at the end of his life, i.e. dying.

35 Non lo sapevo. Che cosa è successo? I did not know (it). What happened?

è successo: happened This is the passato prossimo of succedere: to happen. Notice that it forms its perfect tense with essere.

36 Che non se la caverà. That he won't pull through.
se la caverà: he will pull through This is the future tense of cavarsela: to get by or to pull through. It has some similarities to farcela: to manage to (L12, N32b) in the way the persons of the verb are formed, the difference being that the se of cavarsela is really si, the 3rd person singular reflexive pronoun, which has changed to se in front of the pronoun la. Like farcela, however, the la part of the verb does not change. The present tense of cavarsela is as follows:

me la cavo	ce la caviamo
te la cavi	ve la cavate
se la cava	se la cavano.

Una brutta vacanza A bad holiday

37 Ho sentito dire che c'erano molti casi di colite al mare. I heard that there were a lot of cases of colitis at the sea-side.

Ho sentito dire: I heard (lit. I've heard say) Notice this useful way of saying that you have heard something or heard someone say something.

38 Ma ora è guarita, vero? But now she's recovered, hasn't she?

Guarire: to recover is another of the verbs that uses essere and not avere to form its passato prossimo (Appendix 6c).

Lezione venti

Lesson twenty

Part one: New words

il chilometro kilometre
il ferito injured person
il giovane young person
l'incidente accident
il minimo least
il motociclista motorcyclist
il sorpasso passing, overtaking

l'ambulanza ambulance
la centoventotto 128 car
la chiamata call
la curva bend
la moto motorcycle
la sbandata skid
la scarpata bank, slope
la statale main road

proveniente coming from

Part one: Notes

- 1 "Chiamata urgente dal 528. Sono al chilometro venti della statale di Tivoli." "Urgent call from 528. I'm at the twenty kilometre mark on the main road to Tivoli."
a dal 528: from 528 This is the policeman's code number.
b al chilometro venti: at the twenty kilometre mark Distances on main roads (except motorways) are still marked by milestones or posts.
c la statale: the main road This is an abbreviation for strada statale which is the term used for a main road that is not a motorway.
- 2 Che sbandata ha preso quella centoventotto! What a skid that 128 went into (lit. took)!
quella centoventotto: that 128 Here quella is in the feminine singular because it refers to the feminine word macchina or auto which is understood; the policeman is talking about a Fiat 128 car.
- 3 È andata a sbattere contro un albero per evitare una moto in sorpasso proveniente dalla direzione opposta. It went and crashed against a tree in order to avoid a motorcycle that was overtaking and coming from the opposite direction.

Un incidente

An accident

ventesimo twentieth

accorgersi di to notice
evitare to avoid
fermarsi to stop
ringraziare to thank
sbandare to skid
sbattere to hit, to knock, to crash
scivolare to slide
sterzare to steer, to swerve
superare to overtake
togliere to take away

contro against

come minimo at least
in curva on a bend
in sorpasso overtaking

- a **È andata a sbattere:** *It went and crashed* Notice how **È andata** is used colloquially here.
- b **Sbattere** is a verb that implies sudden, violent action.
- 4 **Questi giovani: non pensano mica a quello che fanno.** *These young people: they don't think (lit. at all) about what they're doing.*
Questi giovani: *These young people* Notice how some adjectives can also be used as nouns, e.g. **la vecchia:** *the old woman*.
- 5 **Superare in curva: gli toglieremo la patente, come minimo, a quel motociclista.** *Overtaking on a bend: the very least we'll do to that motorcyclist is to take away his licence.*
 Notice the colloquial way in which the policeman says **gli toglieremo la patente:** (lit.) *we'll take away the licence to him* and then adds **a quel motociclista:** (lit.) *to that motorcyclist*.
- 6 **E questi altri qui: guidavano quasi in mezzo alla strada e dicono che non si sono accorti di quell'altro che arrivava giù come un pazzo.** *And these others here: they were driving almost in the middle of the road and say that they didn't see (lit. notice) the motorcyclist (lit. that other one) coming at them like a maniac.*
- a **non si sono accorti di:** *didn't notice* This is the perfect tense of the reflexive verb **accorgersi:** *to notice*. All reflexive verbs form their perfect tense with **essere** and like the other verbs that go with **essere** in the perfect, the past participle must agree with the subject of the verb, i.e. the person who is doing the action. In **si sono accorti** therefore, **accorti** is the masculine plural of the irregular past participle of **accorgere**.
- b Notice that *to notice something* is **accorgersi DI qualcosa**.
- c **che arrivava giù:** *who was coming at them* (lit. *arriving down*)
- 7 **Si sono visti la moto davanti e hanno sterzato, sbandando.** *They (suddenly) saw the motorcycle in front of them, swerved and skidded.*
Si sono visti la moto davanti: *They saw the motorcycle in front of them*
 This stands for **hanno visto la moto davanti a sé**. However, in the colloquial form we have here, **a sé** is replaced by **si** which makes the verb reflexive. Consequently it uses **essere** to help form the perfect tense and the past participle **visto** becomes **visti** to agree with the masculine plural subject (Note 6a).
- 8 **Possono ringraziare il cielo che si sono fermati contro un albero e non sono scivolati giù per la scarpata.** *They can thank their lucky stars (lit. the heavens) that they ended up (lit. stopped) against a tree and didn't slide down the bank.*
- a **si sono fermati:** *they stopped* This is the 3rd person plural of the reflexive verb **fermarsi:** *to stop* in the perfect tense (Note 6a).
- b **non sono scivolati giù:** *didn't slide down* **Scivolare** is a verb that can use either **essere** or **avere** to help form its perfect tense.

Part two: New words

il calmante sedative
 il cerotto sticking-plaster
 il chilometraggio mileage
 il disgraziato wretch, fool, idiot
 il disinfettante disinfectant
 il garage garage
 il garagista garage-owner
 il graffio scratch
 il guidatore driver
 il limite limit
 il livido bruise
 il parabrezza windscreen
 il pericolo danger
 il pronto soccorso first aid post, casualty department
 il raggio X-ray, ray
 il soccorso help, aid
 il taglio cut
 il vetro glass

l'auto a noleggio hired car
 la cascata waterfall
 la centoventisei 126 car
 la commozione cerebrale concussion
 la costola rib
 la fasciatura bandaging
 la forza strength
 la fronte forehead
 l'infermiera nurse
 l'osservazione observation
 la tariffa rate, tariff

la velocità speed

abituato used to
 cerebrale cerebral, brain
 ferito injured
 shockato shocked
 veloce fast

consigliare to recommend
 dividere to share
 fare male to hurt
 farsi male to hurt oneself
 filare to drive, to travel
 incendiarsi to catch fire
 ingessare to put in plaster
 ricoverare to take into hospital
 rimediare to put right
 riportare to bring back
 rompere to break
 sentirsi di to feel like, to feel up to
 sostenere to hold up, to support
 svenire to faint

entro by

forte strongly

a noleggio for hire
 attento! watch out!
 da... in poi from... onwards
 meno male thank God, just as well
 visto che since

Part two: Notes

Un'auto a noleggio *Hiring a car* (lit. *A car for hire*)

- 9 **Parla tu, visto che sei tu il guidatore.** *You do the talking since (lit. seen that) you're the driver.*
- a **Parla tu:** *You do the talking* Here **Parla** is the **tu** command form of **parlare**; Alberto adds **tu** for emphasis.
- b **sei tu il guidatore:** *you're the driver* Here again Alberto uses **tu** for emphasis; notice its emphatic position after the verb **sei**.
- 10 **Meglio la centoventotto, se ti senti di guidarla.** *The 128 would be better, if you feel you can drive it.*
se ti senti di guidarla: *if you feel you can drive it* We have already seen

sentirsi: *to feel* (L19, N1). However, *sentirsi* followed by *di* has the sense of *to feel like* or *to feel up to* doing something, e.g. **Non mi sento di uscire oggi:** *I don't feel like going out today.*

- 11 **Ci sono limiti di chilometraggio?** *Are there any limits on the mileage?* Chilometraggio is distance measured in kilometres.

- 12 **No, potete fare quanti chilometri volete.** *No, you can do as many kilometres as you like.*

quanti chilometri volete: *as many kilometres as you like* (lit.) *how many kilometres you want* Notice this useful construction and that there is no Italian translation for the second *as* in *as many as you like*; further examples are **Puoi invitare quanta gente vuoi:** *You can invite as many people as you want* and **Compreremo quanti biglietti saranno necessari:** *We'll buy as many tickets as are necessary.*

- 13 **Dalle otto in poi.** *From eight o'clock onwards.*

Notice the useful expression *da ... in poi:* *from ... onwards*, e.g. **da domani in poi:** *from tomorrow onwards.*

- 14 **E quando dobbiamo riportargliela?** *And when do we have to bring it back to you?*

L'incidente *The accident*

- 15 **Come fili veloce, Pierluigi.** *How fast you're driving, Pierluigi.*

a **Filare** is a colloquial verb meaning *to travel fast* or *to move quickly*.

b **Veloce:** *fast* is here an adjective agreeing with **Pierluigi** but following the verb and having the function of an adverb. A further example is **I ragazzi guidano veloci:** *The boys are driving fast*, **veloci** taking the masculine plural form to agree with **i ragazzi**.

- 16 **Io ci sono abituata.** *I'm used to it.*

Essere abituato a qualcosa means *to be used to something*, e.g. **Sono abituato a questa macchina:** *I'm used to this car.* However, **a questa macchina** can be replaced by **ci:** *to it*. **Ci sono abituato:** *I'm used to it.*

- 17 **Dove si va?** *Where are we going?*

Here Elisabetta uses the impersonal **si:** *one* to mean *we*.

- 18 **Tenetevi forte!** *Hold tight!*

This is the **voi** command form of the reflexive verb **tenersi:** (lit.) *to hold oneself*. **Tenetevi** is typical of the **voi** command form of reflexives as the reflexive pronoun **vi** follows and is joined to **tenete**.

- 19 **Se la macchina si incendia ... Vi siete fatti male?** *If the car catches fire ... Are you hurt* (lit. *Have you done hurt to yourselves*)?

- 20 **Anna è svenuta.** *Anna's fainted.*

Svenire: *to faint* is a compound of **venire** and like **venire** uses **essere** to help form its perfect tense.

- 21 **Mi sarò rotto una costola.** *I must have broken a rib.*

- a **Rotto** is the irregular past participle of **rompere:** *to break*.

- b **Mi sarò rotto** is the future perfect of **rompersi** (*qualcosa*): (lit.) *to break (something) to oneself*. As possessive adjectives cannot be used with parts of the body (L6, N3a), the reflexive pronoun is used to show what the person has done to himself. Further examples are **Elisabetta si è rotta il braccio:** *Elisabetta has broken her arm* and **Mi sono lavato le mani:** *I've washed my hands.*

- 22 **Ti sostengo io. Forza, Elisabetta. Ferma una macchina e fa' chiamare la polizia e l'ambulanza.** *I'll hold (lit. support) you. Go on (lit. Strength) Elisabetta. Stop a car and get someone to call the police and ambulance.*

- a **Sostengo** is the 1st person singular of **sostenere**, a compound of **tenere**.

- b **Ferma:** *Stop* **Fermare** means *to stop* where there is an object to the verb (here **una macchina**). Where there is no object to the verb, the reflexive form **fermarsi** must be used, e.g. **L'autobus si ferma:** *The bus stops* (Note 8a).

Al pronto soccorso dell'ospedale *At the casualty department of the hospital*

- 23 **Solo qualche taglio e qualche livido. Lei se l'è cavata con poco.** *Only a few cuts and bruises. You've got off very lightly.*

Lei se l'è cavata: *You've got off* This is the perfect tense of the reflexive verb **cavarsela** (L19, N36). Like all reflexives, it forms its perfect tense with the help of **essere**, the **la** part of **cavarsela** changing to **l'** in front of **è** and the past participle **cavato** changing to **cavata** to agree with the direct object pronoun **l'** (standing for **la**) that precedes it.

- 24 **Non preoccuparti per me. Mi fanno male le costole, ma il dottore ha detto che non mi ingessa.** *Don't worry about me. My ribs hurt, but the doctor said that he's not going to put me in plaster.*

Mi fanno male le costole: *My ribs hurt* (lit. *The ribs hurt to me*) **Fare male** means *to hurt*. Remembering that possessive adjectives cannot be used with parts of the body, Pierluigi makes quite clear whose ribs are hurting by using the indirect object pronoun **mi:** *to me*. Further examples are **Gli fanno male gli occhi:** *His eyes hurt*; **Le fa male il piede:** *Her foot hurts* and **Non ti fa male la mano?:** *Doesn't your hand hurt?*

- 25 **Ma lei si è accorto che ha dei tagli in fronte? Dove se li è fatti?** *But have you noticed that you've got some cuts on your forehead? Where did you get them?* **Dove se li è fatti?:** *Where did you get them* (lit. *Where did you do them to yourself*)? Here **si:** *to yourself* has become **se** in front of the pronoun **li** (L17, N3). **Li:** *them* refers to **dei tagli** of the previous sentence whilst the past participle **fatto** has changed to **fatti** to agree with the preceding direct object pronoun (Note 23).

- 26 **No, non me ne sono accorto. Saranno solo dei graffi: forse me li sono fatti con il vetro del parabrezza.** *No, I didn't notice them. They'll only be scratches: perhaps I did them with the glass of the windscreen.*

non me ne sono accorto: *I didn't notice them* Remembering that **accorgersi** is followed by **di** when it means *to notice* something, **ne** replaces **dei graffi** in the sentence **non mi sono accorto dei graffi** and **mi** changes to **me** in front of the pronoun **ne**.

- 27 **Bisogna farle fare i raggi e se è il caso, ricoverarla.** *We must get her to have some X-rays and, if necessary, keep her in hospital.*
 28 **Cosa s'è fatta?** *What has she done* (lit. *to herself*)?
 Here the past participle **fatto** becomes **fatta** to agree with the feminine subject of the reflexive verb (Note 6a).

La notizia a casa *Letting them know at home*

- 29 **Sono venuto all'ospedale perché una mia amica si è fatta male.** *I've come to the hospital because a friend of mine has been hurt.*
una mia amica: *a friend of mine* Notice this useful construction; further examples are **un nostro amico:** *a friend of ours*, **due suoi cugini:** *two cousins of his*, **quel vostro impiegato:** *that employee of yours*.
 30 **Meno male. Dov'è successo?** *Thank goodness. Where did it happen?*

Part three: New words

il camion lorry
il carro attrezzi breakdown van
il diritto right
il freno brake
l'infermiere male nurse, ambulance-man
il pedone pedestrian
il tamponamento collision from behind

l'assicurazione insurance
la gamba leg

assicurare to insure
investire to run over
mettersi a to begin to
rimorchiare to tow

di colpo suddenly

Part three: Notes

Tamponamento *Collision from behind*

- 31 **Non volevo mica investire quel pedone.** *I certainly didn't want to run over that pedestrian.*
 32 **Lo so, ma quello lì si è messo a correre.** *I know, but that idiot (lit. that one there) started to run.*
si è messo: *started* This is the perfect tense of the reflexive verb **mettersi a:** *to begin to* Where **mettersi** means *to begin*, it is always followed by **a** and an infinitive.

Sull'ambulanza *In the ambulance*

- 33 **Mi sarà rotta una gamba.** *I must have broken a leg.*

- 34 **Non si muova: può farsi ancora più male.** *Don't move: you might make the pain worse* (lit. *you can hurt yourself even more*).
Non si muova: *Don't move* To make the negative command of all reflexive verbs in the **lei** form, you merely place **non** in front of the **lei** command form.
 35 **Che cosa ne hanno fatto della macchina?** *What have they done with the car?*
 In this sentence **ne** is not essential to the grammatical structure but has been added as a colloquial extra.
 36 **Gliela rimorchiano a casa con il carro attrezzi.** *They're towing it home for you with the breakdown van.*
 37 **Non si preoccupi ora: l'assicurazione pagherà.** *Don't worry now: the insurance will pay.* (Note 34)

Lezione ventuno

Lesson twenty-one

Alla radio e alla televisione

On the radio and the television

Part one: New words

il romanzo novel
la morte death
la radio radio
la tv = la televisione television

obbligato obliged
stupido stupid

ventunesimo twenty-first
annoiarsi a morte to be bored to death
fuori pericolo out of danger
ventiquattro twenty-four

Part one: Notes

- 1 **Alla radio e alla televisione** *On the radio and the television*
 - a **Alla radio:** *On the radio* Notice that **radio** is a feminine word.
 - b Notice that to say **ON the radio** and **ON the television**, we say **ALLA radio** e **ALLA televisione**.
- 2 **Mi annoio a morte: ho letto tutti i romanzi che avevo, ho scritto un mucchio di cartoline, e ho risposto alle lettere che ho ricevuto mentre ero via.** *I'm bored to death: I've read all the novels I had, I've written a pile of postcards, and I've replied to the letters that I received while I was away.*

- ho letto: *I've read* Letto is the irregular past participle of leggere.
- 3 È stata dichiarata fuori pericolo dopo ventiquattr'ore, ed è stata portata a casa in ambulanza. *She was declared out of danger after twenty-four hours and was brought home in an ambulance.*
- a È stata dichiarata: *She was declared* This is an example of what is known as the passive voice of a verb. It is formed in exactly the same way as in English, i.e. by using the appropriate form of the verb *to be*: *essere* followed by a past participle, that in Italian agrees with the subject of the verb. Thus, *È stata*: *She was* is followed by the past participle *dichiarata*: *declared*.
- b è stata portata a casa: *she was brought home* Here again *è stata portata* is an example of the passive (Note a above).
- 4 Le è stato detto di riposarsi per qualche giorno. *She was told to rest for a few days.*
- a Le è stato detto: *She was told* (lit. *To her it was said*) Here the subject of the verb, *it*, is understood; we have to use *le*: *to her* because *dire*: *to say, to tell* must always be followed by *a* and the name of a person or preceded by an indirect object pronoun as here. In Italian only the direct (and never the indirect) object of a verb can be the subject of a passive construction; e.g. in the sentence *Luigi cucina il pranzo*: *Luigi is cooking the lunch*, *il pranzo* is the object of *cucina* and the sentence can be made passive by making *il pranzo* the subject: *Il pranzo è cucinato da Luigi*: *The lunch is cooked by Luigi*. The sentence *Il mio fidanzato mi manda la lettera*: *My fiancé is sending me the letter* can only be made passive by making *la lettera* the subject: *La lettera mi è mandata dal mio fidanzato*: *The letter is sent to me by my fiancé*.
- b Le è stato detto di riposarsi: *She was told to rest* *To tell someone TO do something* is *dire a qualcuno DI fare qualcosa*.
- 5 Chissà cosa c'è alla radio o alla tv. *I wonder what's on the radio or TV.* alla tv: *on the TV* Notice that the small letters *tv* are used in Italian where we use capitals in English.
- 6 Nessuno ha comprato il Radiocorriere o il giornale di oggi? *Hasn't anyone bought the Radiocorriere or today's paper?*
The *Radiocorriere* is a weekly magazine that lists all the national radio and television programmes.

Part two: New words

l'arbitro referee
l'autografo autograph
il calciatore footballer
il campo field

il centinaio (pl. le centinaia) about a hundred
il complesso group, band
il deputato deputy

il dopopranzo afternoon
l'emendamento amendment
il festival festival
il giocatore player
il giornale radio radio news
il giornalista reporter, interviewer
il migliaio (pl. le migliaia) about a thousand
l'onorevole Member of Parliament
il personaggio personality
il pubblico public
il Senato Senate
il successo success
il telegiornale television news

la Camera dei Deputati Chamber of Deputies
la (or il) cantante singer
la dichiarazione announcement
l'intervista interview
la legge law
la partita match, game
la polemica polemic, discussion
la proposta proposal, offer
la proposta di legge parliamentary bill
la rete channel, network
la riserva reserve
la squadra team

la tassa tax
la trasmissione broadcast
la trasmissione televisiva television broadcast

fiscale fiscal, tax
giusto just, correct, right
lirico lyric
migliore best
squalificato suspended
violento violent

accendere to turn on, to light
accogliere to receive
ammirare to admire
approvare to approve
ascoltare to listen to
cantare to sing
proporre to propose, to offer, to suggest
rifiutare to refuse
trasmettere to broadcast

decisamente definitely
in vigore in force

zero nil

Part two: Notes

I programmi alla radio The programmes on the radio

- 7 Che cosa ti interessa sapere? *What do you want (lit. does it interest you) to know?*
- 8 Il telegiornale sulla rete uno, ma sarà già finito, e poi non c'è più niente fino a stasera. *The (television) news on channel one, but it will be over by now, and then there's nothing until this evening.*
- a Il telegiornale is the name given to television news programmes.
- b When talking about a particular channel on the television or a particular station on the radio we can use the preposition *su*: *on* (c.f. Note 1b).
- 9 Forse riesco ancora a sentire il giornale radio del dopopranzo. *Perhaps I can still manage to listen to the afternoon news on the radio.*
riesco . . . a sentire: I can manage to Remember that this derives from *riuscire* (L12, N2a).
- 10 Sì, sulla radiouno viene trasmesso ora. *Yes, it's on radio one now.*

viene trasmesso: *it's being broadcast* Another way of forming the passive voice is to use the verb *venire* instead of *essere*; the two ways are virtually interchangeable, but *venire* tends to be used more when the action is in the process of taking place, as it is here. Thus, Giovanna could have said **Il programma è trasmesso alle due** or **Il programma viene trasmesso alle due**, but because she uses *ora*: *now* in the dialogue, she prefers to use *viene* and not *è*.

- 11 **Accendi tu, per piacere, e poi se vuoi ascoltiamo le interviste.** *You turn it on please, and then, if you like, we can listen to the interviews.*
- a **Accendi tu:** *You turn it on* **Accendere** (lit. *to light*) is the verb used for *turning on* the radio, the television, the light and the gas.
- b **ascoltiamo:** *we can listen to* Notice the basic difference between **ascoltare:** *to listen to* and **sentire:** *to hear*, e.g. **Ascolto la radio:** *I'm listening to the radio* but **Sento la radio:** *I can hear the radio*. **Sentire** is also sometimes translated as *listen* in English (L8, N26a).

Intervista con una cantante famosa *Interview with a famous singer*

- 12 **Quando è iniziato il suo successo?** *When did you have your first success* (lit. *When did your success begin*)?
è iniziato?: *did it begin?* In common with several other verbs, **iniziare** can use either *essere* or *avere* to help form its perfect tense, depending on the sense of the sentence. When these verbs have a direct object, *avere* is used, e.g. **Ho iniziato il corso:** *I've begun the course* (il corso being the direct object); when however the verb has no direct object (as in this sentence), *essere* is used, e.g. **Il programma è iniziato alle quattro:** *The programme began at four o'clock* (Appendix 6c).
- 13 **Qual è il pubblico che la ammira di più?** *Who are your greatest admirers* (lit. *Which is the public that admires you most*)?
di più: *most* Notice that **di più** means *most* when it follows a verb.
- 14 **Mi scrivono centinaia di lettere, mi chiedono migliaia di autografi e mi seguono dappertutto.** *They write me hundreds of letters, they ask me for thousands of autographs and they follow me everywhere.*
- 15 **Le è stato proposto di cantare al festival di gennaio.** *You have been asked* (lit. *It has been proposed to you*) *to sing at the January festival.*
- a **Le è stato proposto:** *You have been asked* This is the same type of construction as in Note 4a; as the construction is **proporre qualcosa A qualcuno:** *to propose something TO someone*, the indirect object pronoun **le:** *to you* must be used here.
- b **proposto:** *proposed* Notice the irregular past participle of **proporre.**
- 16 **Le sono state fatte molte proposte di matrimonio da quando lei è un "personaggio"?** *Have you had many proposals of marriage since you've become a "personality"?*

- a **Le sono state fatte molte proposte?:** *Have many proposals been made to you* (lit. *To you have been made many proposals*)? Here **molte proposte** is the subject of the verb and the two past participles **state** and **fatte** accordingly appear in the feminine plural form to agree with it.
- b **da quando lei è un "personaggio"?** *since you've become* (lit. *since when you are*) *a "personality"* Remember that **da** means *since* and notice the expression **da quando** followed by a present tense as it refers to something that began in the past and continues into the present. In English we can follow *since* with either a noun (e.g. *I have known Giovanna since July*) or a verb (e.g. *I have known Giovanna since I came to Italy for the first time*). In Italian, however, the first sentence is **Conosco Giovanna da luglio** and the second **Conosco Giovanna da quando sono venuto in Italia per la prima volta**; i.e. where *since* is followed by a verb in English, it must be translated by **da quando** in Italian.

Un onorevole *A Member of Parliament*

- 17 All members of the lower house of the Italian parliament are called **onorevole**; when they are referred to, their surname is preceded by **onorevole**, e.g. **l'onorevole Verdi** (abbreviated to **l'on. Verdi**): *Mr. Verdi, M.P.*
- 18 **Come è stata accolta la nuova proposta di legge fiscale alla Camera?** *How was the new tax bill received in the Chamber?*
- a **Come è stata accolta?:** (lit.) *How was received?* This is a further example of the passive voice; **accolto** is the irregular past participle of **accogliere:** *to receive* (Appendix 10) and is in the feminine singular form here to agree with the subject, **la nuova proposta di legge fiscale.**
- b **alla Camera:** *in the Chamber* This refers to **la Camera dei Deputati:** *the Chamber of Deputies*, the lower house of the Italian parliament, which is similar in function to the British House of Commons.
- 19 **Che questa volta forse avremo delle tasse più giuste.** *That this time perhaps we'll have some fairer taxes.*
- 20 **E se la legge non passa?** *And if the law isn't passed?*
non passa: *doesn't go through* (lit. *doesn't pass*) Notice that in Italian **la legge passa:** (lit.) *the law passes* whilst in English it is *passed*, i.e. we need a passive construction in English but it is not needed in Italian.
- 21 **Quando sarà discussa?** *When will it be discussed?*
Sarà discussa is the passive voice of **discutere:** *to discuss*, used in the future tense; **discussa:** is in the feminine singular form to agree with **legge.**
- 22 **E se sarà approvata dalla Camera dei Deputati, andrà al Senato entro dicembre.** *And if it's approved by the Chamber of Deputies, it will go to the Senate by December.*

- a se sarà approvata: *if it's approved* This is the future tense of **approvare** used in the passive (Note 21). Where we use a present tense after *if* and *when* in English, we must use a future after **se** and **quando** in Italian if the action will take place in the future (L14, N8b).
- b The **Senato**: *Senate* is the upper house of the Italian parliament. There are a few honorary life members of the Senate, but most of the **senatori**: *senators* are elected, as are the **deputati**, the members of the lower house. Once a parliamentary bill has been passed by the Chamber of Deputies, it cannot become law until it has also been approved by the Senate.
- 23 **Quando è prevista l'entrata in vigore?** *When is it expected to come into force* (lit. *When is foreseen the entering into force*)?

Un calciatore A footballer

- 24 **Sì, due a zero era quello che volevamo.** *Yes, two nil was what we wanted.*
- 25 **Purtroppo abbiamo perso uno dei giocatori migliori, Rossetti.** *Unfortunately we've lost one of the best players, Rossetti.*
- a **abbiamo perso:** *we've lost* The irregular **perso** and the regular **perduto** are both past participles of **perdere**: *to lose*.
- b **migliori:** *best* **Migliore** is the irregular comparative and superlative form of **buono**: *good*, e.g. **Questo profumo è buono ma quest'altro è migliore:** *This perfume is good, but this other one is better.* **Questo qui invece è il migliore di tutti:** *But this one here is the best of them all* (Appendix 4g).

Part three: New words

il comunicato	bulletin	la canzone	song
il comunicato commerciale	advertisement	l'edilizia	building industry
il concorso	competition	la stella	star
il dettaglio	detail		
il presentatore	announcer,	commerciale	commercial
compère		maggiore	greatest
		ultimo	latest

Part three: Notes

Le ultime notizie The latest news

- 26 Notice that in Italian we talk about **le ultime notizie**: (lit.) *the last news* whilst in English we use the word *latest*.
- 27 **Sono state approvate le leggi sull'edilizia?** *Have the laws on the building industry been approved?*
- 28 **Uffa, ci sono i soliti comunicati commerciali.** *Oh dear, there are only the usual advertisements.*

- 29 **Il giornale radio viene trasmesso anche sulla radiotre.** *The news is broadcast on radio three too.*
Viene trasmesso is interchangeable with **è trasmesso** (Note 10).

Alla televisione On the television

- 30 **Da quando canta lei, Gianni?** *How long have you been* (lit. *Since when are you*) *singing, Gianni?*
- 31 **Da quando avevo quindici anni.** *Since* (lit. *when*) *I was fifteen.*
This stands for **Canto da quando avevo quindici anni:** (lit.) *I'm singing since when I was fifteen*, **canto** being understood. Notice that the imperfect tense **avevo** follows **da quando** here because the singer is no longer still fifteen, but he is referring to a time in the past when he was that age. Compare this with Note 16b where the verb following **da quando** is in the present tense because the action is still continuing.
- 32 **Qual è la sua canzone di maggior successo?** *Which has been your most successful song?*
la sua canzone di maggior successo: (lit.) *your song of greatest success*
Maggiore is the irregular comparative and superlative form of **grande**; (Appendix 4g); the final **e** of **maggiore** is often omitted in front of a noun, especially one beginning with a consonant, as it is here.
- 33 **"Stelle", quella che è stata scelta per il festival.** *"Stars", the one that has been chosen for the festival.*
che è stata scelta: *that has been chosen* (Note 3a)

Lezione ventidue

Lesson twenty-two

Part one: New words

il cicerone	guide	la festa	celebration
il colle	hill		
il Foro	Forum	antico	ancient
l'imperatore	emperor	politico	political
il latino	Latin	pubblico	public
il processo	trial	religioso	religious
i resti	remains	sacro	holy, sacred

In giro per Roma

Around Rome

splendido splendid, wonderful
ventiduesimo twenty-second

cadere to fall

colpire to strike, to hit

fondare to found

svolgersi to take place, to happen

tenersi to be held, to take place

il/la/i/le cui whose

vi here, there

ventidue twenty-two

Part one: Notes

- 1 E questo è il punto dove Bruto colpì Cesare e Cesare cadendo gli disse: "Anche tu, Bruto, figlio mio!". *And this is (the point) where Brutus struck Caesar and as he fell Caesar said to him "You too, Brutus, my son!"*
- a Bruto colpì Cesare: *Brutus struck Caesar* Colpi is the 3rd person singular of *colpire*: to strike in the past definite tense or *passato remoto* which we meet here for the first time; the *i* ending is typical of the 3rd person singular of regular *ire* verbs (Appendix 9). The *passato remoto* is used for actions that happened in the past and have nothing to do with the present. It is most generally used all over Italy as a narrative tense; story books, history books, guide books, obituaries, etc. generally recount facts of the past in the *passato remoto*. In the north of Italy, this tense is never used in the spoken language; the perfect tense (*passato prossimo*) is used to recount past events. In central Italy, especially in Tuscany, the *passato remoto* is sometimes used in conversation, whilst southern Italians often use it where a northern Italian uses the *passato prossimo*. However, there is now the tendency for people all over Italy to use the perfect tense rather than the *passato remoto* in everyday conversation.
- b disse: *said* This is the 3rd person singular of *dire* in the *passato remoto*; *dire* is irregular in this tense (Appendix 10).
- 2 Qui, nel Foro, si svolgeva tutta la vita pubblica di Roma antica: vi si tenevano i mercati e le riunioni politiche, vi si facevano i processi e le feste religiose. *Here in the Forum, all the public life of ancient Rome took place: markets and political meetings were held here, trials and religious celebrations took place here.*
- a si svolgeva: *took place* This is the imperfect of *svolgersi*: to take place.
- b vi: *here* Vi is interchangeable with *ci* when it means *there* or *here*.
- c si tenevano: *were held* (lit. *held themselves*) This is the imperfect of *tenersi*: to be held.
- 3 Eccoci ora sulla Via Sacra: in fondo, davanti a noi, l'Arco di Tito, a sinistra la Basilica di Massenzio, a destra il colle Palatino dove fu fondata Roma. *Here we are now on the Via Sacra: in the distance in front of us is the Arch of Titus, on the left the Basilica of Maxentius, on the right the Palatine hill where Rome was founded.*

dove fu fondata Roma: *where Rome was founded* Fu is the 3rd person singular of *essere* in the *passato remoto* (Appendix 8).

- 4 Su questo colle gli imperatori fecero costruire splendidi palazzi i cui resti vedremo fra poco. *On this hill the emperors built wonderful palaces whose remains we shall see shortly.*
- a fecero costruire: *built* (lit. *made build*) Fecero is the 3rd person plural form of *fare* in the *passato remoto* (Appendix 10).
- b i cui resti: *whose remains* Cui preceded by *il*, *la*, *i* or *le* means *whose*, e.g. *Oggi ho visto Enrico, la cui sorella tu conosci*: *Today I saw Enrico whose sister you know*; *Ecco la chiesa le cui porte sono sempre aperte*: *Here's the church whose doors are always open*. Cui also means *which* or *whom* when preceded by a preposition, e.g. *Ecco la ragazza di cui ti ho parlato*: *Here's the girl I told you about*; *Ecco il punto da cui si vede il campanile*: *Here's the point from which you can see the bell-tower*. Cui never changes its form regardless of what it refers to.

Part two: New words

l'abbacchio lamb

l'anfiteatro amphitheatre

l'antiquariato antique-trade

il brivido shiver

il cavallo horse

il Colosseo Colosseum

il Cristiano Christian

l'edificio building

il fastidio bother, annoyance, trouble

il luogo place

il Palazzo dello Sport sports palace

il Pantheon Pantheon

il papa Pope

il posticino little place, small corner

il sangue blood

lo schiavo slave

lo sport sport

l'urlo shout, cry

il vetturino coachman

la belva wild animal

la benedizione blessing

la bottega shop

la bottega di antiquariato antique shop

la carrozzella carriage

le Catacombe Catacombs

la cupola cupola, tower

l'esposizione exhibition

la fantasia imagination

la folla crowd

la fontana fountain

la guerra war

la mangiata feast

le Olimpiadi Olympic Games

l'osteria pub, inn, tavern

la pubblicità publicity

la realtà reality

la sorta sort

matto mad

moderno modern

mondiale world, world-wide

papale papal

sanguinoso bloody

silenzioso silent

universale universal

Vaticano Vatican

apparire to appear

assicurare to assure

avere luogo to take place

avvicinarsi to come close, to approach

dare fastidio to bother, to worry,

to annoy

fare a tempo to be in time

fare fatica to have difficulty
far morire to kill
non poterne più to be unable to go on
scoppiare to burst, to break out, to explode
scorrere to run, to flow
sedersi to sit down

d.C. = dopo Cristo A.D.
in alto high up
in mezzo a in the middle of
in realtà really, in fact
lassù up there

Part two: Notes

Al Colosseo At the Colosseum

- 5 Quando fu costruito il Colosseo? *When was the Colosseum built?*
- 6 Dal 72 all'80 d.C. *From 72 to 80 A.D.*
- a Dal 72 all'80: *From 72 to 80* Notice that years are preceded by **il**, e.g. *dal 1943 al 1950: from 1943 to 1950* and *nel 1815: in 1815*.
- b 80 d.C.: *80 A.D.* The initials **d.C.** stand for **dopo Cristo: after Christ**, whilst **a.C.** stands for **ante Cristo: before Christ**.
- 7 Era usata solo per far morire i Cristiani? *Was it only used to kill (lit. to make die) Christians?*
- 8 No, per ogni sorta di spettacoli sanguinosi. *No, for all sorts of bloody spectacles.*
- 9 Si fa fatica a crederlo guardando questo anfiteatro così silenzioso. *It's difficult to believe it looking at this amphitheatre (that's) so silent (now).*
Si fa fatica a crederlo: One has difficulty in believing it Notice the use of the impersonal **si** in this sentence and that *to have difficulty IN doing something* is **fare fatica A** followed by an infinitive.
- 10 Ecco: è pieno di gente ... si sentono gli urli della folla ... si vedono entrare schiavi e belve ... il sangue comincia a scorrere ... *There: it's full of people ... you can hear the crowd shouting ... you can see slaves and wild animals come in ... the blood begins to flow ...*
- a si sentono gli urli: *the shouts can be heard*
- b si vedono entrare schiavi e belve: (lit.) *slaves and wild animals are seen to enter* Further examples of this type of construction which is used with verbs of perception are **Ti ho visto uscire: I saw you go out or going out;** **Si sente arrivare il medico: The doctor can be heard arriving.**
- c il sangue comincia a scorrere: *the blood begins to flow* **Scorrere** means *to run or to flow* and is used particularly with liquids.
- 11 Mi fai venire i brividi! Tu hai troppa fantasia. *You make me shudder! You've got too much imagination.*
- a Mi fai venire i brividi: (lit.) *You make the shivers come to me*
- b troppa fantasia: *too much imagination* Remember that where **troppo** is used as an adjective, it agrees with the noun it is describing.

- 12 Ma no, ti assicuro: in Roma antica ci si divertiva così. *No no, I assure you: in ancient Rome that's how they enjoyed themselves.*
- a in Roma antica: *in ancient Rome* Notice that when the name of a town is qualified by an adjective, **in** and not **a** tends to be used.
- b ci si divertiva: (lit.) *one used to enjoy oneself* When reflexive verbs are used with the impersonal **si**: *one* form, instead of saying **si si divertiva** as you would expect, the first **si** is replaced by **ci**, giving **ci si divertiva**. Further examples are **Ci si annoia in treno: One gets bored on the train;** **Ci si ferma al semaforo: One stops at the traffic lights.**

In piazza San Pietro In Saint Peter's Square

- 13 Piazza San Pietro is the large square in front of St. Peter's basilica; its columns were designed by Gianlorenzo Bernini. Here pilgrims gather on important religious occasions to hear and see the Pope.
- 14 Siediamoci un momento qui, vicino alla fontana, per favore. Non ne posso più. *Let's sit down here for a moment, near the fountain, please. I can't go on.*
- a Siediamoci: *Let's sit down* This is the **noi** command form of the reflexive verb **sedersi: to sit down**; notice that the reflexive pronoun **ci** follows the verb in the **noi** command form of reflexives (Appendix 10).
- b Non ne posso più: *I can't go on* (lit. *I can't any more of it*)
- 15 Forse abbiamo fatto e visto troppo in soli tre giorni. *Perhaps we've done and seen too much in only three days.*
soli tre giorni: only three days Notice that here the adjective **solo: alone, single** agrees with **tre giorni** but functions as an adverb.
- 16 No, no, io parto dopodomani e voglio ancora girare, ma quando si è stanchi ... ci si deve fermare. *No, no, I'm leaving the day after tomorrow and I still want to go round, but when you're tired ... you have to stop.*
- a quando si è stanchi: *when you're tired* Where **si** is equivalent to the English *one* (here *when one is tired*), the adjective used must be in the plural, e.g. **Alla fine della giornata si è stanchi: At the end of the day one is tired.**
- b ci si deve fermare: *you have to stop* This phrase can be expressed by **si deve fermarsi: one must stop**; however, the reflexive pronoun **si** of **fermarsi** can also be transferred in front of **deve** which would have given **si si deve fermare**, but as in Note 12b, the first **si** changes to **ci**.
- 17 Allora possiamo prendere la benedizione papale. *Well we can receive the Pope's blessing.*
la benedizione papale: (lit.) the papal blessing On informal occasions the Pope appears at a small window of the Vatican palace that adjoins St. Peter's basilica and overlooks St. Peter's Square.

- 18 **Sì, il papa appare a quella finestra lassù in alto a sinistra e dà la benedizione alla folla.** *Yes, the Pope appears at that window high up there on the left and blesses the crowd.*
- a **il papa:** *the Pope* Take special care with the pronunciation of this word and notice that it is the first syllable that is stressed. Notice too that **papa:** *Pope* begins with a small **p**.
- b **appare:** *appears* This is the 3rd person singular of **apparire**.
- c **dà:** *gives* Notice the accent on the **à** of the 3rd person singular of **dare** in the present tense.
- 19 **Guarda: un vetturino con una vecchia carrozzella.** *Look, a coachman with an old carriage.*
- Here the **vetturino** that Giovanna refers to is the driver of a horse and carriage; these vehicles can still be hired by tourists to take them for a ride round Rome.
- 20 **Scusi, posso farle una fotografia?** *Excuse me, can I take a photograph of you (lit. can I do a photograph to you)?*
- 21 **Prego, signorina. Ma non si avvicini troppo al cavallo: gli dà fastidio la pubblicità.** *Of course, miss. But don't come too close to the horse: he doesn't like publicity.*
- gli dà fastidio la pubblicità:** (lit.) *publicity gives bother to him* **Dare fastidio** is a useful expression to learn. Further examples of its use are **Le dà fastidio il sole?:** *Does the sun bother (lit. to) you?* and **Mi dà fastidio quel ragazzo:** *That boy annoys (lit. to) me.*

Roma moderna *Modern Rome*

- 22 **Vuol dire Esposizione Universale Romana. Ma in realtà l'esposizione non ebbe mai luogo.** *It means Universal Roman Exhibition. But actually the exhibition never took place.*
- a The E.U.R. is a modern residential and business centre to the South of Rome built to house the Universal Exhibition that was to have taken place in 1942. As well as offices and museums, the complex also contains a large artificial lake and a sports palace.
- b **non ebbe mai luogo:** *never took place* **Ebbe** is the 3rd person singular of **avere** in the **passato remoto** (Appendix 8). The expression **avere luogo** is an idiom meaning *to take place*.
- 23 **Avevano appena finito i progetti quando scoppiò la seconda guerra mondiale.** *They had just finished the projects when the second world war broke out.*
- a **Avevano appena finito:** *They had just (lit. scarcely) finished* This is an example of the pluperfect tense which is formed by using the imperfect followed by a past participle, e.g. **Avevo già visto quel film:** *I had already seen that film;* **I miei genitori avevano abitato a Roma prima di andare a**

Torino: *My parents had lived in Rome before going to Turin.* Verbs that use **avere** to help form their perfect tense also use **avere** to help form the pluperfect, whilst those that use **essere** in the perfect also use **essere** for the pluperfect, e.g. **Giovanna era venuta a trovarmi:** *Giovanna had come to visit me;* **Erano già partiti quando ho trovato la lettera:** *They had already left when I found the letter.*

- b **scoppiò:** *broke out (lit. exploded)* This is the past definite (**passato remoto**) of **scoppiare** in the 3rd person singular. Regular **are** verbs all end in **ò** in the 3rd person singular of the **passato remoto**.
- 24 **E nessun edificio venne mai usato?** *And no building was ever used?*
- a **Venne** is the 3rd person singular of **venire** in the **passato remoto**.
- b **venne mai usato:** *was ever used* (L21, N29)
- 25 **Come no? I palazzi vengono usati per esposizioni, per affari e per lo sport.** *What do you mean they were never used (lit. How not)? The buildings are used for exhibitions, for business and for sport.*
- a **Come no?:** (lit.) *How not?* This is an exclamation of surprise used to contradict a negative statement, e.g. **E così non sei mai stata a Roma, Anna? Come no? Ci sono stata l'anno scorso!:** *And so you've never been to Rome, Anna? What do you mean? I was there last year!*
- b **vengono usati:** *are used* (L21, N29)
- 26 **È il Palazzo dello Sport, costruito per le Olimpiadi del 1960.** *It's the Sports palace, built for the 1960 Olympic Games.*
- le Olimpiadi del 1960:** (lit.) *the Olympic Games of 1960* (Note 6b)

In un'osteria di Trastevere *In a pub at Trastevere*

- 27 **In un'osteria di Trastevere**
- a **Osteria** is the rather old-fashioned word for a bar or drinking place. An **osteria** is not usually smart but is a place where locals from the area can go to drink wine and sometimes get a meal.
- b **Trastevere** literally means *across the Tiber* (il Tevere) and is the name given to an area of Rome that lies the other side of the Tiber from most of the ancient monuments. It is both a residential and artistic area.
- 28 **Che mangiata di abbacchio alla romana!** *What a feast of abbacchio alla romana!*
- Abbacchio** is the word used in the area around Rome for lamb that has been killed very young; **abbacchio alla romana** is a speciality that comes from Rome, hence its name **alla romana:** *Roman-style* (L5, N3b). The usual word for *lamb*, common throughout Italy, is **agnello**.
- 29 **E adesso che si fa?** *And now what shall we do?* (L20, N17)
- 30 **Mi piacerebbe portarvi a Cinecittà.** *I'd like to take you to Cinecittà.* **Cinecittà** is an area to the south-east of Rome where there are film studios and open spaces reserved for filming.

- 31 **Si è usciti troppo tardi oggi per riuscire a vedere qualcosa.** *We came out too late today to (manage to) see anything.*
Si è usciti: (lit.) *One came out* The past participle of verbs that normally form their perfect tense with **essere** go into the masculine plural form when the impersonal **si**: *one* is used, e.g. **Si va:** (lit.) *One goes* (present tense) but **Si è andati:** (lit.) *One went* (perfect tense).
- 32 **Quel che si è visto, si è visto. E a Roma ci tornerò presto.** *I've seen what I've seen. And I'll come back to Rome soon.*
Quel che si è visto, si è visto: (lit.) *That which has been seen has been seen.* When verbs that normally form their perfect tense with **avere** are used in the impersonal **si**: *one* form in the perfect, they take **essere**, e.g. **Si dice:** (lit.) *One says* (present tense) but **Si è detto:** (lit.) *One said* (perfect tense).
- 33 **E le Catacombe, i musei Vaticani . . . il Pincio, Villa Borghese.** *And the Catacombs, the Vatican museums . . . Pincio, the Villa Borghese.*
 a **Le Catacombe:** *the Catacombs* are subterranean galleries that the early Christians used for burying their dead.
 b The Vatican museums adjoin the Vatican palace behind St. Peter's.
 c **Il Pincio** is an area of public gardens to the north of Rome.
 d **Villa Borghese** is the largest park in Rome and connects with the Pincio.
- 34 **Allora vi porto in un posticino dove non siete state.** *Well then, I'll take you to a little place where you haven't been.*
Posticino is the irregular diminutive of **posto:** *place*.
- 35 **In via dei Coronari a vedere le botteghe di antiquariato.** *To via dei Coronari to see the antique shops.*
le botteghe: *the shops* **Bottega** is the old-fashioned word for *small shop* that is still used to indicate the ground floor room open to the street where a craftsman works or a merchant sells his goods.

Part three: New words

il fiume river
 il mistero mystery
 il re king
 il Romano Roman
 il senso sense, feeling, atmosphere
 lo spettatore spectator
 lo stadio stadium
 il tempio temple

la cappella chapel
 la regina queen
 la solennità solemnity
 la tomba tomb

barocco baroque
 cristiano Christian
 ovale oval

dedicare to dedicate
 osservare to observe, to look at

anticamente in olden days, in ancient times

appunto exactly

trentamila thirty thousand

Part three: Notes

Al Pantheon At the Pantheon

- 36 **Ci sono le tombe dei re e delle regine d'Italia e di Raffaello.** *There are the tombs of the kings and queens of Italy and Raphael's tomb.*
 a **le tombe dei re:** *the tombs of the kings* The plural of **il re** is **i re**.
 b Italy became a unified kingdom in 1861 and Rome made its capital in 1870. Since then it has had four kings, Vittorio Emanuele II and Umberto I who are buried in the Pantheon, Vittorio Emanuele III who died in Egypt and Umberto II, the king who was exiled after the 1946 referendum that brought about the Republic.
 c **Raffaello:** *Raphael* (1483–1520) is one of the best-known painters of the Roman school.
- 37 **Ora sì, ma la costruirono i Romani che la dedicarono ai loro dei.** *It is now, but the Romans built it and (lit. who) dedicated it to their gods.*
 a **la costruirono i Romani:** *the Romans built it* **Costruirono** is the 3rd person plural of **costruire** in the **passato remoto** tense; the **irono** ending is typical of the 3rd person plural of regular **ire** verbs in this tense.
 b **dedicarono:** *they dedicated* This is the 3rd person plural of **dedicare** in the **passato remoto**. The 3rd person plural of all regular **are** verbs ends in **arano** (Appendix 9).
 c **ai loro dei:** *to their gods* Notice that the plural of **dio** is **dei**.
- 38 **Vuol dire appunto tutti gli dei.** (lit.) *It means exactly all the gods.*
 The irregular plural of **il dio** is **GLI dei**.

In piazza Navona In Navona Square

- 39 **Vi prego di osservare le tre fontane.** *Please look at the three fountains.*
Pregare qualcuno di fare qualcosa is *to ask someone to do something*; **pregare** literally means *to beg* or *to request* and is normally a rather formal if not literary way of asking someone to do something.
- 40 **È la fontana dei Fiumi del Bernini.** *It's the Fountain of the Rivers by Bernini.*
del Bernini: (lit.) *of the Bernini* The surname of a man is preceded by **il** or **l'** when he is a figure of historical importance, e.g. **il Manzoni**, **il Machiavelli**.
- 41 **Il Bernini? Ah sì, quello che finì la basilica di San Pietro.** *Bernini? Ah yes, the one who finished St. Peter's.*
 a **finì:** *finished* (Note 1a)
 b **la basilica di San Pietro:** *St. Peter's basilica* St. Peter's is the largest church in the world. It was planned in its present form in the 16th century and contains works of art by Michelangelo, Bernini and Canova.

Part one: New words

l'impressione impression, idea
la passeggiata walk
la spiaggia beach

ventitreesimo twenty-third

fare una passeggiata to go for a walk
godersi to enjoy

soprattutto most of all

Part one: Notes

- 1 Siamo venuti a Capri in albergo per goderci una settimana di vita di mare. *We've come to stay at a hotel in Capri to enjoy a week of life by the sea.*
per goderci una settimana: *to enjoy a week* Here the reflexive verb **godersi:** *to enjoy* is used; the **ci** of **goderci** is the reflexive pronoun that is used with the **noi** form of the verb (L19, N28b). In the **io** form the sentence would begin **Sono venuto per godermi...**; in the **tu** form it would begin **Sei venuto per goderti...** etc.
- 2 Mi pare che abbiamo tutti bisogno di aria buona e di cura del sole. *I think we all need some fresh air and some sun* (lit. *It seems to me that we all need some good air and sun treatment*).
- 3 Sembra che qui si senta meglio e sia più tranquillo. *He seems to feel* (lit. *It seems that he feels*) *better here and* (lit. *is*) *more at ease.*
a **si senta:** *he feels* This is the 3rd person singular of the present tense of **sentirsi:** *to feel* in what is called the subjunctive mood (**congiuntivo** in Italian). The **a** ending is typical of **ire** verbs in the subjunctive (Appendix 9). The **congiuntivo** is used to express uncertainty, possibility or probability and is always used after the impersonal expression **sembra che:** *it seems that*. The subjunctive is also used after the impersonal expression **mi pare che** which we saw in Note 2; the verb following it, **abbiamo**, is in fact also in the subjunctive but this is not obvious as the **noi** form of **avere** and all verbs in the present subjunctive is identical to the **noi** form in the ordinary present tense.
- b **sia più tranquillo:** (lit.) *is more calm* **Sia** is the present subjunctive of **essere** (Appendix 8) again used after **sembra che**.
- 4 Stamattina è uscito presto a fare una bella passeggiata. *This morning he went out early for a nice walk.*
Notice that *to go for a walk* is **fare una passeggiata**.

- 5 Non so dove siano Giovanna e Alberto. *I don't know where Giovanna and Alberto can be.*

siano: (lit.) *are* This is the 3rd person plural of **essere** in the present subjunctive (Note 3b). The subjunctive is used here because it follows a main verb that expresses doubt (i.e. **Non so:** *I don't know*) and because the subject of the second verb (**Giovanna e Alberto**) is different from that of the first (**io** understood).

- 6 Uhm, ho l'impressione che dormano ancora. *Uhm, I think* (lit. *I have the impression that*) *they're still sleeping.*

dormano: *they're sleeping* This is the present subjunctive of **dormire** in the 3rd person plural form. Again Maria Teresa uses the subjunctive here because **dormano** depends on a verb expressing doubt or supposition (**ho l'impressione che**) and because the subject of **dormano** (*they*) is different from the subject of the main verb (*I*).

- 7 Voglio che scendano giù al mare con noi. *I want them to come down to the sea with us.*

Voglio che scendano giù: (lit.) *I want that they come down* **Scendano** is the present subjunctive of **scendere** in the 3rd person plural. The subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses (i.e. in clauses that do not contain the main verb) when the main verb expresses a wish or a command and when the subject of the two clauses is different. Here the main verb is **Voglio:** *I want* so the verb in the subordinate clause (**scendere**) consequently goes into the subjunctive.

Part two: New words

il bagnino beach-boy, beach attendant
il bikini bikini
il cappello hat
il costume swimsuit, bathing costume
il dovere duty
il largo open sea
il locale club, premises
il locale notturno night club
il molo jetty
l'ombrellone sunshade
il panfilo yacht
il pescatore fisherman
il porto port, harbour
il remo oar
lo sci d'acqua water-skiing
il sonno sleepiness
il trampolino spring-board
il tuffo dive
lo zoccolo beach shoe, wooden shoe

la barca boat
la barca a remi rowing-boat
la barca da pesca fishing-boat
la boa buoy
la cabina cabin, hut
la crema cream
la cuffia bathing cap
la figliola girl
l'insolazione sunstroke
la pesca fishing
le pinne flippers
la raccomandazione advice, caution
la rete net
la roccia (pl. le rocce) rock
la sabbia sand
la sdraio deck-chair

limpido clear
notturno night

pigro lazy
seduto seated
spiritoso funny, amusing

abbronzarsi to tan, to get brown
andarsene to go off
annegare to drown
avere sonno to be sleepy
ballare to dance
cambiarsi to change (clothes)
correre dietro to run after
digerire to digest
fare il bagno to go in the sea, to bathe
mettersi to put on
nuotare to swim
peggiore to get worse
prendere un'insolazione to get sun-stroke

prendersela to take to heart, to take seriously
raggiungere to join
remare to row
riesserci to be there again
rinfrescarsi to refresh oneself
salvare to save
scottare to burn
sfidare to challenge
sfiorare to touch, to skim
spingere to push
valere to count, to be of value
al largo out at sea
in dovere obliged, duty-bound
in spiaggia on the beach
per poco almost

Part two: Notes

In spiaggia On the beach

- 8 Vieni qui sotto l'ombrellone e mettili un po' di crema per il sole. *Come here under the sunshade and put on some sun cream.*
- a mettili un po' di crema: *put on some cream* Notice that when the reflexive verb *mettersi* is used with a direct object, it means *to put on*, e.g. *Oggi mi metto il cappotto perché fa freddo: Today I'm putting on my overcoat because it's cold.*
- b mettili: *put on* (L19, N15)
- 9 Puoi sederti sulla mia sdraio, Alberto. *You can sit on my deck-chair, Alberto.*
Puoi sederti: *You can sit* Here the reflexive pronoun *ti* is used because Giovanna is speaking to Alberto in the *tu* form (Note 1). Further examples are *Posso sedermi: I can sit down*, *Possiamo sederci: We can sit down* and *Potete sedervi: You can sit down* etc.
- 10 Prendimi gli zoccoli per favore. Ti cambi? *Get my beach shoes for me please. Are you changing?*
- 11 Mi metto il costume e prendo la cuffia per fare il bagno. Vieni anche tu, Alberto. Così ti rinfreschi un poco. *I'm putting on my swimsuit and getting my bathing-cap to go into the sea. You come too, Alberto. It's very refreshing* (lit. *Like that you will refresh yourself a little*).
- 12 Ho paura che non abbiate ancora digerito la colazione. È meglio che aspettiate ancora mezz'ora. *I'm afraid that you may not have digested your breakfast yet. You had better wait another half hour.*

- a Ho paura che non abbiate digerito: *I'm afraid that you may not have digested* *Abbiate* is the present subjunctive of *avere* in the *voi* form (Appendix 8) used after the expression *Ho paura che: I'm afraid that*. Just as the subjunctive must follow verbs expressing a wish or a command (Note 7), so it must also follow verbs expressing fear when the subject of the subordinate clause is different from that of the main clause.
- b È meglio che aspettiate: (lit.) *It's better that you wait* *Aspettiate* is the present subjunctive of *aspettare* in the *voi* form; notice that the *voi* form of all verbs in the present subjunctive ends with the letters *iate* (Appendix 9). Here the subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause following the impersonal expression *È meglio che: It's better that* (Appendix 7d).
- 13 Ma dai, Maria Teresa. Mi sembra che i ragazzi possano decidere da soli se fare o no il bagno. *Come on, Maria Teresa. Surely the children can decide for themselves whether to go in the sea or not.*
Mi sembra che i ragazzi possano decidere: (lit.) *It seems to me that the children can decide* *Possano* is the present subjunctive of *potere* in the 3rd person plural (Appendix 10), used after *Mi sembra che* (Note 3a).

In acqua In the water

- 14 Ti sfido a chi arriva prima alla boa. *I'll race you to the buoy* (lit. *I challenge you to who arrives at the buoy first*).
- 15 No, non vale. Io non so nuotare senza pinne. *No, that's not fair* (lit. *it's not valid*). *I can't swim without flippers.*
Io non so nuotare: *I can't* (lit. *I don't know how to*) *swim* Remember that where *sapere* precedes another verb, it usually means *to know how to do something*, e.g. *Sa parlare francese?: Can you* (i.e. *Do you know how to*) *speak French?*
- 16 Credo di avere troppa paura. *I think I'm too afraid.*
Notice that here, where the subject in the two clauses is the same in English (*I think* and *I'm too afraid*), we must use *credere di* in Italian followed by an infinitive. Further examples are *Lucia crede di arrivare troppo tardi: Lucia thinks she's going to arrive too late* and *Non credo di essere vanitoso: I don't think I'm vain*. The same type of construction is also used with *spero di*, *ho paura di*, *mi sembra di*, *penso di* etc.
- 17 Macché paura. Io credo che tu abbia solo sonno. *What do you mean afraid? I think you're just sleepy.*
Io credo che tu abbia: (lit.) *I think that you have* *Abbia* is the present subjunctive of *avere* in the 2nd person singular used here after the expression *Io credo che: I think that*. The subjunctive is always used in a subordinate clause where the subject of the two clauses is different and where the main clause expresses an opinion i.e. with verbs such as *penso che*, *immagino che*, *ho idea che*, *si dice che* etc. Compare this sentence

where the two subjects are different with Note 16 where the subject is the same in both clauses.

- 18 **Mi fai bere!** (lit.) *You're making me drink.*
 19 **Come te la prendi! Facevo per ridere.** *How you're taking it to heart! I was doing it for fun* (lit. *to laugh*).
Come te la prendi!: *How you're taking it to heart!* The verb **prendersela** forms its present tense like **cavarsela** (L19, N36).
 20 **Per poco mi fai annegare.** *You're almost drowning me* (lit. *making me drown*).
 21 **Credi di essere spiritoso?** *Do you think you're being funny?* (Note 16)
 22 **Basta, facciamo la pace. Perché non noleggiamo quella barca a remi? Mi sembra che sia libera.** *That's enough, let's make up* (lit. *make the peace*). *Why don't we hire that rowing boat? It seems to be free.*
Mi sembra che sia libera: (lit.) *It seems to me that it is free.* (Note 3a)

In barca In the boat

- 23 **Voi dovete solo stare seduti e ... abbronzarvi.** *You only have to sit there* (lit. *stay seated*) *and ... get brown.*
abbronzarvi: *get brown* Remember that **vi** is the reflexive pronoun used with the **voi** form of the verb (Note 1).
 24 **Mettetevi il cappello!** *Put on your hats!*
Mettetevi: *Put on* (L20, N18)
 25 **Ci risiamo con le raccomandazioni. Di' un po', Giovanna, non pensi che la mamma stia peggiorando?** *There she goes again with the advice. Tell me Giovanna, don't you think mother's getting worse?*
 a **Ci risiamo:** (lit.) *There we are again* Notice that **ri** is a prefix to **siamo**.
 b **non pensi che la mamma stia peggiorando?:** *don't you think mother's getting worse?* **Stia** is the present subjunctive of **stare** in the 3rd person singular. The subjunctive is used here as it follows **non pensi che?**
 26 **Credo che sia sempre stata così.** *I think she's always been like that.*
Credo che sia sempre stata: *I think she's always been* **Sia stata** is the perfect subjunctive of **essere** following **Credo che** (Note 17). The perfect subjunctive of all verbs is formed in the same way as the ordinary perfect tense, except that the auxiliary verb form goes into the subjunctive; the past participle remains unchanged.
 27 **Quella bella figliola in bikini? Perbacco se l'ho vista!** *That lovely girl in the bikini? I'll say I saw her!*
Figliola and its masculine counterpart **figliolo** are used to mean *girl* or *daughter* and *boy* or *son* respectively. The term is used when referring to a young person in a kindly, benevolent way.

La serata The evening

- 28 **Guarda quante barche da pesca e quante reti! Ho idea che siano tutti pescatori in questo paese.** *Look at all the* (lit. *how many*) *fishing-boats and all the* (lit. *how many*) *nets! I think they must all be fishermen in this town.*
Ho idea che siano: (lit.) *I have an idea that they are* **Siano** is the present subjunctive of **essere** in the 3rd person plural form; the subjunctive is necessary here as Maria Teresa is expressing an opinion about which there is a small element of doubt.
 29 **Peccato che i ragazzi se ne siano andati per conto loro.** *It's a pity that the children have gone off by themselves.*
Andarsene, a compound of **andare** is similar in form to **prendersela** and **cavarsela** (Note 19). Its present tense is **me ne vado, te ne vai, se ne va, ce ne andiamo, ve ne andate, se ne vanno**. The perfect tense of **andarsene** begins **me ne sono andato, te ne sei andato** etc., following the normal pattern for reflexive verbs in the perfect. **Se ne sono andati** is the normal perfect form in the 3rd person plural, but here Maria Teresa uses **se ne siano andati**, the perfect subjunctive form, because it follows the expression **peccato che:** *it's a shame that*.
 30 **Spero che si divertano.** *I hope that they're enjoying themselves.*
si divertano: *they're enjoying themselves* This is the present subjunctive of **divertirsi** in the 3rd person plural. The subjunctive must also be used after verbs expressing hope if the subject of the verb in the subordinate clause is different from that in the main clause.
 31 **Ah sì, vuoi che li raggiuniamo?** *Oh yes, do you want us to join them?*
 Here **raggiuniamo** is the present subjunctive of **raggiungere:** *to join*, used after **vuoi che?:** (lit.) *do you want that?* (Note 7).
 32 **No, godiamoci questa passeggiata.** *No, let's enjoy this walk.*
Godiamoci is typical of the **noi** command form of reflexive verbs; the reflexive pronoun **ci** follows and is joined to the command **godiamo**.
 33 **Sono contento che tu la pensi così. Non voglio che tu ti senta sempre in dovere di correre dietro ai figli.** *I'm pleased that you see it that way. I don't want you to feel obliged to run after the children all the time.*
 a **che tu la pensi così:** (lit.) *that you think it like that.* **Pensi** is here the present subjunctive of **pensare** used after **sono contento che:** *I'm pleased that* i.e. after a verb expressing feeling or emotion. Other similar expressions requiring the subjunctive are **Mi fa piacere che, Sono triste che, Mi dispiace che** etc. Notice that the **tu** form of **are** verbs in the subjunctive is identical to the **tu** form in the normal present tense (Appendix 9).
 b **Non voglio che tu ti senta:** (lit.) *I don't want that you feel* Here **tu ti senta** is the present subjunctive of **sentirsi** used after **Non voglio che.**

23 Part three: New words

l'accendino lighter
il salvagente life-jacket
il vento wind

beato blessed, fortunate, lucky

accendere to light
bagnare to wet, to dampen
far accendere to give a light
tuffarsi to dive

Part three: Notes

Al mare *At the seaside*

- 34 Perché ti sei messa la cuffia? *Why have you put on your bathing cap?*
35 Per non bagnarmi i capelli. *So as not to get my hair wet.*
non bagnarmi i capelli: *not to wet my hair* (L20, N21b)
36 No, va' prima tu mentre io tengo i remi. *No, you go first while I hold the oars.*
tengo: *I hold* This is the 1st person singular of *tenere*.
37 Che faccia troppo freddo in acqua. *That it might be too cold in the water.*
Che faccia troppo freddo: *That it might be too cold* Faccia is the present subjunctive of *fare* in the 3rd person singular; here it depends on Renato saying *hai paura*: *you're afraid* in his previous speech (Note 12a).
38 No, ho paura di annegare senza salvagente. Io non so nuotare. *No, I'm afraid of drowning without a life-jacket. I can't swim.*
ho paura di annegare: *I'm afraid of drowning* Here, because the person who is afraid and the person who may drown are the same, Silvana does not say *ho paura che*, but *ho paura di* followed by an infinitive (Note 16).

Sulla spiaggia *On the beach*

- 39 Scusi, mi fa accendere? *Excuse me, can you give me a light?*
Notice *far accendere a qualcuno*: *to give someone a light*.
40 Beata lei! *Lucky you!*
Further examples of this exclamation are *beato te!*: *lucky you!* (tu form, masculine), *beato lui!*: *lucky him!*, *beati voi!*: *lucky you!* and *beati loro!*: *lucky them!*
41 Siamo in tre. *There are three of us.*
Further examples of this idiom are *Sono in dieci*: *There are ten of them*, *Eravamo in cinque*: *There were five of us* and *Siete in due*: *There are two of you*.

Lezione ventiquattro

Lesson twenty-four

A Napoli al mercato

At the market in Naples

24

Part one: New words

il Mediterraneo Mediterranean
l'orientamento orientation
il russo Russian
il senso di orientamento sense of direction

la crociera cruise
la provvista supply, stock, provisions

ventiquattresimo twenty-fourth
arrangiarsi to get by, to make do, to manage
capitare to happen
fare provviste to lay in provisions
benché although
purché provided that

Part one: Notes

- 1 Ma guarda che cosa hanno dimenticato a casa: tutte le guide dei musei e la pianta della città! *But look what they've left (lit. forgotten) at home: all the guide-books to the museums and the map of the town!*
guarda: *look* Maria Teresa uses the *tu* command form of *guardare* because she is talking to herself as though she were another person.
- 2 Gliel'ho detto prima che uscissero: "Non dimenticate niente!". *I told them before they went out "Don't forget anything!"*
- a Gliel'ho detto: *I told them* (lit. *I told it to them*) Remember that *gli* can mean *to them* (L18, N31a) and that when it is followed by *lo* the two words combine to form *glielo* (L17, N7a).
- b prima che uscissero: *before they went out* Uscissero is the imperfect subjunctive of *uscire* in the 3rd person plural; the *issero* ending is typical of this person of *ire* verbs in the imperfect subjunctive (Appendix 9). It is used here because Maria Teresa says *prima che* and then refers to an action in the past. The subjunctive is always used after *prima che* but its tense depends on the tense of the main verb and the sense of the sentence, e.g. *Andiamo prima che escano gli altri*: *Let's go before the others come out* (present subjunctive); *Siamo partiti prima che uscissero gli altri*: *We left before the others came out* (imperfect subjunctive).
- 3 E credevo che avessero preso anche le guide. *And I thought that they had taken the guide-books too.*
avessero preso: *they had taken* Avessero is the imperfect subjunctive of *avere* in the 3rd person plural (Appendix 8). The *essero* ending is typical of the 3rd person plural of *ere* verbs in the imperfect subjunctive. Here it

is used together with the past participle **preso** to form the pluperfect subjunctive (Appendix 7). The subjunctive is essential in this case because it follows the expression **credevo che** (L23, N17).

- 4 **Dieci anni fa Paolo ha girato mezza Russia, benché non parlasse una sola parola di russo.** *Ten years ago Paolo went round half Russia, although he didn't speak a single word of Russian.*
benché non parlasse: *although he didn't speak* **Parlasse** is the 3rd person singular of the imperfect subjunctive of **parlare** (Appendix 9); notice the **asse** ending which is typical of this person of **are** verbs in the imperfect subjunctive. It is essential to use a subjunctive after **benché**.
- 5 **Saprà cavarsela a Napoli, spero.** *He'll be able to get by in Naples, I hope*
Saprà: (lit.) *He'll know how to* (L23, N15)
- 6 **Purché non perda il senso di orientamento, come gli è già capitato qualche volta.** *Provided that he doesn't lose his sense of direction as has already happened to him a few times.*
Perda is the present subjunctive of **perdere**; **purché:** *provided that* must always be followed by a subjunctive.
- 7 **Invece di star qui a preoccuparmi sarebbe meglio che andassi a fare la spesa e facessi un po' di provviste per questi quattro o cinque giorni che restiamo qui.** *Instead of standing here worrying it would be better if I went shopping and got in a few provisions for these four or five days that we're staying here.*
- a **sarebbe meglio che andassi:** *it would be better if* (lit. *that*) **I went**
Andassi is the 1st person singular of **andare** in the imperfect subjunctive. The subjunctive is required here after the phrase **sarebbe meglio che**. The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive are used in the subordinate clause if a past or conditional tense is used in the main clause.
- b **fare la spesa:** *to go shopping* Notice that this expression can be used both in the singular and the plural (L10, N21b).
- c **facessi un po' di provviste:** *I got in a few provisions* **Facessi** is the 1st person singular of **fare** in the imperfect subjunctive (Appendix 10); here the subjunctive once again depends on **sarebbe meglio che**.

Part two: New words

il banco stall
 l'etto 100 grammes
 il filetto fillet
 il fruttivendolo fruiterer
 il grammo gramme
 il lattaio milkman
 il litro litre
 il macellaio butcher

il panettiere baker
 il parmigiano Parmesan, Parmesan cheese
 il pensiero thought
 il pezzo piece of meat, joint
 il prodotto product, produce
 il sedano head of celery, celery
 il sottofiletto undercut

il tappo cap, top
 l'uovo (pl. le uova) egg
 il vitello veal

l'albicocca apricot
 la borsetta handbag
 la bufala buffalo (fem.)
 la carne meat
 la coscia thigh, leg
 la cotoletta cutlet
 la dozzina dozen
 la latteria dairy
 la lattuga lettuce
 la macelleria butcher's shop
 la regione region, area
 la ricotta buttermilk
 la scaloppina escalope
 la susina plum
 l'uva grapes
 la verdura vegetables, greens

la vergogna shame, shameful thing

fertile fertile
 maturo ripe
 migliore better
 peggiore worse, inferior
 sottile thin, fine
 stracarico overladen
 tenero tender

assaggiare to taste
 durare to last
 rendere to give, to yield
 tagliare to cut
 toccare a to be the turn of

nonostante although, notwithstanding

accanto next door
 in pensiero worried

Part two: Notes

Al mercato di frutta e verdura *At the fruit and vegetable market*

- 8 **Sono meno alti di quelli dei negozi.** *They're lower than* (lit. *less high than those*) *in the shops.*
meno alti di quelli: *less high than those* Notice that we use **meno ... di:** *less than* to express this comparison. **Di** is used to express *than* in front of nouns, pronouns, or numbers, e.g. **Alberto è meno grande di quel ragazzo:** *Alberto is not so tall as* (lit. *less tall than*) *that boy.*
- 9 **È vero: qui sono più alti che a Firenze.** *It's true: here they're higher* (lit. *more high*) *than in Florence.*
più alti che: *higher than* Notice that here we use **più ... che:** *more ... than* to express comparison. **Che** is used to express *than* in all cases other than those listed for **di** (Note 8), e.g. **Fa più caldo a Napoli che a Milano:** *It's warmer in Naples than in Milan.* **Piove meno in estate che in autunno:** *It rains less in summer than in autumn* (Appendix 4f).
10. **Siamo nella regione più fertile d'Italia e troviamo i prodotti peggiori al prezzo più alto.** *We're in the most fertile part of Italy and find the worst products at the highest prices.*
- a **nella regione più fertile d'Italia:** *in the most fertile part of Italy* To make the superlative of adjectives we must use the definite article followed by **più** or **meno** followed by the adjective, e.g. **La più bella ragazza della città:** *the most beautiful girl in the town;* **il paese meno**

conosciuto del mondo: *the least known country in the world*; il viaggio più lungo di tutti: *the longest journey of all*. Notice that **di** is used to express *in* or *of* after superlatives of this type.

- b i prodotti peggiori: *the worst products* Peggiorare is the comparative and il peggiore the superlative of cattivo: *bad* (Appendix 4g).

- 11 Mi dia un chilo di albicocche, uno di susine, e ... quanto viene l'uva? *Give me a kilo of apricots, a kilo of plums and ... how much are the grapes?*

l'uva: *the grapes* Notice that **uva**, the collective word for *grapes*, is singular; *some grapes* are **dell'uva**.

- 12 No, va mangiata subito. *No, it should be eaten straight away.*
va mangiata: *it should be* (lit. *it goes*) *eaten* Notice this colloquial use of **andare** which is similar to the use of **venire** and **essere** that help form the passive (L21, N10) but with the additional meaning of *ought to be* or *should be*.

- 13 Allora, me ne dia solo mezzo chilo. Vorrei anche due lattughe, un sedano ... *Well then, give me only half a kilo (lit. of it). I'd also like two lettuces, some celery ...*

- 14 Oh, credevo che fosse un banco solo. Oh, I thought it was all one stall. credevo che fosse: *I thought it was* Fosse is the imperfect subjunctive of **essere** (Appendix 8) used after **credevo che** (L23, N17).

In macelleria At the butcher's

- 15 Vorrei un pezzo da fare arrosto e otto etti di fettine di vitello. *I'd like a piece of meat for roasting and eight hundred grammes of veal slices.*

a da fare arrosto: *for roasting, to roast* Notice this useful expression.

b otto etti: *eight hundred grammes* Food is sold in **chili**: *kilos* which are subdivided into **etti**; an **etto** is equivalent to one hundred grammes.

- 16 Tenerissimo. *Very tender.*

Remember that to form the superlative of an adjective where no comparison is involved, you should normally add **issimo** to the adjective after dropping the final vowel, e.g. **bello**, **bellissimo**; **elegante**, **elegantissimo**.

- 17 Ho anche del sottofiletto che costa meno, se vuole. *I've also got some undercut which costs less, if you want.*

- 18 No, no, il filetto è migliore, e rende di più. *No, no, the fillet is better and there's more on it.*

migliore: *better* Remember that **migliore** is the irregular comparative of **buono**: *good* (Appendix 4g).

- 19 Sì, me le tagli sottili e me le batta un po' perché voglio fare delle scaloppine e delle cotolette alla milanese. *Yes, cut them thin for me and beat them for me a little because I want to make some escalopes and some Milanese cutlets.*

In latteria At the dairy

- 20 latteria: *dairy* Notice that the name of a particular type of shop often ends in **eria** in Italian, e.g. **tabaccheria**, **merceria** and **macelleria**.

- 21 Sono passata anche dal panettiere: il più è fatto. Devo solo più entrare qui dal lattai. *I called in at the baker's too: I've done most of it. Now all I have to do is to go here to the dairy.*

a Devo solo più entrare: *All I have to do now is to go in* Notice how Maria Teresa contracts the idea *The only thing more that I have to do now is to ...* with the three words **Devo solo più ...**

b lattai: *milkman* Notice that the name of tradesmen often ends with the letters **aio**, e.g. **macellaio**: *butcher* and **tabaccaio**: *tobacconist*.

- 22 Guardi che le è caduto qualcosa. *Look, (lit. that) you've dropped something.*

le è caduto qualcosa: (lit.) *something has fallen to you* Notice that in common with other verbs that are not followed by a direct object, **cadere** forms its perfect tense with **essere**. Notice too this way of saying that someone has *dropped* something.

- 23 Mi si è aperta la borsetta senza che me ne accorgessi. *My handbag opened without my noticing it.*

a Mi si è aperta la borsetta: (lit.) *The handbag opened to me* Here the verb **aprire** is used in the reflexive form to indicate that the handbag opened of its own accord, without Maria Teresa's knowledge. **Mi**: *to me* is used to indicate to whom it happened.

b senza che me ne accorgessi: (lit.) *without that I noticed it.* **Me ne accorgessi** is the imperfect subjunctive of **accorgersi di** (*qualcosa*): *to notice*; **senza che** must always be followed by a verb in the subjunctive.

- 24 Si figuri! *Don't mention it! (L19, N15)*

- 25 A chi tocca? *Whose turn is it?*

- 26 Due litri tappo bianco e un pezzo di parmigiano. *Two litres of white top and a piece of Parmesan.*

tappo bianco: *white top* Here Maria Teresa is referring to milk that has been sealed with a white top.

- 27 Sì, vorrei anche una dozzina di uova e ... ha della ricotta? *Yes, I'd also like a dozen eggs and ... have you any buttermilk?*

uova: *eggs* The singular form of **le uova** (fem. pl.) is **l'uovo** (masc.).

- 28 L'assaggi. *Taste it.*

- 29 Uhm, non credevo che l'aveste buona come a Roma. *Uhm, I didn't think it was (lit. you had it) as good here as in Rome.*

a **Aveste** is the imperfect subjunctive of **avere** in the **voi** form (Appendix 8); here it is used because it follows **non credevo che**.

- b buona come a Roma: *as good as in Rome*. This phrase is really the contracted version of **così buona come a Roma**: *as good as in Rome*, **così ... come** being the equivalent of *as ... as* when comparing two like things. **Così** is usually omitted in colloquial Italian.

A casa At home

- 30 Ero in pensiero: credevo che tornaste prima. *I was worried: I thought you would have been back earlier.*
credevo che tornaste: *I thought you would have been back* Notice again the imperfect subjunctive used after **credevo che** (Note 29a). Here, however, Maria Teresa could equally well have said **credevo che sareste tornati**, i.e. she could have used the past conditional as in English.
- 31 Nonostante ve l'avessi detto. *Although I had reminded (lit. told) you.*
Nonostante stands for **nonostante che**: *in spite of the fact that* which has always to be followed by a subjunctive. **Avessi detto** is the pluperfect subjunctive formed from **avessi**, the imperfect subjunctive of **avere**, and the past participle **detto**.
- 32 Sì, ma ci mancava poco che prendessi un taxi per tornare a casa. Ero stracarica. *Yes, but I almost caught a taxi home. I was overladen.*
 a ci mancava poco che prendessi: (lit.) *there was lacking little that I took*
Prendessi is the imperfect subjunctive of **prendere**; a subjunctive is always essential after the expression **ci manca poco che**.
 b Ero stracarica: *I was overladen*. The prefix **stra** preceding an adjective gives a superlative meaning, e.g. **carico**: *laden*, but **stracarico**: *overladen*; **vecchio**: *old*, but **stravecchio**: *very old* and **straricco**: *very rich*.

Part three: New words

il raccolto	harvest	pessimo	very bad
l'arancia	orange	caricare	to load
la cantina	cellar	salire	to go up, to rise
la cassetta	box	peggio	worse

Part three: Notes

Dal panettiere At the baker's

- 33 Un chilo di pane all'olio. *A kilo of bread made with oil.*
 Bread is often sold as rolls which are then sold not as individual items but by their weight.

- 34 Ma è di nuovo aumentato? *But has it gone up again?*
è aumentato?: *has it gone up?* Notice that here **aumentare** uses **essere** to help form its perfect tense (Note 22)
- 35 Costa quasi più caro della carne. *It's almost dearer than meat.* (Note 9)
- 36 E sarà peggio quest'inverno. *And it'll be worse this winter.*
peggio: *worse* This is the irregular comparative form of the adverb **male**: *bad* or *badly* (Appendix 5b).
- 37 C'è stato un pessimo raccolto. *There's been a very bad harvest.*
pessimo: *very bad* **Pessimo** is the irregular superlative of the adjective **cattivo**: *bad* (Appendix 4g).

Al mercato At the market

- 38 Ce ne abbiamo ancora per molto? *Is there a lot more to do?*
- 39 Mi sembrava che tu avessi deciso di no. *I thought (lit. It seemed to me that) you had decided not to.*
tu avessi deciso: *you had decided* This is again the pluperfect subjunctive, here following the impersonal expression **Mi sembrava che**.

Lezione venticinque

Lesson twenty-five

Part one: New words

l'elicottero	helicopter
il mal di mare	sea sickness
il parrucchiere	hairdresser
lo scavo	excavation
il telegramma	telegram
la bellezza	beauty
la costa	coast
la nave	ship

Dal parrucchiere

At the hairdresser's

amalfitano	of Amalfi
venticinesimo	twenty-fifth
anticipare	to bring forward
fermarsi	to stay
perdere tempo	to waste time
che bellezza!	how lovely!
la Sardegna	Sardinia

- 1 Se sapessi dove li ha messi! *If I only knew where he's put them!*
- a Se sapessi: *If I knew* Sapessi is the imperfect subjunctive of sapere in the io form. When se is followed by a past tense, this past tense is usually in the subjunctive.
- b li ha messi!: *has put them!* Li refers to i biglietti in the following sentence.
- 2 Ci fermeremo due giorni e poi raggiungeremo papà e mamma a Palermo. *We'll stay (there) for two days and then we'll join mum and dad in Palermo.*
- 3 Oggi sono andati ad Ischia: in elicottero perché la mamma soffre il mal di mare. *Today they've gone to Ischia: by helicopter because mother suffers from sea-sickness.*
soffre il mal di mare: *suffers from seasickness* Notice that soffrire: to suffer can be followed either by a direct object as here (il mal di mare) or by di followed by the illness (L19, N4).
- 4 Se quel benedetto ragazzo fosse qui, almeno non perderei tempo a cercare. *If that wretched (lit. blessed) boy were here, at least I wouldn't waste time looking.*
Fosse is the imperfect subjunctive of essere used after se: *if*. In conditional clauses of this type, where se is followed by the imperfect subjunctive, the verb in the main clause must be in the conditional (here perderei). A further example is Se avessi la macchina, ti accompagnerei a casa: *If I had my car, I would take you home* (L24, N7a).
- 5 Ma è andato a farsi tagliare i capelli. *But he's gone to get his hair cut.* Remember that farsi fare qualcosa is to have something done to or for oneself, e.g. Mi faccio lavare i capelli: *I'm having my hair washed.*
- 6 Anch'io devo andare dal parrucchiere appena sono pronta. *I've got to go to the hairdresser's too as soon as I'm ready* (L12, N39b).
- 7 Ci mancava anche questo. *That's all I needed.*
ci mancava: (lit.) *there was lacking* (L24, N32a)

Part two: New words

il barbiere barber
il caffè macchiato coffee with a dash
of milk
il disordine disorder
il lato side
il lotto state lottery
lo shampoo shampoo
il totocalcio football pools

il viso face
le basette sideburns
la carità charity
la cerimonia ceremony
le doppie punte split ends
la figura figure
la forfora dandruff

la frizione lotion
la manicure manicure
la messa in piega set
l'onda wave
la pettinatura hairstyle
la primavera spring
la piega fold, pleat
la punta point
la rivista magazine
la schedina form, coupon
la somma sum
la tinta colour, colouring, dye
la vincita win

anonimo anonymous
efficace effective
favoloso fantastic, fabulous
identico identical
macchiato spotted, stained
secco dry

unico only

confondersi to be confused, to get mixed up
fare bella figura to make a good impression
fare la manicure to have a manicure
fare la tinta to have one's hair coloured
giocare to play, to gamble
mettere a posto to put right
parlare del più e del meno to make small talk, to talk of this and that
pentirsi di to regret
radersi to shave
sfoltire to thin
vincere to win

per carità for goodness' sake

Part two: Notes

Lo shampoo *The shampoo*

- 8 Vorrei anche fare la manicure, se fosse possibile. *I'd also like to have a manicure, if (lit. it were) possible.*
Notice once again that the sequence of tenses is the same as in Note 4, i.e. imperfect subjunctive in the *if* clause and conditional in the main clause.
- 9 Le manderò Gianna, appena è libera. *I'll send you Gianna, as soon as she's free.* (Note 6)
- 10 Falla passare subito. *Do it straight away (lit. Make her pass immediately).*

Il taglio *The cut*

- 11 Come li vuole? *How do you want it?*
Here li refers to i capelli: *the hair*.
- 12 Devo andare a una cerimonia e vorrei proprio fare bella figura. *I have to go to a wedding (lit. ceremony) and I'd really like to make a good impression.*
Cerimonia is the general word for a religious or public celebration.
- 13 Da quanto tempo non li taglia? *How long is it since you had it cut?*
Remember this construction (L16, N8).
- 14 Ci vorrebbe un bel taglio corto per metterli a posto. *You need a nice, short cut to put it right.*

- 15 L'ho fatto una volta e me ne sono pentita. *I did it once and regretted it.* Notice that the reflexive verb **pentirsi**: *to regret* is always followed by **di**, e.g. **Mi sono pentito di avergli parlato**: *I regretted having spoken to him.* Here, **ne** is the pronoun that includes the **di** that must follow **pentirsi**.
- 16 **Se gliel'avessi fatto io, sarebbe stata contenta.** *If I had done it for you, you would have been pleased.* Here **se** is followed by the pluperfect subjunctive and the main verb **sarebbe stata** is in the perfect conditional. This follows exactly the same sequence of tenses as in English. Further examples are **Se Alberto fosse andato via, io sarei tornato**: *If Alberto had gone away, I would have come back.* **Se me l'aveste detto prima, non vi avrei telefonato**: *If you had told me before, I wouldn't have telephoned you.*
- 17 **Se fossi in lei, lascerei due onde più corte ai lati del viso.** *If I were you, I'd leave two shorter waves at the sides of the face.*
- a **Se fossi in lei**: *If I were you* Notice that the imperfect subjunctive is used after **se** just as *were* is used after *if* in the English expression.
- b **lascerei**: *I would leave* Notice again that exactly the same tense sequence applies here as in English, i.e. the main verb, **lascerei**, is in the conditional, just as *I would leave* is conditional in English.
- 18 **D'accordo, ma dietro me li tagli il meno possibile.** *All right, but at the back cut it as little as possible (lit.) the least possible.*
- 19 **Li sfooltisco solo un po'.** **Vuole una frizione?** *I'll just cut it a little. Do you want some (setting) lotion?*
sfooltisco: *I'll cut* **Sfooltire** literally means *to make less thick*.
- 20 **Sì, qualcosa per far durare di più la messa in piega.** *Yes, something to make the set last longer.*

Dal barbiere *At the barber's*

- 21 **No, sono subito da lei. Eccomi. Cosa deve fare?** *No, I'll be with you straight away. Here I am. What do you want done (lit. must you do)?*
- 22 **No, mi rado sempre da solo.** *No, I always shave myself.*
- 23 **Li vuole molto corti dietro?** *Do you want it very short at the back?*
- 24 **Se lei avesse un prodotto veramente efficace ...** *If you had something really effective ...*
Notice once again the imperfect subjunctive following **se**.

Parlando del più e del meno *Making small talk*

- 25 **L'unico tredici in tutt'Italia.** *The only thirteen in the whole of Italy.*
To win on the Italian football pools you must predict the result of the thirteen chosen matches correctly.
- 26 **Se diceva il suo nome, chissà quanto pagava di tasse.** *If he had said his name, who knows how much he would have paid in taxes.*

se diceva: (lit.) *if he said* Although up till now we have always seen the subjunctive used after **se**, there is a tendency for it sometimes to be dropped from everyday speech and replaced by the imperfect which we find here. Notice too that here the imperfect is used in both **diceva** and **pagava** where we would have expected to find respectively the pluperfect subjunctive and the past conditional, i.e. **Se avesse detto ... , chissà quanto avrebbe pagato ...** This is again a colloquial usage of the imperfect, similar to that you saw in L18, N35.

- 27 **Lei ci gioca?** *Do you do the pools (lit. play at it)?*
Giocare means both *to play* and *to gamble*. *To play AT something* is **giocare A qualcosa** which is why Alberto uses **ci** to express *at it*.
- 28 **No, io gioco al lotto.** *No, I do the lottery.*
The barber is referring to the weekly lottery organised by the State.
- 29 **Ha mai vinto?** *Have you ever won?*
Vinto is the irregular past participle of **vincere**: *to win*.
- 30 **Eh, caro mio, se avessi vinto non sarei qui a fare il barbiere.** *Oh, my dear (man), if I had won, I wouldn't be here working as a barber.*
- 31 **Io faccio la schedina del totocalcio tutti i sabati, ma non ho mai avuto fortuna.** *I do the pools every Saturday, but I've never been lucky.*
Tutti i sabati and **ogni sabato** both mean *every Saturday*.

Part three: New words

il biondo cenere ash blond
il milionario millionaire
il milione million
il piacere favour
il sogno dream

biondo blond
delicato delicate
fine fine, subtle
furibondo furious

la cenere ash

fare il piacere to do a favour
sognare to dream (of)

Part three: Notes

Sogni *Dreams*

- 32 **Ah, se tu avessi giocato i numeri che ho sognato.** *Ah, if you had played the numbers that I dreamed of.*
Sognare means both *to dream* and *to dream of*.
- 33 **Te l'avevo detto io!** *I told you so (lit. I had told it to you)!*
Notice that this expression uses the pluperfect in Italian.

Una signora furibonda *A furious lady*

- 34 **Ma mi faccia il piacere!** *Do me a favour!*
Fare il piacere a qualcuno is used only in an ironic sense.

Part one: New words

l'argento silver
 i confetti sugared almonds
 il costume costume
 l'invitato guest
 il proprietario owner
 il proprietario terriero landowner
 il rapporto relation, contact
 il ricevimento reception
 lo sposo bridegroom
 il tailleur suit

la bomboniera sweet box
 la sposa bride
 la voce voice

locale local
 preciso precise

Part one: Notes

- 1 Si dice che lo sposo sia un ricco proprietario terriero delle Puglie. *They say that the groom is a rich landowner from Apulia.*
 Si dice che lo sposo sia: *They say that the groom is* A subjunctive (here *sia*) is essential after the impersonal expression *Si dice che: It is said that.*
- 2 Lo si dice, se ne parla a mezza voce, ma non c'è nessuno che ne sappia qualcosa di preciso. *They say so, it's whispered, but no one knows anything for certain.*
 - a Lo si dice: *It is said* Where a direct object pronoun is used together with the impersonal *si* form of a verb, the pronoun precedes *si*, as here. Further examples are *lo si fa: it is done* and *lo si vede: it is seen.*
 - b se ne parla a mezza voce: (lit.) *it's spoken of in a half voice* Here the pronoun *ne* (not a direct object pronoun) follows the *si* of *si parla* and attracts *si* to be written and pronounced as *se*.
 - c non c'è nessuno che ne sappia qualcosa di preciso: (lit.) *there's no one who knows anything precise about it* *Sappia* is the present subjunctive of *sapere*. A subjunctive is essential here as *sappia* is in a relative clause (i.e. a clause introduced by *che*) that follows a negation.

sfarzoso sumptuous, splendid,
 magnificent
 sociale social
 terriero land
 tradizionale traditional
 ventiseiesimo twenty-sixth

distribuire to distribute
 si usa it is the custom

a mezza voce in a low voice, in an
 undertone

ventisei twenty-six

le Puglie Apulia

- 3 Se così fosse, perché non ha fatto una cerimonia sfarzosa come si usa da noi in Sardegna? *If that were the case, why didn't he have a (really) sumptuous wedding as we usually have here in Sardinia?*
- a Se così fosse: (lit.) *If it were like that* (L25, N17a).
- b si usa: *it is the custom* The verb *usare* is used in the impersonal *si* form to mean *it is customary, it is the custom.*
- 4 Qui, niente: la sposa in tailleur rosso e blu, lui in grigio, come se andassero in ufficio. *Here they've done nothing: the bride's in a red and blue suit, he's in grey, just as though they were going to the office.*
 come se andassero: (lit.) *as if they were going* *Andassero* is the imperfect subjunctive of *andare*; the imperfect subjunctive always follows *come se*.
- 5 È il matrimonio meno tradizionale che io abbia mai visto. *It's the least traditional wedding that I have ever seen.*
 che io abbia mai visto: *that I have ever seen* *Abbia visto* is the perfect subjunctive of *vedere*. In this case the subjunctive is used because it is in a relative clause that follows a superlative, here *il matrimonio meno tradizionale: the least traditional wedding*. A further example of the subjunctive used after a superlative is *È la più bella città che abbia mai visitato: It's the most beautiful city I've ever visited* (Appendix 7h).
- 6 Io non dico l'abito bianco, ma almeno il costume locale la sposa se lo poteva mettere. *I wouldn't insist on (lit. I don't say) a white dress, but the bride could at least have worn the local costume.*
 - a se lo poteva mettere: *could have put on* Here *lo* refers back to *il costume locale* and is not grammatically essential to the sentence.
 - b *Se* is the reflexive pronoun *si* belonging to *mettersi: to put on, to wear* that has become *se* in front of another pronoun (L17, N3). Notice that when direct object pronouns are used colloquially in this way together with reflexive pronouns, the reflexive pronoun precedes and becomes *se*; compare this word order with Note 2a.
 - c *Poteva* is used colloquially here in place of *avrebbe potuto* (L25, N26).
- 7 Per fortuna al ricevimento hanno distribuito i confetti e le bomboniere d'argento: era il minimo che potessero fare. *Fortunately they gave out the sugared almonds and the silver sweet boxes at the reception: it was the least they could do.*
 - a i confetti: *the sugared almonds* A small quantity of these are given to the best man, the bridesmaids and the guests, tied in white muslin and often presented in a special container (*la bomboniera*).
 - b era il minimo che potessero fare: *it was the least they could do.* Once again the subjunctive is used after a superlative, here *il minimo: the least* (Note 5 and Appendix 7h).

26 Part two: New words

il banchiere banker
i cioccolatini chocolates
il cognato brother-in-law
il colmo height, end, last straw
il compagno companion, friend
il corridore racing driver
il maschio boy, male
il municipio town hall
il muso face
il permesso permission
i pettegolezzi gossip

la cotta crush, passion
la distinzione refinement
la fiamma flame
la formalità formality
la madrina godmother
la presentazione introduction
la sorpresa surprise

divorziato divorced

elementare elementary
parigino Parisian
scandaloso scandalous
sincero sincere
spaesato lost, out of things

crescere to grow
dare del tu to be on informal terms
nascere to be born

quella tale that person (fem.)

tranne except, apart from

chiunque whoever

davvero really
magari perhaps

piacere di conoscerla pleased to meet
you

Part two: Notes

Presentazioni Introductions

- 8 Era ora che lasciassi un po' il lavoro. Alberto, come mai quel muso lungo? *It was time that I left work a little. Alberto, how come that long face?*
- a Lasciassi is the imperfect subjunctive of lasciare following *era ora che*.
b Muso is a colloquial word for *face* or *expression*.
- 9 Non c'è nessuno che io conosca tranne gli sposi e i loro genitori. *I don't know anyone except the bride and the groom and their parents.*
- a Conosca is the subjunctive following *nessuno che* (Note 2c).
b gli sposi: the bride and groom La sposa: the bride and lo sposo: the groom make gli sposi: the bride and groom or the married couple.
- 10 Ci voleva un matrimonio per rivederci. *It took a wedding for us to see each other again.*
- 11 Spero che ci sarai anche al prossimo: questa è Giovanna, la mia fidanzata. *I hope that you'll be at the next one too: this is Giovanna, my fiancée.*
Spero che ci sarai: *I hope that you will be* Notice that after *sperare* che we can use either the future tense or the present subjunctive when referring to an event we hope will take place in the future.

- 12 Piacere di conoscerla. *Pleased to meet you.*
On meeting someone for the first time it is customary to shake hands and use either this phrase or simply *Piacere*.
- 13 Per carità, datevi del tu. *For goodness's sake, don't be formal with each other.*
Dare del tu means to use the informal tu form when speaking to someone, implying that you are on friendly, informal terms with him. Similarly, dare del lei means to be on formal terms with someone and addressing him as lei.

Questi bambini! These children!

- 14 È tanto che non la vedo. *It's a long time since I last saw you.*
- 15 Come sono cresciuti! *How they've grown!*
Crescere uses *essere* to help form its perfect tense.
- 16 Davide fa già la seconda elementare: ha sette anni. *Davide's already in the second year of elementary school: he's seven.*
The scuola elementare is attended by children between the ages of six and eleven.
- 17 Quando è nato? *When was he born?*
Nato is the past participle of *nascere*: *to be born* which uses *essere* to help form the perfect tense.
- 18 Peccato che Lina stia così lontano: mi piacerebbe andarla a trovare. *It's a shame that Lina lives such a long way away: I'd like to go and see her.*
- a The present subjunctive of *stare* here follows *peccato che* (L23, N29).
b mi piacerebbe andarla a trovare: *I'd like to go and see her.* This could equally well have been written *mi piacerebbe andare a trovarla*.
- 19 Devo portarli a lavarsi la faccia e le mani. *I must take them to wash their face and hands.*

Un incontro A meeting

- 20 Mi pare che noi ci siamo già visti. *I think we've met somewhere before* (lit. *It seems to me that we have already seen each other*).
Notice that the reflexive pronoun *ci* can mean both *ourselves* and *each other*. Similarly *vi siete visti* can mean both *you have seen yourselves* and *you have seen each other*, whilst *si sono visti* can mean *they have seen themselves* and *they have seen each other*. Siamo is subjunctive here following *Mi pare che* (L23, N3a).
- 21 Beh sì, una delle prime cotte. *Well yes, one of my first crushes.*
Prendere una cotta per qualcuno means *to have a crush on someone, to fall for someone*.
- 22 Perché non dovrei esserlo? *Why shouldn't I be?*
- 23 Qualunque cosa faccia, sono sicuro che lei ha successo. *Whatever you do, I'm sure you're successful.*
The subjunctive is always used in clauses introduced by *qualunque*.

- 24 **Chi è quella tale?** *Who's that person (over there)?*
 Quel tale is a very familiar and colloquial way of pointing someone out.
- 25 **Chiunque sia, ha proprio poco gusto nel vestire.** *Whoever it is, she's very little taste in the way she dresses.*
 Like **qualunque**, the verb in clauses introduced by **chiunque** is always in the subjunctive.
- 26 **Magari è piena di soldi.** *Perhaps she's loaded (lit. full of money).*
- 27 **Non vuol dire, sa. La distinzione non si compra con i soldi.** *It doesn't mean a thing, you know. You can't buy refinement with money.*
- 28 **A proposito, ha sentito che matrimonio ha fatto la Gilda?** *By the way, have you heard about Gilda's wedding (lit. what a marriage Gilda has made)?*
La is sometimes used colloquially in front of female Christian names.
- 29 **Mia cara, si è presa un banchiere parigino.** *My dear, she got herself a Parisian banker.*
- 30 **È il colmo. Chissà come c'è riuscita.** *That beats the lot. I wonder (lit. who knows) how she managed it.*
- 31 **In municipio, si capisce.** *In the town hall, of course.*
 The official registration of marriage must be made at the town-hall in Italy, although most Italian couples still prefer to have a church ceremony too.
- 32 **Comunque sia, ho idea che non durerà.** *However it may be, I've got an idea that it won't last.*
 Like the verb in clauses introduced by **chiunque** and **qualunque**, those in clauses introduced by **comunque** must also be in the subjunctive (Appendix 7g).

Part three: New words

il fatto fact
 il gesso plaster

la gelosia jealousy

simile similar

occuparsi (di) to look after, to mind
rimettersi to get better, to recover

dovunque wherever

le Canarie the Canary Islands

Part three: Notes

Parenti in ospedale *Relatives in hospital*

- 33 **Come sta il suo nipotino, signora?** *How's your grandson, signora?*
Nipotino: *grandson* and **nipotina:** *granddaughter* are considered diminutives of **nipote**. With diminutives, the rule about the omission of **il, la** or

l' before the possessive adjective when referring to one member of the family (L2, N19) does not apply. Thus, **mio fratello:** *my brother* but **il mio fratellino:** *my little brother*.

- 34 **Si è rimesso bene, grazie. Gli hanno già tolto il gesso.** *He's made a good recovery, thank you. They've already taken his plaster off.*
- 35 **La mia povera cugina ha avuto un incidente simile.** *My poor cousin has had a similar accident.*
 Where the member of the family is preceded or followed by an adjective, the rule about the omission of **il, la** or **l'** (Note 33) again does not apply, e.g. **mia sorella:** *my sister* but **la mia povera sorella:** *my poor sister*. Remember, however, that for the purposes of this rule **bambino, ragazzo** and **fidanzato** are not considered family members.
- 36 **Ne avrà per molto?** *Will she be there (lit. have of it) for a long time?*
- 37 **Bisogna proprio che vada a trovarla.** *I really must go and visit her.*
Vada is the present subjunctive of **andare** in the **io** form, used after **bisogna che**.

Gelosia Jealousy

- 38 **Non ti importa che ne abbia un altro?** *Don't you care that she's got someone else?*
 Notice the subjunctive **abbia** used after **ti importa che** (Appendix 7d).
- 39 **Tu occupati dei fatti tuoi.** *You mind your own business.*
 Notice the pronunciation of the reflexive verb command **occupati**.
- 40 **Si dice che stiano per andare alle Canarie insieme.** *They say that they're about to go to the Canaries together.*
Stiano is the present subjunctive of **stare** in the 3rd person plural used after **Si dice che**.
- 41 **Dovunque vadano, non è affar mio.** *Wherever they may be going, it's none of my business.*
 Notice the subjunctive **vadano** used after **dovunque** (Note 32).

Part one: New words

l'amore love
 l'artigiano artisan
 il burattinaio puppet showman
 il carrettino cart
 i finimenti harness, trimmings
 il paladino paladin, knight
 il pennacchio plume
 il pupo puppet
 il segno sign, mark
 il siciliano Sicilian
 il teatro dei pupi puppet show

l'avventura adventure
 la bardatura harness

immemorabile immemorial

ventisettesimo twenty-seventh

avvicinare to approach, to come
 close

dipingere to paint
 impazzire to go mad

intagliare to carve
 raccontare to tell
 tramandare to hand down

per filo e per segno in detail

ventisette twenty-seven

Sicilia Sicily

Part one: Notes

- Questo carrettino è stato costruito, intagliato e dipinto dagli artigiani del mio paese. *This cart was built, carved and painted by artisans of my village.*
 Dipinto is the irregular past participle of *dipingere*: to paint.
- Sui lati è dipinta la storia della bella Angelica e del paladino Orlando che impazzì d'amore per lei. *On the sides is painted the story of the lovely Angelica and the paladin Orlando who went mad with love for her.*
- a Sicily is rich in the legend of Orlando (Roland) and the other knights of Charlemagne's court. The stories of their escapades and brave deeds date from the time of the Crusades and these themes can still be seen painted on the highly-coloured, traditional Sicilian carts.
 b Impazzì is the *passato remoto* of *impazzire*.
- Se vi fermate a vedere il teatro dei pupi stasera, sentirete il burattinaio raccontare la loro tragica avventura per filo e per segno, come la si tramanda in Sicilia da tempi immemorabili. *If you stay and watch the puppet theatre this evening, you'll hear the puppet showman tell their tragic story in detail, as it has been handed down in Sicily from time immemorial.*
 Il teatro dei pupi, a travelling puppet show, is another Sicilian tradition.

The string puppets, often made of metal, stand two to three feet tall; the stories told are again traditionally those of Charlemagne's court.

- 4 Non abbiate paura: il cavallino è buono. *Don't be afraid: the pony won't hurt you* (lit. *is good*).

Notice that *abbiate* is the *voi* command form of *avere*.

- 5 Lasci pure avvicinare sua moglie, signore. *It's all right for you to let your wife come close, sir.*

Part two: New words

il campeggio camping-site
 il canto song
 il chiacchierone chatterbox
 il cratere crater
 l'effetto effect
 il folclore folklore
 il mandorlo almond
 il Marsala Marsala wine
 l'oliveto olive grove
 il paesaggio landscape
 lo sbarco landing
 lo scenario scenery
 i templi temples
 il topo mouse
 il topo di biblioteca book-worm
 il vanto boast, pride
 il vulcano volcano

l'ascensione ascent
 la biblioteca library
 la brina frost
 la calza stocking
 la cassata cassata
 la concordia concord, harmony
 la danza dance
 l'erba grass
 la giacca a vento wind-cheater
 la lava lava
 la nebbia fog, mist
 la panna cream
 la pelliccia fur coat

la pena trouble
 la sciocchezza foolishness
 la storia history
 la terraferma dry land

bruciato burned
 candito candied
 conservato preserved
 diffidente mistrustful
 faticoso tiring
 intenso intense, vivid
 lunare lunar
 meraviglioso marvellous, wonderful
 siciliano Sicilian
 suggestivo evocative

gridare to shout, to cry
 guardarsi attorno to look around one-
 self
 lasciare to let, to allow
 lasciare stare to leave alone
 suggerire to suggest
 valere to be worth
 valere la pena di to be worth while

attorno around
 perfettamente perfectly
 soltanto only

viva . . . ! long live . . . !

Part two: Notes

A Catania *At Catania*

- 6 Che ne dici dell'ascensione dell'Etna che ci ha suggerito? *What do you say to the trip up Etna that he suggested to us?*

The volcano, Mt. Etna, is situated to the north of Catania. Notice that we must speak of l'Etna, not just of Etna.

- 7 **Io l'ho sentito parlare soltanto del teatro dei pupi.** *I only heard him talking about the puppet show.*

Sull'Etna On Etna

- 8 **Ma ne vale la pena. Guardati attorno.** *But it's worth it. Look around you.*
Notice the expression **valere la pena di fare qualcosa**: *to be worth the trouble of doing something.*
- 9 **Ci manca poco. Ho visto la guida fermarsi là davanti.** *We're not far off. I saw the guide stop over there in front of us.*
- 10 **Che freddo per essere agosto!** *How cold it is for August!*
The summit of Mt. Etna is usually cold, even in summer.
- 11 **Ma mi ci vorrebbe la pelliccia.** *But I really need my fur coat.*

Nella Valle dei Templi In the Valley of the Temples

- 12 Notice that the plural of **il tempio** is **i templi**.
- 13 The Valley of the Temples is on the southern coast of Sicily at Agrigento. Although the temples were erected in the 6th and 5th centuries B.C. some are still standing.
- 14 **Lascia parlare la guida, Paolo.** *Let the guide talk, Paolo.*
Lasciare behaves like **fare** in constructions of this type, i.e. the noun object follows the two verbs (L18, N6a).

A Marsala At Marsala

- 15 Marsala, a town on the western coast of Sicily, has given its name to the well-known Marsala dessert wine.
- 16 **Io muoio dalla voglia di assaggiare una vera cassata con tanta panna e frutta candita.** *I'm dying (from the desire) to taste a real cassata with lots of cream and candied fruit.*
- a **Muoio** is the 1st person singular of **morire** (Appendix 10).
- b **Cassata** is a traditional Sicilian sweet. It can be ice-cream made in layers with candied fruit and cream, or a kind of cake made with sponge-cake, liqueur and chocolate.
- 17 **Ma la sappiamo già la storia di Marsala, lo sbarco dei Mille, Garibaldi ...** *But we already know the history of Marsala, the landing of the Thousand, Garibaldi ...*
Garibaldi played his part in the unification of Italy by landing at Marsala with a thousand volunteers in 1860, defeating the occupying Bourbon troops and handing over Sicily and southern Italy to King Vittorio Emanuele II.

- 18 **Ma tu lo sapevi che "... appena ebbe messo piede sulla terraferma, Garibaldi gridò: Viva l'Italia ..."** *But did you know that "... as soon as he had set foot on dry land, Garibaldi cried: Long live Italy ..."*
Where the main verb (here **gridò**) is in the past definite (**passato remoto**), the tense used with it in a dependent clause that starts with either **appena**, **dopo che** or **quando** and refers to a time further back in the past, is called the past anterior. This tense is formed from the **passato remoto** of the auxiliary verb (here **ebbe**) followed by a past participle (here **messo**).

Part three: New words

il brindisi	toast	brindare	to drink a toast
il moscato	muscatel	esplorare	to explore
il regno	kingdom	imparare	to learn
		rimanere	to remain
la colonna	column, pillar	vacillare	to wobble, to be unsteady
la leggenda	legend		
la tabaccheria	tobacconist's shop	di fronte	opposite
		vacillante	unsteady, tottering

Part three: Notes

- 19 **Un momento, ho visto la nostra guida andare via. Non vorrei perderla.** *Just a moment, I've seen our guide going away. I wouldn't like to lose him.*
Non vorrei perderla: *I wouldn't like to lose him.* Notice that grammatically **guida** is a feminine noun and that here, although the guide is a man, the pronoun referring to him must still be **la**.
- 20 **L'ho vista entrare nella tabaccheria qui di fronte.** *I saw him go into the tobacconist's opposite here.*
Notice that the past participle **visto** is in its feminine form to agree with the preceding direct object pronoun **l'**, standing for **la** and referring to **la guida**.
- 21 **Sì, è uno qui del posto.** *Yes, he comes from here (lit. he's one here of the place).*

Una leggenda A legend

- 22 **Dopo che il re gli ebbe ordinato di cercare in fondo al mare ...** *After the king had ordered him to search at the bottom of the sea ...*
Notice again the past anterior (**ebbe ordinato**) used with the past definite (Note 18).

- 27** 23 E poi si rituffò nel fondo del mare dove rimase per sempre a sostenere la colonna vacillante della Sicilia. *And then he dived again to the bottom of the sea where he remained for ever holding up the wobbling pillar of Sicily.*
- a Rimase is the **passato remoto** of rimanere.
- b Legend has it that triangular Sicily was supported by three columns, one at each extremity.
- 24 L'ho sentita raccontare dal mio zio siciliano. *I've heard my Sicilian uncle tell it (lit. I've heard it told by my Sicilian uncle).*
Again the past participle **sentito** agrees with the preceding direct object pronoun **l'** standing for **la leggenda**.

28 Lezione ventotto

Lesson twenty-eight

All'ufficio di polizia

At the police station

Part one: New words

lo spintone shove
l'ufficio di polizia police station
la tasca pocket
ventottesimo twenty-eighth

fare caso to take notice
scoprire to discover
tenere stretto to hold tight
sovrappensiero distracted, lost in thought
ventotto twenty-eight

Part one: Notes

- 1 Se c'era Maria Teresa, non mi succedeva certo. *If Maria Teresa had been there, it certainly couldn't have happened (to me).*
Se c'era Maria Teresa: *If Maria Teresa had been there* (L25, N26)

Part two: New words

l'aggressore attacker
l'anello ring
l'aspetto aspect, look

il danno damage
il fuoco fire
il furto theft

l'incendio fire
gli oggetti smarriti lost property
l'oggetto object
l'ordine order
il pompiere fireman
i pompieri fire-brigade
lo scippo mugging
lo spavento fright
l'usciera doorman, porter

l'azienda company
la nota note
la pensione pension
la sicurezza security
l'uscita di sicurezza emergency exit

invalido invalid, disabled
salvo safe, unhurt
sano e salvo safe and sound
scalognato unlucky

smarrito lost

agitarsi to get upset
arginare to contain, to limit, to bring under control
bruciare to burn
calmarsi to calm down
denunciare to report
lodare to praise
prendere fuoco to catch fire
propagarsi to spread
rubare to steal
strappare to snatch

addosso up to, against
di fianco alongside
per ordine in order
persino even

Dio sia lodato! Thank God!

Part two: Notes

Oggetti smarriti Lost property

- 2 Mi hanno rubato il portafoglio. *I've had my wallet stolen (lit. They've stolen my wallet).*

Uno scippo A mugging

- 3 Mi sono arrivati addosso in tre e mi sono dovuta fermare per forza. *Three of them surrounded me (lit. They arrived against me in three) and I had no choice but to stop.*
- a in tre (L23, N41)
- b mi sono dovuta fermare: *I had to stop* When **dovere** is in a compound tense and followed by a verb that normally forms its perfect tense with **esserè**, **dovere** is also frequently attracted into forming its perfect with **essere**, as here. In such cases the normal rules for the agreement of the past participle apply. The **signorina** could equally well have said **mi sono dovuta fermare** or **ho dovuto fermarmi**; in the latter case there is of course no agreement of the past participle with the subject as **dovere** here uses **avere** to help form the **passato prossimo**. **Potere** and **volere** are also sometimes similarly attracted.
- 4 Ero dovuta andare a fare un biglietto ... *I had to go and buy a ticket ...*
For the same reasons as in Note 3b, the **signorina** could equally well have said **Avevo dovuto andare ...**

- 5 Sarà stato mezz'ora o tre quarti d'ora fa. *It must have been half an hour or three quarters of an hour ago.*
 6 Sia precisa, per favore. *Be precise, please.*
 Sia is the lei command form of *essere*.
 7 Mi dica, che aspetto avevano? *Tell me, what did they look like?*

Sul luogo dell'incendio *At the scene of the fire*

- 8 Avevo dovuto scendere un momento in farmacia. *I'd had to go down to the chemist's for a moment.*
 Maria Teresa could equally well have said *Ero dovuta scendere* (Notes 3b and 4).
 9 Oh, non parlarvene! *Oh, don't talk to me about it!*
 Non parlarvene is Non parlare: *Don't talk*, followed by me: *to me* followed by ne: *of it*.

Part three: New words

il disastro disaster
 il falò bonfire
 il gioco game
 l'indizio clue
 il tipo type, fellow
 il vicino di casa neighbour
 l'argenteria silver, silver-ware
 la causa cause

la luce light
 la pineta pine forest
 la siccità drought, dryness
 devastare to devastate, to lay waste
 per gioco for fun
 può darsi perhaps

Part three: Notes

Tra vicine di casa *Between neighbours*

- 10 No, ho visto tutte le luci accese e ho pensato che foste in casa. *No, I saw all the lights on and I thought you were in the house.*
 a Acceso is the irregular past participle of *accendere*.
 b Foste is the imperfect subjunctive of *essere* in the voi form.

La pineta brucia. *The pine forest is burning.*

- 11 Può darsi, ma potrebbe essere cominciato con un falò acceso da dei ragazzini per gioco. *Perhaps, but it could have started with a bonfire that some children had lit for fun.*

Lezione ventinove

In cerca di lavoro

Lesson twenty-nine

In search of work

Part one: New words

l'annuncio economico	small advertisement	serio	serious-minded
la cerca	search	ventinovesimo	twenty-ninth
la libreria	bookshop	tentare	to try, to attempt
l'ospitalità	hospitality	trasferirsi	to transfer
la referenza	reference	qualcuno	some, a few
economico	economic	in cerca di	in search of
farmaceutico	pharmaceutical	ventinove	twenty-nine
noto	well-known		

Part one: Notes

- 1 I miei sono sul treno per Milano. *The rest of the family are on the Milan train.*
 I miei: *The rest of the family* (L18, N23)
 2 Ho guardato gli annunci economici sul giornale. *I've looked at the small ads. in the paper.*
 Notice that we must say *SUL giornale* when we mean *IN the paper*.
 3 "Cercasi commesso libreria centrale mezza giornata". *"Assistant wanted central bookshop half day"*.
 In advertisements *si cerca, si affitta, si vende* etc. are often written *cercasi, affittasi, vendesi* respectively.

Part two: New words

l'alloggio	lodging	il vitto	food, provisions
il colloquio	interview	vitto e alloggio	board and lodging
il contatto	contact	il volontario	volunteer
il controllo	check, checking	la catalogazione	cataloguing
l'impiego	job, position	la colonia	holiday camp
il libraio	bookseller	la licenza	leaving certificate
il salto	jump, leap	la licenza media	middle school leaving certificate
lo studente	student	l'organizzazione	organisation
il/la telefonista	telephonist		
il tentativo	attempt, try		

la pratica experience, practice
la proposta suggestion
la soluzione solution
la specializzazione specialisation

brutto ugly
liceale senior secondary school
medio middle school
specializzato specialised

assumere to take on, to employ
attendere to wait
attendere in linea to hold the line
computare to spell (out)
consistere in to consist of
dirigere to direct, to run

fare un salto to drop in, to pop over
garantire to guarantee
guardare to look after
raccomandare to recommend
trattarsi di to be a question of

col = con il

al volo straight away
alla pari au pair
in ordine in order, tidy
qua here
rapidamente rapidly, quickly

Inghilterra England
Londra London

Part two: Notes

Il colloquio col libraio *The interview with the bookseller*

- 4 Col is the elision of **con** and **il**. It is almost obsolete in modern Italian but is used here as the word **libraio** begins with **l** and is therefore easier to pronounce than **con il**.
- 5 **Ha la licenza media?** *Have you got your middle school leaving certificate?* Children attend the **scuola media** between eleven and fourteen. With the **licenza media** they can attend any type of higher secondary school.
- 6 **No, no, vogliamo qualcuno che ci garantisca un periodo di almeno sei mesi con qualche mattina e qualche pomeriggio.** *No, no, we want someone who could guarantee us a period of at least six months with some mornings and some afternoons.*
Notice that **garantire** is used in the present subjunctive. The subjunctive is often used after indefinite pronouns, like **qualcuno**, followed by **che** in order to express possibility, not certainty.

Alla pari *Au pair*

- 7 **Dovrò guardare i bambini, prepararli i pasti e tenere in ordine la loro stanza.** *I'll have to look after the children, prepare their meals and keep their room in order.*

Un altro tentativo *Another attempt*

- 8 **Telefono per quell'annuncio sul "Tempo" di stamattina.** *I'm phoning about that advert in this morning's "Tempo".*
Il **Tempo** is a daily newspaper printed in Rome.

- 9 **Torino Otranto Sondrio Imola. Tosi.**

Italian place names are used for spelling names and foreign words over the telephone, e.g. A for Ancona, B for Bologna, C for Como etc.

- 10 **Sono al primo impiego.** *This is my first job.*
- 11 **Mi dispiace, ci serve qualcuno che abbia già un po' di pratica.** *I'm sorry, we need someone who's already got some experience.*
Remember to use a subjunctive after indefinite pronouns (Note 6).

Soluzione *Solution*

- 12 **Che ne diresti se andassimo su da mio zio in Trentino?** *What would you say if we went up to my uncle's place in Trentino?*
Trentino is the Alpine area of Italy, south of the Austrian border.
- 13 **Lui dirige una colonia per bambini in montagna e ha bisogno di volontari per l'organizzazione degli sport e delle gite.** *He runs a holiday camp for children in the mountains and needs volunteers to organise the sports and the excursions.*
 - a Many Italian families send their children to summer holiday camps either by the sea or in the mountains.
 - b Notice that the plural of **lo sport** is **gli sport**.

Part three: New words

il cucchiaino teaspoon
il doposcuola after-school activities
il personale personnel
lo zucchero sugar

la signorina alla pari au pair girl
la stoffa material, cloth, fabric

diminuire to reduce
disfare la valigia to unpack

l'assunzione engagement, hiring
la paga pay
la prova trial, probation

in prova on trial, on probation

Part three: Notes

Appena arrivata *Just arrived*

- 14 **Fanno anche il doposcuola.** *They also go to after-school activities.*
As most schools finish teaching at lunch-time, some schools organise **doposcuola** or afternoon sessions during which the children take part in creative activities, read, play etc. and sometimes do homework under supervision.

Lesson thirty

Part one: New words

l'addio goodbye
l'augurio wish, good wish
il buffet buffet
il cesto basket
il fioraio florist

la chiacchiera chatting, idle talk
la festa party

Part one: Notes

- 1 Peccato che non ci sia Alberto, ma lui non è il tipo che ci tenga molto agli addii e alle cerimonie. *It's a shame that Alberto's not here, but he's not the type to care much for goodbyes and ceremonies.*
Tenga, the present subjunctive of tenere, is used here following the indefinite phrase *il tipo che* (L29, N6).

Part two: New words

il ballo dance
il clima climate
il distacco separation, leave-taking
il lupo wolf
il ruolo role, part
lo spumante sparkling wine
il vagabondo vagrant, vagabond

la bocca mouth
la mancanza lack
la mezzanotte midnight
la possibilità possibility
la salute health
l'usanza custom
la viaggiatrice traveller

indipendente independent
proprio own

Festa d'addio

Goodbye party

comune common
trentesimo thirtieth

tenere a to care for

definitivamente definitively
in comune in common

tanti auguri best wishes

scorbutico bad-tempered
socievole sociable
tale such
triste sad
vivo living, alive

ammettere to admit
disgregare to split up
fare gli auguri to wish well
farsi vivo to visit, to make one's presence known
incominciare to begin
non poterne più to be unable to put up with something any longer
parlarsi a quattr'occhi to have a private conversation, to talk in confidence
prenderla sul ridere to take it lightly

proteggere to protect
recitare to act, to play
riabituarsi to grow accustomed again
sentire la mancanza di to miss
sopportare to put up with

altrettanto the same
mio mine

oltre over, more than

di qua e di là here and there
finanziariamente financially
là there

alla salute! good health! cheers!
che barba! what a bore!
cin, cin! cheers!
in bocca al lupo! good luck!
oltre tutto besides

Part two: Notes

I genitori The parents

- 2 Mi pesa un po' andarmene dall'Italia. *I find it rather hard (lit. It weighs on me a little) to go away from Italy.*
Notice the colloquial use of *pesare* here.
- 3 ... ci si riabitua in fretta alla vita, al clima e alle usanze del proprio paese. *... one quickly gets used again to the life, the climate and the customs of one's own country.*
- a ci si riabitua: one gets used again (L22, N12b)
- b Notice how *proprio*: own is used, e.g. *le mie proprie mani*: my own hands.
- 4 Non fartene un problema. *Don't make a problem of it (for yourself).*
- 5 Strano che tu la pensi così! Proprio tu che li proteggi sempre come fossero dei bambinetti. *Strange that you should think (it) like that! You of all people who are always protecting them as though they were little children.*

I fidanzati The engaged couple

- 6 Siate un po' più socievoli, ragazzi. *Be a bit more sociable, children.*
Siate is the voi command form of *essere*.
- 7 Prendila sul ridere e recita il tuo ruolo di futura sposina. *Take it all lightly and play your part of bride-to-be.*

Il distacco The parting

- 8 Oh, è mia. Dev'essermi caduta. *Oh, it's mine. I must have dropped it (lit. It must have fallen to me).*
è mia: *it's mine* In colloquial speech, *essere* followed by the possessive adjective is sufficient to indicate possession, e.g. *è nostro*: *it's ours*, *sono vostri*: *they're yours* etc.
- 9 Ing. Velli Ing. is the abbreviation of *Ingegnere*.
- 10 Se ne va davvero, Emilia? *Are you really going away, Emilia?*

30 11 Non mancherò. Io sono una *gran viaggiatrice*. E voi fatevi vivi quando venite a Firenze. *I certainly will. I'm a great traveller. And you too, look me up when you come to Florence.*

Viaggiatrice is the feminine form of *viaggiatore*. Further examples are *attore: actor* and *attrice: actress*; *guidatore* and *guidatrice: driver*.

Part three: New words

lo champagne champagne
il giovanotto young man

la compagnia company
la promozione promotion

festeggiare to celebrate

evviva! hooray!

New words in the Sounds Section

l'accento accent
l'ala wing
l'alfabeto alphabet
il carro cart
il consonante consonant
l'eco echo
ognuno each, everyone

l'origine origin
paragonare to compare
la parola word
semplice single
il suono sound
il vocale vowel

1 ARTICLES

	Indefinite	Definite	
	Singular only	Singular	Plural
<i>masc.</i>	un ragazzo un albero uno zoccolo	il ragazzo l'albero lo zoccolo	i ragazzi gli alberi gli zoccoli
<i>fem.</i>	una ragazza un'ora	la ragazza l'ora	le ragazze le ore

Note: *Uno* and *lo* (pl. *gli*) are used before masculine nouns beginning with *z* and *s* + another consonant (L3, N5b and L5, N28b).

(b) Prepositions and articles

	+ il	+ la	+ lo	+ l'	+ i	+ le	+ gli
<i>a</i>	al	alla	allo	all'	ai	alle	agli
<i>da</i>	dal	dalla	dallo	dall'	dai	dalle	dagli
<i>di</i>	del	della	dello	dell'	dei	delle	degli
<i>in</i>	nel	nella	nello	nell'	nei	nelle	negli
<i>su</i>	sul	sulla	sullo	sull'	sui	sulle	sugli

(L2, N9 and L3, N2 etc.)

2 PLURAL OF NOUNS

- Masculine nouns ending in *o* or *a* change the final vowel to *i*, e.g. *il giardino* – *i giardini*; *il barista* – *i baristi*.
- Feminine nouns ending in *a* change the final vowel to *e*, e.g. *la matita* – *le matite*; *la barista* – *le bariste*.
- Both masculine and feminine nouns ending in *e* change the final vowel to *i*, e.g. *il padre* – *i padri*; *la madre* – *le madri*.
- Nouns ending in *co* and *go* usually form their plural in *chi* and *ghi*, e.g. *l'elenco* – *gli elenchi*; *il lago* – *i laghi*. Some exceptions: *l'amico* – *gli amici*; *il greco* – *i greci*; *il medico* – *i medici*.
- Nouns ending in *ca* and *ga* usually form their plural in *che* and *ghe* if they are feminine and in *chi* and *ghi* if they are masculine, e.g. *l'amica* – *le amiche*; *la lattuga* – *le lattughe*; but *il collega* – *i colleghi*.
- Nouns ending with an accented final vowel and those ending in a consonant do not change in the plural, e.g. *la città* – *le città*; *il martedì* – *i martedì*; *il tram* – *i tram*; *lo sport* – *gli sport*. Exceptions to these rules are listed in the alphabetical vocabulary.

3 PRONOUNS

Subject	Direct object	Indirect object	Reflexive	Emphatic/after prepositions
io	mi	mi	mi	me
tu	ti	ti	ti	te
lui	lo	gli	si	lui
lei	la	le	si	lei
noi	ci	ci	ci	noi
voi	vi	vi	vi	voi
loro	li (m.) le (f.)	loro or gli (L18, N31a)	si	loro

Also *ne*: of it, of them, some of it, some of them and *ci*: there

All pronouns precede the verb, except those in the last column and the indirect object pronoun *loro* which follows it (L11, N9). Where direct and indirect object pronouns occur in the same sentence the order is indirect object before direct object.

The *i* of the indirect object and reflexive pronouns *mi*, *ti*, *ci* and *vi* and the reflexive *si* changes to *e* before *lo*, *la*, *li*, *le* and *ne* (L17, N3).

Gli: to him, to them, and *le*: to her change to *glie* before *lo*, *la*, *li*, *le* and *ne* and combine with these pronouns to form one word (L17, N7a).

Pronouns precede *lei* command forms but with *tu*, *noi* and *voi* command forms, the infinitive and the gerund, they follow and form one word with the verb form, whilst following the same order among themselves. (L14, N8, N32; L18, N4b). They also follow and form one word with *ecco*.

See L10, N3e, N8b, N34 for use of object pronouns with compound tenses.

4 ADJECTIVES

- Adjectives ending in *o* form their feminine singular by changing *o* to *a*; their plural is formed by changing *o* to *i* and *a* to *e*, e.g. *bello*, *bella*, *belli*, *belle*.
- Adjectives ending in *e* are the same in the masculine and feminine singular; both form their plural in *i*.
- Most adjectives follow the noun they describe, although some common adjectives (e.g. *bello*, *brutto*, *grande*, *piccolo* etc.) can precede it. *Bello*, *grande*, *buono* and *Santo* (meaning *Saint*) change when they precede the noun (L8, N3; L10, N4b and L11, N18c). *Quello*: *that* follows the same pattern as *bello*, whilst *grande*, *buono* and *Santo* are all regular in the plural.

Singular	Plural
un bel ragazzo un bello studio un bell'uomo una bella ragazza una bell'amica	due bei ragazzi due begli studi due begli uomini due belle ragazze due belle amiche

Singular forms of *buono*, *grande* and *Santo*

un buon ragazzo un buono stipendio un buon amico una buona ragazza una buon'amica	un gran signore un grande studio un grand'uomo una grande macchina una grand'amica	San Marco Santo Stefano Sant'Antonio Santa Lucia Sant'Anna
---	--	--

Note: The form *grande* is also accepted all through the singular.

(d) Possessive adjectives and pronouns

Masculine		Feminine	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
il mio il tuo il suo il nostro il vostro il loro	i miei i tuoi i suoi i nostri i vostri i loro	la mia la tua la sua la nostra la vostra la loro	le mie le tue le sue le nostre le vostre le loro

For omission of the article see L2, N19; L10, N21c; L26, N33, N35; L30, N8.

(e) Comparison of Adjectives

The comparative form of adjectives is made by placing *più* or *meno* before the adjective, e.g. *più bello*: more beautiful, *meno bello*: less beautiful.

The relative superlative is formed

either *il/la/i/le + più/meno + adjective*, e.g. *il più bello*: the most beautiful, *il meno bello*: the least beautiful

or *il/lo/la/l'i/i/gli/le + noun + più/meno + adjective*, e.g. *il ragazzo più bello*: the most handsome boy, *gli studenti meno bravi*: the least good students.

The absolute superlative, expressing a very high or low degree, is formed by dropping the final vowel of the adjective and adding *issimo*, e.g. *bellissimo*.

- To compare two like things or people, *come* is placed after the adjective, e.g. *Giovanna è bella come Luisa*: *Giovanna is as pretty as Luisa* (L24, N29b). To compare two unlike things, *di* or *che* is used to translate *than*, *di* being used before nouns, pronouns and numbers and *che* in all other cases, e.g. *Giovanni è più grande di me*: *Giovanni's bigger than me*, but *Quel ragazzo è più bello che intelligente*: *That boy is more handsome than intelligent*. (L24, N8, N9).

(g) Adjectives with regular and irregular comparative forms

Positive	Comparative	Relative Superlative	Absolute Superlative
buono	più buono or migliore	il più buono or il migliore	buonissimo or ottimo
cattivo	più cattivo or peggiore	il più cattivo or il peggiore	cattivissimo or pessimo
grande	più grande or maggiore	il più grande or il maggiore	grandissimo or massimo
piccolo	più piccolo or minore	il più piccolo or il minore	piccolissimo or minimo

5 ADVERBS

- (a) Adverbs are normally placed after the verb. Adverbs of manner are usually formed by adding *mente* to the feminine singular of the adjective, e.g. *perfetto*: *perfect* – *perfettamente*: *perfectly*. If the adjective ends in *le* or *re*, the final *e* is dropped before *mente*, e.g. *gentile*: *kind* – *gentilmente*: *kindly*; *popolare*: *popular* – *popolarmente*: *popularly*.
- (b) The comparative and superlative forms of adverbs are formed in the same way as those of adjectives, e.g. *gentilmente*: *kindly*; *più gentilmente*: *more kindly*; *il più gentilmente*: *most kindly*; *gentilissimamente*: *very kindly* (rarely used) or *molto gentilmente*.
N.B. The adverb derived from *buono*: *good* is *bene*: *well*, whilst that from *cattivo*: *bad* is *male*: *badly*.

Positive	Comparative	Relative Superlative	Absolute Superlative
bene	meglio	il meglio	benissimo
male	peggio	il peggio	malissimo
molto	più	il più	moltissimo
poco	meno	il meno	pochissimo

6 NOTES ON TENSES

- (a) *Present* Used for present and future actions (L1, N14b).
- (b) *Present Continuous* Used only for actions happening now (L12, Notes 6c, 9a, 23).
- (c) *Perfect (passato prossimo)* Used generally for actions completed once in the past (L8, Notes 6, 7b, 10; L9, Notes 3, 4, 7). For irregular past participles see Irregular Verb table. For agreement with pronouns see L10, Notes 3e, 8b, 34. The following is a list of verbs using *essere* in the perfect (*N.B.* If any of these verbs is used with a direct object, *avere* must be used).

andare	crescere	nascere	sembrare
annegare	diminuire	parere	servire
apparire	dipendere	partire	sparire
arrivare	dispiacere	passare	stare
aumentare	entrare	piacere	succedere
bastare	essere	restare	suonare
bisognare	guarire	rimanere	svenire
cadere	impazzire	ripassare	toccare a
cambiare	importare a	ritornare	tornare
capitare	incominciare	riuscire	uscire
ci vuole/vogliono	ingrossare	salire	valere
consistere in	iniziare	scendere	venire
convenire	manicare	scoppiare	vivere
costare	morire	scorrere	

Atterrare, correre, durare, funzionare, interessare and piovere may use either *avere* or *essere*. *Dovere*, *potere* and *volere* normally use *avere* but sometimes use *essere* (L28, N3b). All reflexive verbs must use *essere*.

- (d) *Future* Used for future actions and to express probability (L11, N2a; L15, N45a). Endings are *ò, ai, à, emo, etc, anno*. For irregular future forms see Irregular Verb Table.
- (e) *Conditional* Used as in English (L13, N5a). Endings are *ei, esti, ebbe, emmo, este, ebbero*. Same irregular forms as Future.
- (f) *Imperfect* For uses see L14, Notes 5, 6b, 28. Endings *vo, vi, va, vamo, vate, vano*.
- (g) *Future Perfect* Used for events that will have happened (L13, Notes 24a, 25a) and for events that have probably happened (L15, N45a).
- (h) *Perfect Conditional* Used for events that would have happened (L15, Notes 6a, 21).
- (i) *Pluperfect* Used for events that had happened (L22, N23a).
- (j) *Past Definite (passato remoto)* For uses see L22, N1a. Regular forms are shown in the table of model verbs; notice that there are alternative forms for regular *ere* verbs. Irregular verbs have irregular endings for the 1st person singular (*ii*), 3rd person singular (*e*) and 3rd person plural (*ero*), but regular forms and endings for the other persons. e.g. In the table of irregular verbs, the past definite of *cadere* is given as *caddi, cadesti, etc*. The full verb, written out, would be *caddi, cadesti, cadde, cademmo, cadeste, caddero*.
- (k) *Past Anterior* For uses and formation see L27, N18.

7 THE SUBJUNCTIVE

There are four tenses; present, imperfect, perfect and pluperfect. The subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses:

- (a) Where the main verb expresses hope, fear, feeling or other emotion and where the subject of the two clauses is different, e.g. *spero che* (L23, N30), *ho paura che* (L23, N12a), *mi dispiace che* (L23, N33a), *sono contento che* (L23, N33a).
- (b) Where the main verb expresses a wish or a command and where the subject of the two clauses is different, e.g. *voglio che* (L23, N7).
- (c) Where the main verb expresses doubt, supposition or opinion and where the subject of the two clauses is different, e.g. *credo che* (L23, N17), *penso che* (L23, N25b), *ho idea che* (L23, N28), *ho l'impressione che* (L23, N6), *non so* (L23, N5).
- (d) After all impersonal constructions formed by *essere* + adjective (e.g. *è necessario che, è bello che, è difficile che* etc.) except *è vero che*, and after impersonal verbs and expressions like *ci manca poco che* (L24, N32), *mi importa che* (L26, N38), *pare che* (L23, N2), *sembra che* (L23, N13), *è meglio che* (L23, N12b), *peccato che* (L23, N29) *si dice che* (L26, N1) and *è ora che* (L26, N8).
- (e) After *benché* (L24, N4), *nonostante* (L24, N31), *prima che* (L24, N2b), *purché* (L24, N6) and *senza che* (L24, N23b).
- (f) After *come se* (L26, N4) and usually where *se* is followed by a past tense (L25, Notes 1 and 4). *N.B.* The past subjunctive following *se* is sometimes replaced by the imperfect (L25, N26).
- (g) After *chiunque* (L26, N25), *comunque* (L26, N32), *dovunque* (L26, N41) and *qualunque cosa* (L26, N23).
- (h) After superlatives followed by *che* (L26, Notes 5 and 7b).
- (i) After indefinite pronouns + *che*, e.g. *nessuno che* (L26, N2c), *qualcuno che* (L29, N6).

8 AVERE AND ESSERE

<i>Infinitive and Gerund</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Conditional</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Past Definite</i>	<i>Present Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperative (Commands)</i>
AVERE avendo	ho hai ha abbiamo avete hanno	ho avuto hai avuto ha avuto abbiamo avuto avete avuto hanno avuto	avrò avrà avrà avremo avrete avranno	avrei avresti avrebbe avremmo avreste avrebbero	avevo avevi aveva avevamo avevate avevano	ebbi avesti ebbe avemmo aveste ebbero	abbia abbia abbia abbiamo abbiate abbiano	avessi avessi avesse avessimo aveste avessero	— abbi abbia abbiamo abbiate —
ESSERE essendo	sono sei è siamo siete sono	sono stato/a sei stato/a è stato/a siamo stati/e siete stati/e sono stati/e	sarò sarai sarà saremo sarete saranno	sarei saresti sarebbe saremmo sareste sarebbero	ero eri era eravamo eravate erano	fui fosti fu fummo foste furono	sia sia sia siamo siate siano	fossi fossi fosse fossimo foste fossero	— sii sia siamo siate —

9 THE MODEL REGULAR VERBS

<i>Infinitive and Gerund</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Conditional</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Past Definite</i>	<i>Present Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperative (Commands)</i>
PARLARE parlando	parlo parli parla parliamo parlate parlano	ho parlato hai parlato ha parlato abbiamo parlato avete parlato hanno parlato	parlerò parlerai parlerà parleremo parlerete parleranno	parlerei parleresti parlerebbe parleremmo parlereste parlerebbero	parlavo parlavi parlava parlavamo parlavate parlavano	parlai parlasti parlò parlammo parlaste parlarono	parli parli parli parliamo parliate parlino	parlassi parlassi parlasse parlassimo parlaste parlassero	— parla parli parliamo parlate —
VENDERE vendendo	vendo vendi vende vendiamo vendete vendono	ho venduto hai venduto ha venduto abbiamo venduto avete venduto hanno venduto	venderò venderai venderà venderemo venderete venderanno	venderei venderesti venderebbe venderemmo vendereste venderebbero	vendevo vendevo vendeva vendevamo vendevate vendevano	vendei(-etti) vendesti vendè(-ette) vendemmo vendeste venderono (-ettero)	venda venda venda vendiamo vendiate vendano	vendessi vendessi vendesse vendessimo vendeste vendessero	— vendi venda vendiamo vendete —
DORMIRE dormendo	dormo dormi dorme dormiamo dormite dormono	ho dormito hai dormito ha dormito abbiamo dormito avete dormito hanno dormito	dormirò dormirai dormirà dormiremo dormirete dormiranno	dormirei dormiresti dormirebbe dormiremmo dormireste dormirebbero	dormivo dormivi dormiva dormivamo dormivate dormivano	dormii dormisti dormì dormimmo dormiste dormirono	dorma dorma dorma dormiamo dormiate dormano	dormissi dormissi dormisse dormissimo dormiste dormissero	— dormi dorma dormiamo dormite —
CAPIRE capendo	capisco capisci capisce capiamo capite capiscono	ho capito hai capito ha capito abbiamo capito avete capito hanno capito	capirò capirai capirà capiremo capirete capiranno	capirei capiresti capirebbe capiremmo capireste capirebbero	capivo capivi capiva capivamo capivate capivano	capii capisti capì capimmo capiste capirono	capisca capisca capì capiamo capiate capiscano	capissi capissi capisse capissimo capiste capissero	— capisci capisca capiamo capite —

10 IRREGULAR VERBS

Here is a list of the irregular verbs used in the course. Only **io** and **tu** forms of regular tenses are given as are only **tu** and **lei** command forms where the **noi** and **voi** forms follow the pattern of the model verbs. The rule for forming the past definite of irregular verbs is on page 277.

N.B. Aggiungere serves as a pattern for **raggiungere**.
 Aprire " " " " **riaprire**.
 Correre " " " " **scorrere**.
 Fare " " " " **disfare** and **soddisfare**.

<i>Infinitive and Gerund</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Conditional</i>
ACCENDERE accendendo	accendo accendi etc.	ho acceso hai acceso etc.	accenderò accenderai etc.	accenderei accenderesti etc.
ACCOGLIERE accogliendo	accolgo accogli accogliamo accogliete accolgono	ho accolto hai accolto etc.	accoglierò accoglierai etc.	accoglierei accoglieresti etc.
ACCORGERSI accorgendosi	mi accorgo ti accorgi etc.	mi sono accorto/a ti sei accorto/a etc.	mi accorgerò ti accorgerai etc.	mi accorgerei ti accorgeresti etc.
AGGIUNGERE aggiungendo	aggiungo aggiungi etc.	ho aggiunto hai aggiunto etc.	aggiungerò aggiungerai etc.	aggiungerei aggiungeresti etc.
ANDARE andando	vado vai va andiamo andate vanno	sono andato/a sei andato/a etc.	andrò andrai etc.	andrei andresti etc.
APPARIRE apparendo	appaio appari appare appariamo apparite appaiono	sono apparso/a sei apparso/a etc.	apparirò apparirai etc.	apparirei appariresti etc.
APRIRE aprendo	apro apri etc.	ho aperto hai aperto etc.	aprirò aprirai etc.	aprirei apriresti etc.
ASSUMERE assumendo	assumo assumi etc.	ho assunto hai assunto etc.	assumerò assumerai etc.	assumerei assumeresti etc.
ATTENDERE attendendo	attendo attendi etc.	ho atteso hai atteso etc.	attenderò attenderai etc.	attenderei attenderesti etc.
BERE bevendo	bevo bevi etc.	ho bevuto hai bevuto etc.	berrò berrai etc.	berrei berresti etc.
CADERE cadendo	cado cadi etc.	sono caduto/a sei caduto/a etc.	cadrò cadrai etc.	cadrei cadresti etc.

Mettere serves as a pattern for **ammettere**, **permettere**, **promettere**, **rimettersi** and **trasmettere**.

Offrire " " " " **soffrire**
 Piacere " " " " **dispiacere** and **spiacere**
 Tenere " " " " **contenere** and **sostenere**
 Uscire " " " " **riuscire**
 Venire " " " " **svenire**
 Vincere " " " " **convincere**

Sedersi (irregular in some forms) serves as a general pattern for reflexive verbs.

<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Past Definite</i>	<i>Present Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperative (Commands)</i>
accendevo accendevi etc.	accesi accendesti etc.	accenda accenda etc.	accendessi accendessi etc.	accendi accenda etc.
accoglievo accoglievi etc.	accolsi accogliesti etc.	accolga accolga etc.	accogliessi accogliessi etc.	accogli accolga
mi accorgevo ti accorgevi etc.	mi accorsi ti accorgesti etc.	mi accorga ti accorga etc.	mi accorgessi ti accorgessi etc.	accorgiti si accorga etc.
aggiungevo aggiungevi etc.	aggiunsi aggiungesti etc.	aggiunga aggiunga etc.	aggiungessi aggiungessi etc.	aggiungi aggiunga etc.
andavo andavi etc.	andai andasti etc.	vada vada vada andiamo andiate vadano	andassi andassi etc.	— va' or vai vada andiamo andate —
apparivo apparivi etc.	apparisi or apparii or apparvi apparisti etc.	appaia appaia appaia appariamo appariate appaziano	apparissi apparissi etc.	apparì appaia
aprivo aprivi etc.	aprii apristi etc.	apra apra etc.	apriissi apriissi etc.	apri apra etc.
assumevo assumevi etc.	assunsi assumesti etc.	assuma assuma etc.	assumessi assumessi etc.	assumi assuma etc.
attendevo attendevi etc.	attesi attendesti etc.	attenda attenda etc.	attendessi attendessi etc.	attendi attenda etc.
bevevo bevevi etc.	bevvi or bevetti bevesti etc.	beva beva etc.	bevessi bevessi etc.	bevi beva etc.
cadevo cadevi etc.	caddi cadesti etc.	cada cada etc.	cadessi cadessi etc.	cadi cada etc.

<i>Infinitive and Gerund</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Conditional</i>
CHIEDERE chiedendo	chiedo chiedi etc.	ho chiesto hai chiesto etc.	chiederò chiederai etc.	chiederei chiederesti etc.
CHIUDERE chiudendo	chiudo chiudi etc.	ho chiuso hai chiuso etc.	chiuderò chiuderai etc.	chiuderei chiuderesti etc.
CONFONDERE confondendo	confondo confondi etc.	ho confuso hai confuso etc.	confonderò confonderai etc.	confonderei confonderesti etc.
CONOSCERE conoscendo	conosco conosci etc.	ho conosciuto hai conosciuto etc.	conoscerò conoscerai etc.	conoscerei conosceresti etc.
CONSISTERE consistendo	consisto consisti etc.	sono consistito/a sei consistito/a etc.	consisterò consisterai etc.	consistere consistereesti etc.
CORRERE correndo	corro corri etc.	ho corso hai corso etc.	correrò correrai etc.	correrei correresti etc.
COSTRUIRE costruendo	costruisco costruisci etc.	ho costruito hai costruito etc.	costruirò costruirai etc.	costruirei costruiresti etc.
CRESCERE crescendo	cresco cresci etc.	sono cresciuto/a sei cresciuto/a etc.	crescerò crescerai etc.	crescerei cresceresti etc.
DARE dando	do dai dà diamo date danno	ho dato hai dato etc.	darò darai etc.	darei daresti etc.
DECIDERE decidendo	decido decidi etc.	ho deciso hai deciso etc.	deciderò deciderai etc.	decidere decideresti etc.
DIPENDERE dipendendo	dipendo dipendi etc.	sono dipeso/a sei dipeso/a etc.	dipenderò dipenderai etc.	dipenderei dipenderesti etc.
DIPINGERE dipingendo	dipingo dipingi etc.	ho dipinto hai dipinto etc.	dipingerò dipingerai etc.	dipingerei dipingeresti etc.
DIRE dicendo	dico dici dice diciamo dite dicono	ho detto hai detto etc.	dirò dirai etc.	direi diresti etc.
DIRIGERE dirigendo	dirigo dirigi etc.	ho diretto hai diretto etc.	dirigerò dirigerai etc.	dirigerei dirigeresti etc.
DISCUTERE discutendo	discuto discuti etc.	ho discusso hai discusso etc.	discuterò discuterai etc.	discuterei discuteresti etc.
DIVIDERE dividendo	divido dividi etc.	ho diviso hai diviso etc.	dividerò dividerai etc.	dividere divideresti etc.

<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Past Definite</i>	<i>Present Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperative (Commands)</i>
chiedevo chiedevi etc.	chiesi chiedesti etc.	chieda chieda etc.	chiedessi chiedessi etc.	chiedi chieda etc.
chiudevo chiudevi etc.	chiusi chiudesti etc.	chiuda chiuda etc.	chiudessi chiudessi etc.	chiudi chiuda etc.
confondevo confondevi etc.	confusi confondesti etc.	confonda confonda etc.	confondessi confondessi etc.	confondi confonda etc.
conoscevo conoscevi etc.	conobbi conoscesti etc.	conosca conosca etc.	conoscessi conoscessi etc.	conosci conosca etc.
consistevo consistevi etc.	consistetti consistesti etc.	consista consista etc.	consistessi consistessi etc.	No command forms
correvo correvi etc.	corsi corresti etc.	corra corra etc.	corressi corressi etc.	corri corra etc.
costruivo costruivi etc.	costruii costruisti etc.	costruisca costruisca etc.	costruissi costruissi etc.	costruisci costruisca etc.
crescevo crescevi etc.	crebbi crescesti etc.	cresca cresca etc.	crescessi crescessi etc.	cresci cresca etc.
davo davi etc.	diedi or detti desti diede or dette demmo deste diedero or dettero	dia dia etc.	dessi dessi etc.	da' or dai dia etc.
decidevo decidevi etc.	decisi decidesti etc.	decida decida etc.	decidessi decidessi etc.	decidi decida etc.
dipendevo dipendevi etc.	dipesi dipendesti etc.	dipenda dipenda etc.	dipendessi dipendessi etc.	dipendi dipenda etc.
dipingevo dipingevi etc.	dipinsi dipingesti etc.	dipinga dipinga etc.	dipingessi dipingessi etc.	dipingi dipinga etc.
dicevo dicevi etc.	dissi dicesti etc.	dica dica etc.	dicessi dicessi etc.	di' dica etc.
dirigevo dirigevi etc.	diressi dirigesti etc.	diriga diriga etc.	dirigessi dirigessi etc.	dirigi diriga etc.
discutevo discutevi etc.	discussi discutesti etc.	discuta discuta etc.	discutessi discutessi etc.	discuti discuta etc.
dividevo dividevi etc.	divisi dividesti etc.	divida divida etc.	dividessi dividessi etc.	dividi divida etc.

<i>Infinitive and Gerund</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Conditional</i>
DOVERE dovendo	devo devi deve dobbiamo dovete devono	ho dovuto hai dovuto <i>etc.</i>	dovrò dovrai <i>etc.</i>	dovrei dovresti <i>etc.</i>
FARE facendo	faccio fai fa facciamo fate fanno	ho fatto hai fatto <i>etc.</i>	farò farai <i>etc.</i>	farei faresti <i>etc.</i>
GODERE godendo	godo godi <i>etc.</i>	ho goduto hai goduto <i>etc.</i>	godrò godrai <i>etc.</i>	godrei godresti <i>etc.</i>
LEGGERE leggendo	leggo leggi <i>etc.</i>	ho letto hai letto <i>etc.</i>	leggerò leggerai <i>etc.</i>	leggerei leggeresti <i>etc.</i>
METTERE mettendo	metto metti <i>etc.</i>	ho messo hai messo <i>etc.</i>	metterò metterai <i>etc.</i>	metterei metteresti <i>etc.</i>
MORIRE morendo	muoio muori muore moriamo morite muoiono	sono morto/a sei morto/a <i>etc.</i>	morirò morirai <i>etc.</i>	morirei moriresti <i>etc.</i>
MUOVERSI movendosi	mi muovo ti muovi si muove ci moviamo vi movete si muovono	mi sono mosso/a ti sei mosso/a <i>etc.</i>	mi moverò ti moverai <i>etc.</i>	mi moverei ti moveresti <i>etc.</i>
NASCERE nascendo	nasco nasci <i>etc.</i>	sono nato/a sei nato/a <i>etc.</i>	nascerò nascerai <i>etc.</i>	nascerei nasceresti <i>etc.</i>
OFFRIRE offrendo	offro offri <i>etc.</i>	ho offerto hai offerto <i>etc.</i>	offrirò offrirai <i>etc.</i>	offrirei offriresti <i>etc.</i>
PARERE parendo	paio pari pare pariamo parete paziono	sono parso/a sei parso/a <i>etc.</i>	parrò parrai <i>etc.</i>	parrei parresti <i>etc.</i>
PERDERE perdendo	perdo perdi <i>etc.</i>	ho perso <i>or</i> per- duto—hai perso <i>or</i> perduto <i>etc.</i>	perderò perderai <i>etc.</i>	perderei perderesti <i>etc.</i>
PIACERE piacendo	piaccio piaci piace piaciamo piacete piacciono	sono piaciuto/a sei piaciuto/a <i>etc.</i>	piacerò piacerai <i>etc.</i>	piacerei piaceresti <i>etc.</i>

<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Past Definite</i>	<i>Present Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperative (Commands)</i>
dovevo dovevi <i>etc.</i>	dovei <i>or</i> dovetti dovesti <i>etc.</i>	debba debba debba dobbiamo dobbiate debbero	dovessi dovessi <i>etc.</i>	<i>No command forms</i>
facevo facevi <i>etc.</i>	feci facesti fecce facemmo faceste fecero	faccia faccia <i>etc.</i>	facessi facessi <i>etc.</i>	fa' <i>or</i> fai faccia <i>etc.</i>
godevo godevi <i>etc.</i>	godei <i>or</i> godetti godesti <i>etc.</i>	goda goda <i>etc.</i>	godessi godessi <i>etc.</i>	godi goda <i>etc.</i>
leggevo leggevi <i>etc.</i>	lessi leggesti <i>etc.</i>	legga legga <i>etc.</i>	leggessi leggessi <i>etc.</i>	leggi legga <i>etc.</i>
mettevo mettevi <i>etc.</i>	misi mettesti <i>etc.</i>	metta metta <i>etc.</i>	mettessi mettessi <i>etc.</i>	metti metta <i>etc.</i>
morivo morivi <i>etc.</i>	morii moristi <i>etc.</i>	muoia muoia muoia moriamo moriate muoiano	morissi morissi <i>etc.</i>	muori muoia <i>etc.</i>
mi movevo ti movevi <i>etc.</i>	mi mossi ti movesti <i>etc.</i>	mi muova ti muova si muova ci moviamo vi moviate si muovano	mi movessi ti movessi <i>etc.</i>	muoviti si muova moviamoci movetevi
nascevo nascevi <i>etc.</i>	nacqui nascesti <i>etc.</i>	nasca nasca <i>etc.</i>	nascessi nascessi <i>etc.</i>	nasci nasca <i>etc.</i>
offrivo offrivi <i>etc.</i>	offrii offristi <i>etc.</i>	offra offra <i>etc.</i>	offrissi offrissi <i>etc.</i>	offri offra <i>etc.</i>
parevo parevi <i>etc.</i>	parvi <i>or</i> parsi paresti <i>etc.</i>	paia paia paia pariamo pariate paziano	paressi paressi <i>etc.</i>	pari paia <i>etc.</i>
perdevo perdevi <i>etc.</i>	persi perdesti <i>etc.</i>	perda perda <i>etc.</i>	perdessi perdessi <i>etc.</i>	perdi perda <i>etc.</i>
piacevo piacevi <i>etc.</i>	piacqui piacesti <i>etc.</i>	piaccia piaccia <i>etc.</i>	piacessi piacessi <i>etc.</i>	piaci piaccia <i>etc.</i>

<i>Infinitive and Gerund</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Conditional</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Past Definite</i>	<i>Present Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperative (Commands)</i>
PIANGERE piangendo	piango piangi etc.	ho pianto hai pianto etc.	piangerò piangerai etc.	piangerei piangeresti etc.	piangevo piangevi etc.	piansi piangesti etc.	pianga pianga etc.	piangessi piangessi etc.	piangi pianga etc.
PIOVERE piovendo	piove	ha è piovuto	pioverà	pioverebbe	pioveva	piovve	piova	piovesse	No command form
POTERE potendo	posso puoi può possiamo potete possono	ho potuto hai potuto etc.	potrò potrai etc.	potrei potresti etc.	potevo potevi etc.	potei potesti etc.	possa possa etc.	potessi potessi etc.	No command form
PRENDERE prendendo	prendo prendi etc.	ho preso hai preso etc.	prenderò prenderai etc.	prenderei prenderesti etc.	prendevo prende vi etc.	presi prendesti etc.	prenda prenda etc.	prendessi prendessi etc.	prendi prenda etc.
PROPORRE proponendo	propongo proponi propone proponiamo proponete propongono	ho proposto hai proposto etc.	proporrò proporrai etc.	proporrei proporresti etc.	proponevo proponevi etc.	proposi proponesti etc.	proponga proponga proponiamo proponiate propongano	proponessi proponessi etc.	proponi proponga
PROTEGGERE proteggendo	proteggerò proteggerai etc.	ho protetto hai protetto etc.	proteggerò proteggerai etc.	proteggerei proteggeresti etc.	proteggevo proteggevi etc.	protessi proteggesti etc.	protegga protegga etc.	proteggessi proteggessi etc.	proteggi protegga etc.
RADERSI radendosi	mi rado ti radi etc.	mi sono raso/a ti sei raso/a etc.	mi raderò ti raderai etc.	mi raderei ti raderesti etc.	mi radevo ti radevi etc.	mi rasi ti radesti etc.	mi rada ti rada etc.	mi radessi ti radessi etc.	raditi si rada etc.
RENDERE rendendo	rendo rendi etc.	ho reso hai reso etc.	renderò renderai etc.	renderei renderesti etc.	rendevo rende vi etc.	resi rendesti etc.	renda renda etc.	rendessi rendessi etc.	rendi renda etc.
RIDERE ridendo	rido ridi etc.	ho riso hai riso etc.	riderò riderai etc.	riderei rideresti etc.	ridevo ride vi etc.	risi ridesti etc.	rida rida etc.	ridessi ridessi etc.	ridi rida etc.
RIMANERE rimanendo	rimango rimani rimane rimaniamo rimanete rimangono	sono rimasto/a sei rimasto/a etc.	rimarrò rimarrai etc.	rimarrei rimarresti etc.	rimanevo rimanevi etc.	rimasi rimanesti etc.	rimanga rimanga etc.	rimanessi rimanessi etc.	rimani rimanga etc.
RISPONDERE rispondendo	rispondo rispondi etc.	ho risposto hai risposto etc.	risponderò risponderai etc.	risponderei risponderesti etc.	rispondevo rispondevi etc.	risposi rispondesti etc.	risponda risponda etc.	rispondessi rispondessi etc.	rispondi risponda etc.
ROMPERE rompendo	rompo rompi etc.	ho rotto hai rotto etc.	romperò romperai etc.	rompere romperesti etc.	rompevo rompevi etc.	ruppi rompesti etc.	rompa rompa etc.	rompessi rompessi etc.	rompi rompa etc.
SALIRE salendo	salgo sali sale saliamo salite salgono	sono salito/a sei salito/a etc.	salirò salirai etc.	salirei saliresti etc.	salivo salivi etc.	salii salisti etc.	salga salga etc.	salissi salissi etc.	sali salga etc.
SAPERE sapendo	so sai sa sappiamo sapete sanno	ho saputo hai saputo etc.	saprò saprai etc.	saprei sapresti etc.	sapevo sapevi etc.	seppi sapesti etc.	sappia sappia etc.	sapessi sapessi etc.	sappi sappia etc.

<i>Infinitive and Gerund</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Conditional</i>
SCEGLIERE scegliendo	scelgo scegli sceglie scegliamo scegliete scegliono	ho scelto hai scelto <i>etc.</i>	sceglierò sceglierai <i>etc.</i>	sceglierei scegliaresti <i>etc.</i>
SCENDERE scendendo	scendo scendi <i>etc.</i>	sono sceso/a sei sceso/a <i>etc.</i>	scenderò scenderai <i>etc.</i>	scenderei scenderesti <i>etc.</i>
SCOPRIRE scoprendo	scopro scopri <i>etc.</i>	ho scoperto hai scoperto <i>etc.</i>	scoprirò scoprirai <i>etc.</i>	scoprirei scopriresti <i>etc.</i>
SCRIVERE scrivendo	scrivo scrivi <i>etc.</i>	ho scritto hai scritto <i>etc.</i>	scriverò scriverai <i>etc.</i>	scriverei scriveresti <i>etc.</i>
SEDERSI sedendosi	mi siedo ti siedi si siede ci sediamo vi sedete si siedono	mi sono seduto/a ti sei seduto/a si è seduto/a ci siamo seduti/e vi siete seduti/e si sono seduti/e	mi sederò ti sederai si sederà ci sederemo vi sederete si sederanno	mi sederei ti sederesti si sederebbe ci sederemmo vi sedereste si sederebbero
SPARIRE sparendo	sparisco sparisci <i>etc.</i>	sono sparito/a sei sparito/a <i>etc.</i>	sparirò sparirai <i>etc.</i>	sparirei spariresti <i>etc.</i>
SPINGERE spingendo	spingo spingi <i>etc.</i>	ho spinto hai spinto <i>etc.</i>	spingerò spingerai <i>etc.</i>	spingerei spingeresti <i>etc.</i>
STARE stando	sto stai sta stiamo state stanno	sono stato/a sei stato/a <i>etc.</i>	starò starai <i>etc.</i>	starei staresti <i>etc.</i>
SUCCEEDERE succedendo	succede succedono	è successo/a sono successi/e	succederà succederanno	succederebbe succederebbero
SVOLGERSI svolgendosi	si svolge si svolgono	si è svolto/a si sono svolti/e	si svolgerà si svolgeranno	si svolgerebbe si svolgerebbero
TENERE tenendo	tengo tieni tiene teniamo tenete tengono	ho tenuto hai tenuto <i>etc.</i>	terrò terrai <i>etc.</i>	terrei terresti <i>etc.</i>
TOGLIERE togliendo	tolgo togli toglie togliamo togliete tolgono	ho tolto hai tolto <i>etc.</i>	toglierò toglierai <i>etc.</i>	toglierei toglieresti <i>etc.</i>

<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Past Definite</i>	<i>Present Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperative (Commands)</i>
sceglievo sceglievi <i>etc.</i>	scelsi scegliești <i>etc.</i>	scelga scelga <i>etc.</i>	scegliessi scegliessi <i>etc.</i>	scegli sceglia <i>etc.</i>
scendevo scendevi <i>etc.</i>	scesi scendesti <i>etc.</i>	scenda scenda <i>etc.</i>	scendessi scendessi <i>etc.</i>	scendi scenda <i>etc.</i>
scoprivo scoprivi <i>etc.</i>	scoprii scoprisci <i>etc.</i>	scopra scopra <i>etc.</i>	scoprissi scoprissi <i>etc.</i>	scopri scopra <i>etc.</i>
scrivevo scrivevi <i>etc.</i>	scrissi scrivesti <i>etc.</i>	scriva scriva <i>etc.</i>	scrivessi scrivessi <i>etc.</i>	scrivi scriva <i>etc.</i>
mi sedevo ti sedevi si sedeva ci sedevamo vi sedevate si sedevano	mi sedei <i>or</i> sedetti ti sedesti si sedè <i>or</i> sedette ci sedemmo vi sedeste si sederono <i>or</i> sedettero	mi sieda ti sieda si sieda ci sediamo vi sediate si siedano	mi sedessi ti sedessi si sedessi ci sedessimo vi sedeste si sedessero	— siediti si sieda sediamoci sedetevi —
sparivo sparivi <i>etc.</i>	sparii <i>or</i> sparvi sparisti <i>etc.</i>	sparisca sparisca <i>etc.</i>	sparissi sparissi <i>etc.</i>	sparisci sparisca <i>etc.</i>
spingevo spingevi <i>etc.</i>	spinsi spingesti <i>etc.</i>	spinga spinga <i>etc.</i>	spingessi spingessi <i>etc.</i>	spingi spinga <i>etc.</i>
stavo stavi <i>etc.</i>	stetti stesti stette stemmo steste stettero	stia stia stia stiamo stiate stiano	stessi stessi <i>etc.</i>	sta' <i>or</i> stai stia <i>etc.</i>
succedeva succedevano	successe <i>or</i> succedette successero <i>or</i> succedettero	succeda succedano	succedesse succedessero	<i>No command form</i>
si svolgeva si svolgevano	si svolse si svolsero	si svolga si svolgano	si svolgesse si svolgessero	<i>No command form</i>
tenevo tenevi <i>etc.</i>	tenni tenesti <i>etc.</i>	tenga tenga <i>etc.</i>	tenessi tenessi <i>etc.</i>	tieni tenga <i>etc.</i>
toglievo toglievi <i>etc.</i>	tolsi togliești <i>etc.</i>	tolga tolga <i>etc.</i>	togliessi togliessi <i>etc.</i>	togli tolga <i>etc.</i>

<i>Infinitive and Gerund</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Conditional</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Past Definite</i>	<i>Present Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperative (Commands)</i>
USCIRE uscendo	esco esci esce usciamo uscite escono	sono uscito/a sei uscito/a <i>etc.</i>	uscirò uscirai <i>etc.</i>	uscirei usciresti <i>etc.</i>	uscivo uscivi <i>etc.</i>	uscii uscisti <i>etc.</i>	esca esca <i>etc.</i>	uscissi uscissi <i>etc.</i>	esci esca <i>etc.</i>
VALERE valendo	valgo vali vale valiamo, valetе valgono	sono valso/a sei valso/a <i>etc.</i>	varrò varrai <i>etc.</i>	varrei varresti <i>etc.</i>	valevo valevi <i>etc.</i>	valsi valesti <i>etc.</i>	valga valga valga valiamo valiate valgano	valessi valessi <i>etc.</i>	vali valga <i>etc.</i>
VEDERE vedendo	vedo vedi <i>etc.</i>	ho veduto <i>or</i> visto hai veduto <i>or</i> visto <i>etc.</i>	vedrò vedrai <i>etc.</i>	vedrei vedresti <i>etc.</i>	vedevo vedevi <i>etc.</i>	vidi vedesti <i>etc.</i>	veda veda <i>etc.</i>	vedessi vedessi <i>etc.</i>	vedi veda <i>etc.</i>
VENIRE venendo	vengo vieni viene veniamo venite vengono	sono venuto/a sei venuto/a <i>etc.</i>	verrò verrai <i>etc.</i>	verrei verresti <i>etc.</i>	venivo venivi <i>etc.</i>	venni venisti <i>etc.</i>	venga venga <i>etc.</i>	venissi venissi <i>etc.</i>	vieni venga <i>etc.</i>
VINCERE vincendo	vinco vinci <i>etc.</i>	ho vinto hai vinto <i>etc.</i>	vincerò vincerai <i>etc.</i>	vincerei vinceresti <i>etc.</i>	vincevo vincevi <i>etc.</i>	vinsi vincesti <i>etc.</i>	vinca vinca <i>etc.</i>	vincessi vincessi <i>etc.</i>	vinci vinca <i>etc.</i>
VIVERE vivendo	vivo vivi <i>etc.</i>	sono vissuto/a sei vissuto/a <i>etc.</i>	vivrò vivrai <i>etc.</i>	vivrei vivresti <i>etc.</i>	vivevo vivevi <i>etc.</i>	vissi vivesti <i>etc.</i>	viva viva <i>etc.</i>	vivessi vivessi <i>etc.</i>	vivi viva <i>etc.</i>
VOLERE volendo	voglio vuoi vuole vogliamo volete vogliono	ho voluto hai voluto <i>etc.</i>	vorrò vorrai <i>etc.</i>	vorrei vorresti <i>etc.</i>	volevo volevi <i>etc.</i>	volli volesti <i>etc.</i>	voglia voglia <i>etc.</i>	volessi volessi <i>etc.</i>	vogli voglia <i>etc.</i>

11 NUMBERS

(a)	0	zero	19	diciannove	101	centuno
	1	uno	20	venti	120	centoventi
	2	due	21	ventuno	126	centoventisei
	3	tre	22	ventidue	200	duecento
	4	quattro	23	ventitre	1000	mille
	5	cinque	24	ventiquattro	1500	mille cinquecento
	6	sei	25	venticinque	2000	duemila
	7	sette	26	ventisei	100,000	centomila
	8	otto	27	ventisette	1,000,000	un milione
	9	nove	28	ventotto		
	10	dieci	29	ventinove		
	11	undici	30	trenta		
	12	dodici	40	quaranta		
	13	treddici	50	cinquanta		
	14	quattordici	60	sessanta		
	15	quindici	70	settanta		
	16	sedici	80	ottanta		
	17	diciassette	90	novanta		
	18	diciotto	100	cento		

(b)	1st	primo	12th	dodicesimo
	2nd	secondo	20th	ventesimo
	3rd	terzo	21st	ventunesimo
	4th	quarto	22nd	ventiduesimo
	5th	quinto	30th	trentesimo
	6th	sesto	100th	centesimo
	7th	settimo	101st	centunesimo
	8th	ottavo	102nd	centoduesimo
	9th	nono	200th	duecentesimo
	10th	decimo	1000th	millesimo
	11th	undicesimo	1,000,000th	milionesimo

Italian vocabulary

The numbers following vocabulary items refer to the lesson in which the word first appears. If the word appears in Part one of the lesson, only the lesson number is given; if it appears in Parts two or three, this is indicated by (2) or (3) following the lesson number. Where more than one lesson number is given, the word has a different meaning in each case. SS refers to Sounds Section.

Irregular plurals of nouns are shown in brackets, whilst nouns that are invariable, i.e. remain unchanged in the plural, are followed by (inv.). For the plural of all other nouns see Appendix 2. Verbs like *capire* are marked *.

A

a 1	l'agenzia 6 (2)	l'amico 5
a proposito 6 (2)	l'agenzia di viaggio 6 (2)	ammettere 30 (2)
l'abbacchio 22 (2)	l'agenzia immobiliare 16 (3)	amministrare 16
abbastanza 11 (2), 15	aggiungere 8 (2)	l'amministratore 17 (2)
l'abbigliamento 10 (2)	aggiustare 18	l'amministratore delegato 17 (2)
l'abbonamento 6 (2)	l'aggressore 28 (2)	l'amministrazione 17 (2)
abbronzarsi 23 (2)	agitarsi 28 (2)	ammirare 21 (2)
abbronzato 15 (2)	agitato 11 (2)	l'amore 27
abitare 1	l'ago 18 (2)	l'analcolico 3 (2)
l'abito 18 (2)	agosto 12 (2)	anche 1 (2), 17 (2)
l'abito a giacca 18 (2)	ai 4 (2)	ancora 5 (2)
abituato 20 (2)	aiutare 5 (2)	ancora un po' 5 (2)
accanto 24 (2)	l'aiuto 16	andare 3
accendere 21 (2), 23 (3)	al 2	andare a trovare 9
fare accendere 23 (3)	l'ala SS	andare pazzo per 6
l'accendino 23 (3)	l'albergo 6 (2)	andarsene 23 (2)
l'accento SS	l'albero 5	l'andata 9 (2)
accettare 7 (3)	l'albicocca 24 (2)	l'anello 28 (2)
accidenti 18 (2)	l'alfabeto SS	l'anfiteatro 22 (2)
accogliere 21 (2)	all' 2	l'angolo 10 (2)
accompagnare 7 (2)	alla 2 (2)	annegare 23 (2)
accorgersi di 20	l'alloggio 29 (2)	l'anno 1
l'acqua 4 (2)	allora 1 (2)	annoiarsi 19 (2)
ad = a 5 (2)	almeno 6 (2)	annoiarsi a morte 21
l'addio 30	alto 6, 6 (2)	l'annuncio 2
addormentato 15 (2)	in alto 22 (2)	l'annuncio economico 29
addosso 28 (2)	altrettanto 30 (2)	anonimo 25 (2)
adesso 3	altrimenti 19	anticamente 22 (3)
adorare 15 (2)	altro 2 (2)	l'anticamera 14 (2)
l'aereo 1	altro? 2 (2)	anticipare 25
l'aeroporto 1	altro che! 4 (3)	antico 22
l'afa 19	l'altro ieri 17 (2)	l'antipasto 12 (2)
gli affari 1 (2)	alzarsi 19	l'antiquariato 22 (2)
per affari 1 (2)	amalfitano 25	anzi 17 (2)
affettuoso 14	l'ambulanza 20	l'aperitivo 4 (2)
l'affitto 5 (2)	l'ambulatorio 19 (2)	aperto 7, 8 (2)
affollato 9	americano 1 (2)	

all'aperto 13 (3)	attendere 29 (2)	la bambina 5 (2)
apparire 22 (2)	attendere in linea 29 (2)	la banca 7
l'appartamento 5 (2)	attento! 20 (2)	la banca di emissione 7 (2)
appena 9 (2), 12 (2)	l'attenzione 13 (3)	il banchiere 26 (2)
appena possibile 4	fare attenzione a 13 (3)	il banco 24 (2)
approvare 21 (2)	atterrare 1	il bar (inv.) 3
l'appuntamento 10	l'atto 15 (2)	la barba 19
appunto 22 (3)	l'attore 15 (2)	che barba! 30 (2)
aprile 6 (3)	attorno 27 (2)	farsi la barba 19
aprire 8 (2), 11 (2)	attraversare 13 (2)	il barbiere 25 (2)
l'arancia 24 (3)	l'augurio 30	la barca 23 (2)
arancione 18 (2)	fare gli auguri 30 (2)	la barca a remi 23 (2)
l'arbitro 21 (2)	tanti auguri 30	la barca da pesca 23 (2)
l'architetto 4	aumentare 4 (2)	la bardatura 27
l'arco 11 (3)	l'aumento 6 (2)	il barista 3 (2)
l'argenteria 28 (3)	l'auto (inv.) 17	barocco 22 (3)
l'argento 26	l'auto a noleggio 20 (2)	la base 17 (2)
arginare 28 (2)	l'autobus (inv.) 13 (2)	le basette 25 (2)
arrabbiato 6 (2)	l'autografo 21 (2)	la basilica 11 (3)
arrangiarsi 24	l'automobilista 13 (3)	basso 6 (3)
arretrato 16	l'autostrada 4	bastare 3 (2)
arrivare 2 (2)	l'autunno 19 (2)	battere 17 (2)
arrivato 4 (2)	avanti 4 (2)	battere a macchina 17 (2)
arrivederci 5 (3)	avercela con 17 (3)	il battistero 13 (2)
l'arrivo 2	avere 1	beato 23 (3)
in arrivo 2	l'avventura 27	beh 3 (2)
l'arrosto 18 (2)	avvicinare 27	bei = belli 11 (2)
l'arte 1 (3)	avvicinarsi 22 (2)	beige 18 (2)
l'artigiano 27	l'avviso 16 (2)	bel = bello 8
l'artista 13	l'ultimo avviso 16 (2)	la bellezza 25
l'artrite 19	l'avvocato 1	che bellezza! 25
l'ascensione 27 (2)	l'azienda 28 (2)	bello 1
l'ascensore 15 (2)	azzurro 6	la belva 22 (2)
ascoltare 21 (2)		ben arrivati! 4 (2)
l'asilo 12 (2)		benché 24
aspettare 2, 3		bene 1 (2), 1 (3)
l'aspetto 28 (2)		benedetto 12
assaggiare 24 (2)		la benedizione 22 (2)
l'assegno 7		benissimo 1 (2)
l'assegno turistico 7		benone 2 (2)
assicurare 20 (3), 22 (2)		la benzina 4 (2)
l'assicurazione 20 (3)		il benzinaio 4 (2)
l'assistente 14		bere 12 (2)
assumere 29 (2)		bianco 11 (2)
l'assunzione 29 (3)		fare in bianco 11 (2)
attaccare 15 (2)		la bibita 9 (2)
attaccare bottone 9 (2)		la biblioteca 27 (2)
l'attacco 19 (3)		il bicchiere 5 (2)
l'attacco di cuore 19 (3)		il bigliettario 11 (2)

la biglietteria 9 (2)
il biglietto 4 (2), 7 (2)
fare il biglietto 6 (3)
il bikini (inv.) 23 (2)
il bilancio 17 (2)
il binario 9 (3)
biondo 25 (3)
il biondo cenere 25 (3)
il biscotto 4 (2)
bisognare 3 (2)
il bisogno 5 (2)
avere bisogno di 5 (2)
la bistecca 12 (2)
la bistecca ai ferri 12 (3)
la bistecca alla fiorentina 12 (2)
bloccato 12
blu 10 (2)
la boa 23 (2)
la bocca 30 (2)
in bocca al lupo! 30 (2)
la bolletta 16 (2)
la bomboniera 26
la borsa 2 (2)
la borsetta 24 (2)
la bottega 22 (2)
la bottega di antiquariato 22 (2)
la bottiglia 1 (2)
il bottone 3 (2)
il braccio (pl. le braccia) 11
il brasato 12 (3)
brava! 3 (2)
bravo 3 (2)
breve 3 (2)
la brina 27 (2)
brindare 27 (3)
il brindisi (inv.) 27 (3)
il brivido 22 (2)
bruciare 28 (2)
bruciato 27 (2)
brutto 7 (2), 29 (2)
la bufala 24 (2)
il buffet (inv.) 30
buonasera 3
buongiorno 4 (2), 7 (2)
buono 1 (2)
il burattinaio 27
il burro 8 (2)
la busta 14 (2)
C
la cabina 23 (2)
la cabina telefonica 3
cadere 22
il caffè (inv.) 3 (2)
il caffè macchiato 25 (2)
il caffelatte (inv.) 8 (2)
il calciatore 21 (2)
caldo 5
il caldo 6
fare caldo 5
la calma 7 (2)
il calmante 20 (2)
calmarsi 28 (2)
calmo 15 (2)
la calza 27 (2)
il calzolaio 18 (2)
cambiare 4 (2)
cambiarsi 23 (2)
il cambio 7 (2), 7 (3), 18
la camera da letto 5 (2)
la Camera dei Deputati 21 (2)
la cameriera 8
il cameriere 8 (2)
la camicetta 14 (2)
la camicia 10
il camion (inv.) 20 (3)
camminare 18 (2)
il campanello 15 (2)
il campanile 13 (2)
il campeggio 27 (2)
il campo 21 (2)
il campo da tennis 6 (2)
il Canal Grande 10
il canale 10
le Canarie 26 (3)
candito 27 (2)
il/la cantante 21 (2)
cantare 21 (2)
la cantina 24 (3)
il canto 27 (2)
la canzone 21 (3)
il caos 13 (2)
capace 13
i capelli 6
*capire 6 (2)
si capisce 11 (2)
capitare 24
il capitolo 12 (2)
il capo 17 (2)
il Capodanno 13
il capolavoro 13
il capoufficio 17 (2)
la cappella 22 (3)
il cappello 23 (2)
il cappotto 18 (2)
il cappuccino 4 (2)
il carabiniere 2 (2)
caricare 24 (3)
la carità 25 (2)
per carità 25 (2)
la carne 24 (2)
caro 6 (2)
il carovita 17 (2)
il carrello 2 (2)
il carrettino 27
la carriera 17 (3)
il carro SS
il carro attrezzi 20 (3)
la carrozzella 22 (2)
la carta 1 (2)
la carta d'identità 7 (2)
la carta di sbarco 1 (2)
la cartella 2 (2)
la cartina 10 (2)
la cartolina 14 (2)
la casa 3 (2), 5
a casa 3 (2)
la casa popolare 12 (2)
la cascata 20 (2)
il casellante 4 (2)
il casello 4 (2)
il caso 11 (2), 14
fare caso 28
in ogni caso 16 (2)
per caso 14
la cassa 3 (2)
la cassata 27 (2)
la cassetta 24 (3)
la cassiera 3 (2)
il cassiere 7 (2)
castano 6
le Catacombe 22 (2)
la catalogazione 29 (2)
la categoria 6 (2)

la cattedrale 13 (2)
la causa 28 (3)
il cavallo 22 (2)
cavarsela 19 (3)
c'è 2 (2)
celeste 14 (2)
la cena 3 (2)
cenare 8 (2)
la cenere 25 (3)
il cenno 11 (2), 16 (2)
il centinaio (pl. le centinaia) 21 (2)
cento 7 (2)
centomila 7 (2)
la centoventisei 20 (2)
la centoventotto 20
centrale 14 (2)
il centralino 3 (2)
il centro 5 (2)
in centro 5 (2)
la cerca 29
in cerca di 29
cercare 5 (3)
cercare di 14 (2)
cerebrale 20 (2)
la cerimonia 25 (2)
il cerino 14 (2)
il cerotto 20 (2)
certamente 3 (2)
certo 1 (2)
il cestino da viaggio 9 (2)
il cesto 30
lo champagne 30 (3)
che 6, 6 (2), 9
che? 1 (2), 2 (2)
che! 4
che cosa? 1 (2)
che cosa c'è? 4 (2)
chi? 3 (2)
la chiacchiera 30
chiacchierare 9
il chiacchierone 27 (2)
chiamare 3 (2)
chiamarsi 1, 19 (2)
la chiamata 20
chiaro 10 (2)
la chiave 8 (2)
chiedere 6 (2)
la chiesa 11
il chilo 11 (2)
il chilometraggio 20 (2)
il chilometro 20
chissà 9 (2)
chiudere 5, 8 (2)
chiunque 26 (2)
chiuso 7 (2)
ci 8, 9 (2), 10, 11 (2)
ci sono 4 (2)
ci vogliono 6
ci vuole 6 (2)
ciao 2 (2)
il cicerone 22
il cielo 7 (2)
Oh santo cielo! 7 (2)
la cifra 12 (2)
la cilindrata 4 (2)
cin, cin! 30 (2)
il cinema (inv.) 15
cinquanta 7 (2)
cinquantacinque 1
cinquantamila 7 (2)
cinque 2
cinquemila 7 (2)
i cioccolatini 26 (2)
circa 6 (2)
la circolazione 19 (2)
circondato 5
la città (inv.) 1 (2)
in città 1 (2)
il clacson (inv.) 4 (2)
la classe 9 (2)
la/il cliente 8 (3)
il clima (pl. i climi) 30 (2)
la coda 2 (2)
la cognata 2
il cognato 26 (2)
il cognome 1 (2)
col = con il 29 (2)
la colazione 8 (2)
fare colazione 8 (2)
la prima colazione 6 (2)
la colite 19 (3)
i collant 18 (2)
il colle 22
il collega (pl. i colleghi) 11
la collina 5
in collina 5
il colloquio 29 (2)
il colmo 26 (2)
la colonia 29 (2)
la colonna 27 (3)
il colore 10 (2)
il Colosseo 22 (2)
la colpa 17 (3)
*colpire 22
il colpo 19 (2)
di colpo 20 (3)
il colpo di tosse 19 (2)
coltivare 5 (2)
combinare 8 (2), 15 (2)
come 7
come? 2 (2), 3 (3)
come mai? 2 (2)
come si dice? 11 (2)
come stai? 2 (2)
come va? 3 (2)
cominciare 6 (2)
a cominciare da 6 (2)
la commedia 15 (3)
commerciale 21 (3)
il commesso 7 (3)
la commissione 5 (2)
la commozione cerebrale 20 (2)
la compagnia 30 (3)
il compagno 26 (2)
la compera 10
fare compere 10
compilare 1 (2)
compitare 29 (2)
il compito 18 (2)
il compleanno 10 (2)
il complesso 21 (2)
completo 6 (2)
al completo 6
la complicazione 13 (3)
il complimento 6
comprare 4
compreso 6 (2)
la compressa 19 (2)
comune 30
in comune 30
il comune 12 (2)
comunicare 16 (2)
il comunicato 21 (3)

il comunicato
commerciale 21 (3)
la comunicazione 3 (3)
comunque 6 (2)
con 1
il concerto 15
la concordia 27 (2)
il concorso 21 (3)
la condizione 6 (2)
confessare 16 (2)
i confetti 26
confondersi 25 (2)
la confusione 11 (2)
conoscere 6
consegnare 17 (3)
conservato 27 (2)
consigliare 18 (2),
20 (2)
il consiglio 17 (2),
19 (2)
il consiglio di ammini-
strazione 17 (2)
consistere in 29 (2)
la consonante SS
il consulente 16 (3)
la contabilità 17 (2)
il contante 7 (3)
contare 18 (2)
il contatto 29 (2)
contenere 14 (3)
contento 8 (2)
continuamente 19
continuare 13 (2)
il conto 7, 7 (3)
per conto loro
13 (3)
il contorno 12 (2)
il contratto 17 (2)
contro 20
controllare 2 (3)
il controllo 2 (2), 29 (2)
il controllo polizia 2 (3)
il controllore 9 (2)
conveniente 6 (2)
la conversazione 12
mi conviene 19
convincere 12
convocare 17 (2)
la coperta 8 (2)
coperto 8

la copia 17 (2)
in triplice copia
17 (2)
la coppia 11
il coraggio 19
corrente 7
correre 19 (2)
correre dietro 23 (2)
il corridoio 5 (2)
il corridore 26 (2)
la corrispondenza 16
il corso 14 (2)
corto 10 (2)
la cosa 1 (2)
cosa? 2 (2)
cosa c'è? 2 (2)
la coscia 24 (2)
così 2, 5 (2)
così, così 7 (2)
la costa 25
costare 5 (2)
il costo 4 (2)
la costola 20 (2)
costretto 16 (2)
*costruire 12 (2)
il costume 23 (2), 26
la cotoletta 24 (2)
il cotone 14 (2)
la cotta 26 (2)
la cozza 11 (2)
il cratere 27 (2)
credere 9 (2)
credere di sì 12 (3)
il credito 16 (2)
la crema 23 (2)
crescere 26 (2)
la crisi (inv.) 12 (2)
cristiano 22 (3)
il Cristiano 22 (2)
la croce 13 (2)
la crociera 24
la cuccetta 9 (2)
il cucchiaino 29 (3)
la cucina 5 (2)
cucinare 3 (2)
la cuffia 23 (2)
la cugina 9 (2)
cui 22
il cuore 19 (2)
la cupola 22 (2)

la cura 19 (2)
curare 5 (2)
la curva 20
in curva 20
il custode 13

D
da 2, 5, 14
da ... in poi 20 (2)
dai! 14 (2)
il danno 28 (2)
la danza 27 (2)
dappertutto 7
dare 7 (2)
dare del tu 26 (2)
dare verso 8
la data 12
i dati 17 (2)
il datore 17 (2)
il datore di lavoro 17 (2)
davanti 2 (2)
davvero 26 (2)
d.C. = dopo Cristo 22 (2)
decidere 6 (2)
decimo 10
decisamente 21 (2)
deciso 6 (2)
dedicare 22 (3)
definitivamente 30
degli 5, 5 (2)
dei 3, 4 (2)
del 4 (2), 7 (2)
delegato 17 (2)
delicato 25 (3)
dell' 4 (2)
della 3, 8 (3)
delle 4, 5 (2)
il denaro 7 (2)
il dentifricio 19 (2)
dentro 18 (2)
denunciare 28 (2)
il deposito 9 (2)
il deposito bagagli 9 (2)
il deputato 21 (2)
desiderare 1 (2)
il destino 15 (2)
la destra 3 (2)
a destra 3 (2)
destro 19 (2)
dettagliato 10 (2)

il dettaglio 21 (3)
devastare 28 (3)
di 1
d'accordo 6 (2)
di fronte a 9 (2)
di nuovo 11 (2)
di solito 2 (2)
la diapositiva 10 (2)
dica (pure) 3 (2),
8 (2)
dicembre 12 (2)
dichiarare 2 (2)
la dichiarazione 21 (2)
diciannove 1
diciannovesimo 19
diciassette 9 (3)
diciassettesimo 17
diciottesimo 18
diciotto 18
dieci 3 (3)
diecimila 7 (2)
la dieta 19 (2)
mettersi a dieta
19 (2)
dietro 4 (2)
difficile 3 (3)
diffidente 27 (2)
*digerire 23 (2)
dimenticare 6
dimenticarsi 19 (2)
*diminuire 29 (3)
dimostrare 19 (2)
i dintorni 18 (2)
il Dio (pl. gli dei) 9 (2)
Oh Dio! 9 (2)
Dio sia lodato! 28 (2)
dipendere (da) 7 (2)
dipingere 27
dire 4 (2)
direttamente 6 (3)
il direttore 14
la direzione 11, 13 (2)
dirigere 29 (2)
il diritto 20 (3)
il disastro 28 (3)
la discesa 8 (2)
la discoteca 15 (2)
la discussione 6 (2)
discutere 9 (2)
disfare la valigia 29 (3)

il disgraziato 20 (2)
disgregare 30 (2)
il disinfettante 20 (2)
il disordine 25 (2)
dispiacere 14 (2)
mi dispiace 7 (2)
la disposizione 12 (2)
il distacco 30 (2)
distinto 16 (2)
la distinzione 26 (2)
*distribuire 26
disturbare 1 (2)
disturbato 3 (3)
la ditta 16 (2)
diverso 13 (3)
divertente 2
divertirsi 19 (2)
dividere 20 (2)
divorziato 26 (2)
la doccia 8
il documento 7 (2)
dodicesimo 12
dodici 12
la dogana 2
il doganiere 2 (2)
le Dolomiti 6 (2)
il dolore 19 (2)
la domanda 11 (3)
fare una domanda
11 (3)
domandare 11 (2)
domani 3 (2)
la domenica 9
la donna 10 (2)
il dono 11 (2)
dopo 4, 9 (3)
dopodomani 17 (2)
il dopopranzo 21 (2)
il doposcuola 29 (3)
le doppie punte 25 (2)
doppio 6 (2)
dormire 8 (2)
dormire come un
ghiro 8 (2)
il dottore 19
dove? 2 (2)
dovere 3
il dovere 23 (2)
in dovere 23 (2)
dovunque 26 (3)

la dozzina 24 (2)
dritto 13 (2)
due 2
duemila 7 (2)
dunque 3 (2)
il Duomo 13 (2)
durare 24 (2)
duro 4 (3)

E
e 1
ecco 1
l'eco SS
economico 29
ed = e 9 (2)
l'edicola 14 (2)
l'edificio 22 (2)
l'edilizia 21 (3)
edilizio 12 (2)
effervescente 19 (2)
l'effetto 27 (2)
efficace 25 (2)
l'elastico 18 (2)
elegante 6
elementare 26 (2)
l'elettricista 18
l'elicottero 25
l'emendamento 21 (2)
l'emissione 7 (2)
enorme 16 (3)
entrare 10 (2)
l'entrata 17
entro 16 (2), 20 (2)
l'epoca 16
a quell'epoca 16
l'erba 27 (2)
esagerare 19 (2)
l'esame 2
esatto 17 (2)
esaurito 15 (3)
esplorare 27 (3)
l'esposizione 22 (2)
espresso 14 (2)
l'espresso 9
essere 1
l'estate 1 (2)
esterno 11 (3)
estero 7 (3)
all'estero 1 (2)
l'estratto conto 16

l'età 11
l'etto 24 (2)
evitare 20
evviva! 30 (3)

F
fa 10
la fabbrica 5 (2)
la faccenda 18
le faccende di casa 18
la faccia 19
la facciata 11 (3)
facile 13 (2)
il fagiolo 12 (2)
il falò (inv.) 28 (3)
la fame 4 (2)
avere fame 4 (2)
la famiglia 2 (2)
famoso 13
la fantasia 22 (2)
far = fare 10
farcia 12 (2)
fare 2 (2), 3 (2)
fare male 20 (2)
farmaceutico 29
la farmacia 19
il/la farmacista 19 (2)
farsi male 20 (2)
la fasciatura 20 (2)
il fastidio 22 (2)
dare fastidio 22 (2)
la fatica 15 (2)
fare fatica 22 (2)
faticoso 27 (2)
fatto 7 (2)
il fatto 26 (3)
il fattorino 17 (2)
la fattura 16 (2)
favoloso 25 (2)
il favore 15 (2)
per favore 1 (2)
febbraio 12 (2)
la febbre 19 (3)
il fegato 19 (2)
feriale 6 (2)
le ferie 17
ferito 20 (2)
il ferito 20
fermare 16 (2)
fermarsi 20, 25

la fermata 4 (2), 11 (2)
ai ferri 12 (3)
fertile 24 (2)
la festa 22, 30
festeggiare 30 (3)
il festival (inv.) 21 (2)
la fetta 4 (2)
la fiamma 26 (2)
il fianco 7 (2)
a fianco 7 (2)
di fianco 28 (2)
fidanzata Introdtn.
il fidanzato 4
la figlia 1
il figlio 1
la figliola 23 (2)
la figura 25 (2)
fare bella figura
25 (2)
figurarsi 19 (2)
la fila 15 (2)
filare 20 (2)
il filetto 24 (2)
il film (inv.) 15 (2)
dare un film 15 (2)
il filo 18 (2)
per filo e per segno
27
il filtro 14 (2)
finalmente 1
finanziariamente
30 (2)
fine 25 (3)
la fine 5 (2)
il fine-settimana (inv.) 9 (2)
la finestra 8
il finestrino 9
i finimenti 27
*finire 6
*finire (di) 6 (2)
finito 9 (2)
fino 18
fino a 8 (2)
fino in fondo 11 (2)
la finta 18
fare finta di 18
il fioraio 30
il fiore 5 (2)
il fiorentino 10 (3)
il fiorino 7

Firenze 4
firmare 7 (2)
fiscale 21 (2)
fissare 12
fisso 12 (3)
il fiume 22 (3)
il flacone 19 (2)
il fluoro 19 (2)
il folclore 27 (2)
la folla 22 (2)
fondare 22
il fondo 3 (2), 12 (2)
in fondo 3 (2)
la fontana 22 (2)
la forfora 25 (2)
la forma 15 (2)
il formaggio 4 (2)
la formalità 26 (2)
il formato 18 (3)
la fornitura 16 (2)
il Foro 22
forse 4
forte 3 (3), 19 (2),
20 (2)
la fortuna 9 (2)
per fortuna 1 (2)
fortunato 5 (2)
la forza 14 (2), 20 (2)
per forza 14 (2)
fotografare 10
la fotografia 5 (2)
il fotografo 18 (3)
fra 1
fra poco 1
fradicio 14 (2)
francese 1 (3)
il francese 11 (3)
il franco 7
il francobollo 14 (2)
il Frascati 19
il fratello 2
il freddo 14 (2)
avere freddo 14 (2)
il freno 20 (3)
frequentare 1
fresco 11 (2), 15 (2)
il fresco 5 (2)
al fresco 5 (2)
la fretta 2
in fretta 2

fare in fretta
5 (2), 7
il frigo = frigorifero 18 (2)
il frigorifero 18
la frizione 4 (3), 25 (2)
la fronte 20 (2)
di fronte 27 (3)
la frutta 12 (2)
il fruttivendolo 24 (2)
fumare 1 (2)
la funivia 8
funziunare 3 (3)
il fuoco 28 (2)
prendere fuoco
28 (2)
fuori 4 (2), 5 (2),
10 (2)
fuori città 5 (3)
fuori pasto 4 (2)
furibondo 25 (3)
il furto 28 (2)
futuro 12

G
la galleria 13
la prima galleria
15 (3)
la seconda galleria
15 (3)
la galleria d'arte 13
la gamba 20 (3)
il gamberetto 11 (2)
il garage (inv.) 20 (2)
il garagista 20 (2)
*garantire 29 (2)
il gas (inv.) 16 (2)
il gelato 19
la gelosia 26 (3)
generale 12 (2)
la generazione 6 (2)
il genero 14
il genitore 4
gennaio 12 (3)
la gente 9
gentile 5 (2)
gentilmente 8
il geometra (pl. i geo-
metri) 12 (3)
il gesso 26 (3)
il gettone 3

il ghiro 8 (2)
già 4, 11 (2)
la giacca 15 (2)
la giacca a vento 27 (2)
il giallo 14 (2)
il giallo 15 (2)
il giardino 5
in giardino 5
la ginnastica 2
giocare 25 (2)
il giocatore 21 (2)
il gioco 28 (3)
per gioco 28 (3)
il giornalaio 9 (2)
il giornale 1 (2)
il giornale radio 21 (2)
il/la giornalista 21 (2)
la giornata 12
il giorno 2 (2)
di giorno 9 (2)
giovane 16
il giovane 20
il giovanotto 30 (3)
il giovedì 8 (2)
girare 11 (2), 13 (3), 19
il giro 5 (2)
fare un giro 10
in giro 10 (2)
la gita 8 (2)
giù 8 (2)
giugno 14
giusto 21 (2)
gli 4, 11 (2), 18 (2)
godere 6
godersi 23
la gola 19 (2)
il golf (inv.) 14 (2)
la gomma 4 (2)
la gomma a terra 4 (2)
la gondola 10
il gondoliere 11
la gonnella 14 (2)
*gradire 16 (2)
il graffio 20 (2)
il grammo 24 (2)
gran = grande 8
grande 5 (2)
grave 19 (2)
grazie 1 (2)
greco 11 (2)

gridare 27 (2)
grigio 18 (2)
grosso 12 (2)
il gruppo 11
il guaio 8 (2)
guardare 5 (2), 29 (2)
guardarsi attorno 27 (2)
*guarire 19 (3)
il guasto 18 (2)
la guerra 22 (2)
la guida 5 (2)
la guida telefonica 5 (2)
guidare 4
il guidatore 20 (2)
il gusto 9 (2)

H
la hostess 1 (2)

I
i 2 (2)
l'idea 8 (2)
identico 25 (2)
l'identità 7 (2)
l'idraulico 8 (2)
ieri 8
il 1
l'imbocco 4 (3)
imbucare 14 (2)
immaginare 15 (2)
immemorabile 27
immobiliare 16 (3)
imparare 27 (3)
impazzire 27
impegnato 4
l'imperatore 22
l'impermeabile 14 (2)
l'impianto 12 (3)
l'impiegato 6 (3)
l'impiego 29 (2)
importare 2 (2)
che importa? 2 (2)
mi importa di 17 (3)
l'importo 7 (2)
impossibile 3 (2)
l'impresa 12 (2)
l'impresa edilizia 12 (2)
l'impressione 23
imprevisto 7 (2)
improvvisamente 15 (2)

in 1
 incassare 7
 incendiarsi 20 (2)
 l'incendio 28 (2)
 l'incidente 20
 incluso 10 (2)
 incominciare 30 (2)
 incontrare 18 (2)
 l'incontro 2 (2)
 incosciente 4 (2)
 che incosciente!
 4 (2)
 l'incrocio 13 (3)
 l'indecisione 13 (2)
 l'indennità 17 (2)
 l'indennità di carovita
 17 (2)
 l'indicazione 13 (2)
 l'indicazione stradale
 13 (3)
 indietro 13 (3)
 l'indigestione 19 (2)
 indipendente 30 (2)
 l'indirizzo 1 (2)
 l'indizio 28 (3)
 l'infermiera 20 (2)
 l'infermiere 20 (3)
 l'inflazione 17 (2)
 l'influenza 7 (2)
 l'informazione 6 (3)
 l'ingegnere 1 (2)
 ingessare 20 (2)
 l'Inghilterra 29 (2)
 inglese 5
 l'inglese 11 (2)
 all'inglese 5
 ingrossare 19 (2)
 l'iniezione 19 (2)
 iniziare 12 (2)
 l'inizio 12 (2)
 l'insalata 12 (2)
 insegnare 2
 *inserire 3 (2)
 insieme 4 (2)
 insoddisfatto 17 (3)
 l'insolazione 23 (2)
 prendere un' insola-
 zione 23 (2)
 intagliare 27
 intanto 8 (2)

intenso 27 (2)
 l'intenzione 13 (3)
 avere intenzione
 di 13 (3)
 interessare 14
 internazionale 2 (3)
 interno 17
 l'interurbana 3 (2)
 l'intervista 21 (2)
 intorno 5 (2)
 inutile 9 (2)
 invalido 28 (2)
 invece 2
 invernale 18 (2)
 l'inverno 6 (2)
 d'inverno 14 (3)
 investire 20 (3)
 inviare 16 (2)
 invidiabile 17
 invitare 5 (3)
 l'invitato 26
 l'invito 5 (3)
 io 1
 l'isolato 13 (2)
 l'Italia 1
 italiano 1 (2)
 l'italiano 1 (2)
 l'IVA 12 (2)

J
 il jazz 15 (2)

L
 l' 1
 la 1, 7 (2)
 là 30 (2)
 laggiù 8 (2)
 il lago 4 (3)
 L'Aia 2 (2)
 lamentarsi 19
 il lampo 14 (2)
 la lana 14 (2)
 il largo 23 (2)
 al largo 23 (2)
 lasciare 5 (2), 27 (2)
 lasciare perdere 6 (2)
 lasciare stare 27 (2)
 lassù 22 (2)
 il latino 22
 il lato 25 (2)

il lattaio 24 (2)
 il latte 8 (3)
 la latteria 24 (2)
 la lattuga 24 (2)
 la laurea 4
 la lava 27 (2)
 la lavapiatti 5 (2)
 lavare 5 (2)
 lavarsi 19
 lavorare 1
 il lavoro 12
 le 2 (2), 7 (3), 11
 legale 16 (2)
 la legge 21 (2)
 la leggenda 27 (3)
 leggere 12
 leggero 14 (2), 19 (2)
 lei 1 (2), 6
 la lettera 14 (2)
 il letto 5 (2)
 la lezione 1
 lì 7
 lì 10 (2)
 libero 2 (2)
 il libraio 29 (2)
 la libreria 29
 il libretto 7 (2)
 il libretto di risparmio
 7 (2)
 liceale 29 (2)
 la licenza 29 (2)
 la licenza media 29 (2)
 il liceo 1
 il limite 20 (2)
 la limonata 19 (2)
 il limone 4 (2)
 limpido 23 (2)
 la linea 3 (2)
 la lingua 11, 19 (2)
 il liquore 1 (2), 5 (2)
 la lira 4 (2)
 lirico 21 (2)
 la lista 18 (2)
 il litro 24 (2)
 il livello 4 (2)
 il livido 20 (2)
 lo 3, 7 (2), 7 (3)
 locale 26
 il locale 23 (2)
 il locale notturno 23 (2)

lodare 28 (2)
 il loggione 15 (3)
 Londra 29 (2)
 lontano 2 (2), 8
 loro 6 (2), 9 (2), 10 (2)
 11 (2), 13 (2)
 il lotto 25 (2)
 la luce 28 (3)
 luglio 12 (2)
 lui 6, 13 (2)
 la luna 15 (2)
 lunare 27 (2)
 il lunedì 6 (2)
 lungo 10 (2)
 il lungofiume 5
 il luogo 22 (2)
 avere luogo 22 (2)
 il lupo 30 (2)
 il lusso 6 (2)

M
 ma 1 (2)
 macché 7 (2)
 macchiato 25 (2)
 la macchina 2 (2)
 la macchina fotografica
 2 (2)
 la macchina sportiva 4
 la macedonia di frutta
 12 (2)
 il macellaio 24 (2)
 la macelleria 24 (2)
 la madre 1 (3)
 la madrina 26 (2)
 magari 26 (2)
 maggio 13
 maggiore 21 (3)
 il maglione 18 (2)
 magnifico 10
 magro 10 (2)
 mai 2 (2)
 il mal di gola 19 (2)
 il mal di mare 25
 il mal di pancia 19
 il mal di stomaco 19
 il mal di testa 13 (2)
 la malattia 19 (3)
 male 15 (2)
 il male 13 (2)
 la mamma 3 (2)

Oh mamma mia!
 8 (2)
 la mancanza 30 (2)
 sentire la mancanza
 di 30 (2)
 mancare 14 (2)
 la mancia 12 (2)
 mandare 8 (2)
 il mandorlo 27 (2)
 mangiare 4 (2)
 la mangiata 22 (2)
 la manica 10 (2)
 la manicure (inv.) 25 (2)
 fare la manicure
 25 (2)
 la mano (pl. le mani)
 2 (3)
 il mare 7 (2)
 il marito 5 (2)
 la marmellata 8 (3)
 marrone 10 (2)
 il Marsala 27 (2)
 il martedì 8 (2)
 marzo 12 (2)
 il maschio 26 (2)
 il materiale 16 (2)
 la matita 1 (2)
 il matrimonio 12
 la mattina 6 (2)
 mattiniero 8 (2)
 il mattino 19
 matto 22 (2)
 maturo 24 (2)
 me 13 (2)
 il meccanico 4 (2)
 il medico 19
 medio 29 (2)
 il Mediterraneo 24
 meglio 6 (2)
 meno 2 (2)
 meno male 20 (2)
 la mensilità 17
 la mente 16 (2)
 mentre 4 (2)
 il menù (inv.) 12 (2)
 meraviglioso 27 (2)
 il mercato 11 (2)
 a buon mercato
 11 (2)
 la merceria 18 (2)

il mercoledì 8 (2)
 il mese 2 (2)
 la messa in piega 25 (2)
 la metà 6 (3)
 a metà 6 (3), 16 (2)
 il metro 13 (2)
 mettere 4 (2), 14 (2)
 mettere a disposizione
 12 (2)
 mettersi 23 (2)
 mettersi a 20 (3)
 la mezz'età 11
 la mezz'ora 9 (3)
 la mezza 13 (2)
 la mezzanotte 30 (2)
 la mezza pensione 6 (2)
 mezzo 6 (2)
 il mezzo 2, 13 (2)
 in mezzo 13 (2)
 in mezzo a 22 (2)
 il mezzogiorno 13 (2)
 mi 7 (2)
 mica 15 (2)
 miei 4
 il miele 8 (2)
 il migliaio (pl. le migliaia)
 21 (2)
 migliore 21 (2), 24 (2)
 il milanese 1 (3)
 Milano 1
 il millionario 25 (3)
 il milione 25 (3)
 mille (pl. mila) 7 (2)
 milleduecento 4 (2)
 minacciare 14 (2)
 minerale 12 (2)
 la minestra 12 (2)
 il minestrone 12 (3)
 il minimo 20
 come minimo 20
 il minuto 3 (3)
 mio 1, 30 (2)
 il miracolo 15 (2)
 il mistero 22 (3)
 misto 12 (2)
 la misura 10 (2)
 la moda 18 (3)
 alla moda 18 (3)
 di moda 18 (3)
 moderno 22 (2)

il modo 6 (2)
 il modo di vestire 6 (2)
 il modulo 7 (2)
 la moglie (pl. le mogli) 1
 il molo 23 (2)
 molto 1 (3), 4 (2),
 5 (2)
 il momento 1 (2)
 mondiale 22 (2)
 il mondo 11
 la moneta 7 (2)
 la montagna 1 (2)
 in montagna 1 (2)
 morire 6
 la morte 21
 il mosaico 11 (3)
 il moscato 27 (3)
 la moto (inv.) 20
 il motociclista 20
 il motoscafo 11 (3)
 il mucchio 9
 la multa 4 (2)
 il municipio 26 (2)
 muoversi 19 (2)
 il museo 13
 la musica 15 (2)
 il muso 26 (2)
 la mutua 19 (2)

N

Napoli 4 (3)
 nascere 26 (2)
 il Natale 13
 naturalmente 16 (2)
 la nausea 19 (3)
 la nave 25
 nazionale 14 (2)
 ne 10
 né ... né 18
 la nebbia 27 (2)
 necessario 5 (3)
 negli 6 (2)
 il negozio 7 (3)
 nei 6 (2)
 nel, nell' 6 (2)
 nelle 6
 nello 6
 nemmeno 16
 nero 14 (2)
 nessun, nessuno 2, 3 (2)

nessuno 16 (3)
 la neve 6 (2)
 niente 2 (2)
 il nipote 15
 la nipote 15
 no 1 (2)
 noi 1, 13 (3)
 noioso 2
 noleggiare 8 (2)
 a noleggio 20 (2)
 il nome 1 (2)
 non 1 (2)
 non ... ancora 4
 non c'è male 2 (3)
 non ... mai 7 (3)
 non ... niente 2 (2)
 non ... più 6
 la nonna 1
 il nonno 19 (3)
 nono 9
 nonostante 24 (2)
 normale 14 (2)
 nostro 5
 la nota 28 (2)
 la notizia 2 (2)
 noto 29
 la notte 8 (2)
 di notte 8 (2)
 notturno 23 (2)
 novanta 3 (2)
 nove 2 (3)
 novembre 12 (2)
 le nozze 6 (2)
 nulla 17 (2)
 il numero 3 (2), 18 (3)
 fare il numero 3 (2)
 la nuora 19 (3)
 nuotare 23 (2)
 la nuotata 11 (2)
 fare una nuotata
 11 (2)
 nuovissimo 4 (3)
 nuovo 4 (3)
 la nuvola 6

O

o 1 (2)
 obbligato 21
 gli occhiali 18 (2)
 gli occhiali da sole 18 (2)

l'occhiata 18 (2)
 dare un'occhiata 18 (2)
 l'occhio 6
 occuparsi (di) 26 (2)
 occupato 3 (2), 6
 offrire 11
 l'oggetto 28 (2)
 gli oggetti smarriti
 28 (2)
 oggi 1 (2)
 ogni 5 (2)
 ognuno SS
 l'Olanda 1
 olandese 1 (2)
 l'olandese 11 (2)
 le Olimpiadi 22 (2)
 l'olio 4 (2)
 l'oliveto 27 (2)
 oltre 30 (2)
 oltre tutto 30 (2)
 l'ombra 5
 all'ombra 5
 l'ombrello 14 (2)
 l'ombrellone 23 (2)
 l'onda 25 (2)
 l'onorevole 21 (2)
 l'opera 15 (2)
 l'operaio 17 (2)
 opportuno 17 (2)
 opposto 13 (2)
 oppure 9 (3)
 l'opuscolo 6 (2)
 ora 1
 l'ora 2
 l'ora di punta 3
 che ora è? 2
 l'orario 2, 6 (2)
 fuori orario 17
 in perfetto orario 2
 l'orchestra 15 (2)
 ordinare 8 (2)
 l'ordinazione 17 (2)
 l'ordine 28 (2)
 in ordine 29 (2)
 per ordine 28 (2)
 l'oreficeria 13 (2)
 l'organizzazione 29 (2)
 l'orientamento 24
 l'origine SS
 ormai 11 (2)

l'ospedale 12 (2)
 l'ospitalità 29
 ospitare 15
 l'ospite 5
 osservare 22 (3)
 l'osservazione 20 (2)
 l'osteria 22 (2)
 ottantatre 3 (2)
 ottavo 8
 l'ottico 18 (2)
 ottimo 3 (2)
 otto 2
 ottobre 12 (2)
 ovale 22 (3)

P

il pacchetto 1 (2)
 il pacco 10 (2)
 la pace 19
 il padre 5 (2)
 il padrone 12 (3)
 il paesaggio 27 (2)
 il paese 11, 13 (3)
 la paga 29 (3)
 il pagamento 16 (2)
 pagare 8 (2)
 il paio (pl. le paia)
 10 (2), 18 (2)
 il paladino 27
 il palazzo 10, 13 (2)
 il Palazzo dello Sport
 22 (2)
 la pancia 19
 il pane 8 (2)
 il pane tostato 8 (2)
 il panettiere 24 (2)
 il panettone 4 (2)
 il panfilo 23 (2)
 il panino 4 (2)
 la panna 27 (2)
 i pantaloni 10
 il Pantheon 22 (2)
 la pantofola 14 (2)
 il papa (pl. i papi) 22 (2)
 il papà (inv.) 3 (2)
 papale 22 (2)
 il parabrezza (inv.)
 20 (2)
 paragonare SS
 il parcheggio 2 (2)

parecchio 7
 il parente 9
 parere 18 (2)
 alla pari 29 (2)
 Parigi 11 (2)
 parigino 26 (2)
 parlare 1 (2)
 parlare del più e del
 meno 25 (2)
 parlarsi a quattr'occhi
 30 (2)
 il parmigiano 24 (2)
 la parola SS
 il parrucchiere 25
 la parte 1
 da che parte?
 11 (2)
 da parte mia 17 (2)
 da questa parte
 2 (2)
 la partenza 8 (3)
 partire 6
 la partita 21 (2)
 la Pasqua 13
 il passaggio 11 (2)
 di passaggio 11 (2)
 il/la passante 13 (2)
 il passaporto 2 (2)
 passare 1, 2
 passare da 14 (2)
 il passeggero 1 (2)
 la passeggiata 23
 fare una passeggiata
 23
 il passo 6 (2)
 fare quattro passi
 8 (2)
 qui a due passi
 6 (2)
 la pasta 12 (2)
 il pasticcio 8 (2)
 la pastiglia 19 (2)
 il pasto 4 (2)
 la patente 4
 il pattinaggio 6 (2)
 la paura 14 (2)
 avere paura 14 (2)
 la pazienza 15 (2)
 pazzo 6
 il pazzo 12 (2)

il peccato 15 (2)
 che peccato! 2 (2)
 pedonale 4 (2)
 il pedone 20 (3)
 peggio 24 (3)
 peggiorare 23 (2)
 peggiore 24 (2)
 la pelle 10 (2)
 la pelliccia 27 (2)
 la pellicola 10 (2)
 la pellicola a colori 10 (2)
 la pena 27 (2)
 la penna 1 (2)
 il pennacchio 27
 pensare 3 (2), 12 (2)
 il pensiero 24 (2)
 in pensiero 24 (2)
 la pensione 6 (2), 28 (2)
 la pensione completa 6 (2)
 pentirsi di 25 (2)
 il pepe 5 (2)
 per 1, 1 (2)
 per cento 6 (2)
 perbacco 19 (2)
 perché? 4
 perché 4 (3)
 perciò 5
 perdere 6 (2)
 perdere tempo 25
 perfetto 2
 il pericolo 20 (2)
 fuori pericolo 21
 la periferia 5 (2)
 alla periferia 5 (2)
 il periodo 5 (2)
 il permesso 26 (2)
 permettere 5 (2)
 la persiana 5
 persino 28 (2)
 la persona 11 (2)
 il personaggio 21 (2)
 personale 17
 il personale 29 (3)
 pesante 2 (2), 12 (2)
 pesare 2 (2)
 la pesca 23 (2)
 pescare 11 (2)
 il pescatore 23 (2)
 il pesce 11 (2)
 la Pescheria 11 (2)

il pescivendolo 11 (2)
 pessimo 24 (3)
 pettegolare 16 (2)
 i pettegolezzi 26 (2)
 pettinarsi 19
 la pettinatura 25 (2)
 il pezzo 17, 24 (2)
 il pezzo di ricambio 17
 piacere 3, 4 (3),
 5 (2), 6 (2)
 mi piacciono 6 (2)
 mi piacciono di
 più 6 (2)
 le piace 5 (2)
 mi piace 3
 ti piace 4 (3)
 il piacere 18 (2), 25 (3)
 piacere di conoscerla
 26 (2)
 fare il piacere
 25 (3)
 per piacere
 14 (2)
 piangere 15 (2)
 piano 15 (2)
 il piano 5
 il piano di sopra 5 (2)
 a due piani 5
 la pianta 10
 il pianterreno 5 (2)
 il piatto 5 (2)
 la piazza 3
 il piazzale 13 (3)
 piccolo 1 (3)
 il piede 8 (2)
 a piedi 8 (2)
 la piega 25 (2)
 pieno 12 (2)
 il pieno 4 (2)
 pignolo 2 (2)
 pigro 23 (2)
 la pineta 28 (3)
 le pinne 23 (2)
 il pino 8
 la pioggia 14
 prendere la pioggia
 14 (2)
 piovere 14 (2)
 la piscina 6 (2)
 la pista 6 (2)
 la pista per pattinaggio
 6 (2)
 più 3 (3)
 per di più 3
 piuttosto 10 (2)
 la pizza 18 (2)
 la pizzeria 15 (2)
 la platea 15 (3)
 il Po 5
 un po' 2 (2)
 pochi 7
 pochissimo 5 (2)
 poco 1, 12 (3)
 per poco 23 (2)
 poi 7
 la polemica 21 (2)
 il poliglotta (pl. i poli-
 glotti) 11 (3)
 politico 22
 la polizia 2 (3)
 il poliziotto 2 (3)
 il pollo 18 (2)
 il polmone 19 (2)
 la poltrona 15 (2),
 15 (3)
 il pomeriggio 7
 il pompiere 28 (2)
 i pompieri 28 (2)
 il ponte 9
 fare il ponte 9
 popolare 12 (2)
 la porta 2 (2)
 il portabagagli (inv.)
 2 (2)
 il portafoglio (inv.)
 10 (2)
 portare 1 (2), 2 (2),
 5 (2)
 il portiere 8
 la portinaia 15
 il porto 23 (2)
 il portone 14 (3)
 la posa 10 (2)
 le posate 5 (2)
 possibile 3 (2)
 la possibilità 30 (2)
 la posta 14, 16 (2)
 la Posta Centrale 14 (2)
 il posticino 22 (2)
 il posto 6 (2), 12 (2)
 a posto 19 (2)
 mettere a posto
 25 (2)
 potere 3 (2)
 non poterne più
 22 (2), 30 (2)
 la poveretta 7 (2)
 povero 15
 pranzare 8 (2)
 il pranzo 5
 la pratica 29 (2)
 precedente 16 (2)
 preciso 26
 *preferire 6 (2)
 prego 1 (2)
 premere 3 (2)
 il premio 17 (2)
 prendere 4, 4 (2)
 prendere la multa 4 (2)
 prendere la patente 4
 prenderla sul ridere
 30 (2)
 prendersela 23 (2)
 prenotare 6 (2)
 la prenotazione 6 (2)
 preoccuparsi 19
 preoccupato 4
 la preoccupazione 12 (2)
 preparare 8 (3)
 presentare 18
 il presentatore 21 (3)
 la presentazione 26 (2)
 presente 17 (2)
 la pressione 4 (2)
 presto 9, 12
 previsto 14 (2)
 il prezzo 4 (2)
 a prezzo fisso 12 (3)
 la prigionia 16 (2)
 prima 3 (2), 4 (2)
 prima (di) 5 (2)
 la primavera 25 (2)
 primo 1
 il primo 12 (3)
 principale 1
 il problema (pl. i problemi)
 16 (3)
 procedere 16 (2)
 il processo 22
 il prodotto 24 (2)

la produzione 17 (2)
 il profumo 1 (2)
 il progetto 6
 il programma (pl. i
 programmi) 13 (3)
 promettere 17 (2)
 la promozione 30 (3)
 pronto 5
 pronto? 3 (2)
 il pronto soccorso
 20 (2)
 propagarsi 28 (2)
 proporre 21 (2)
 la proporzione 17 (2)
 la proposta 21 (2),
 29 (2)
 la proposta di legge
 21 (2)
 il proprietario 26
 il proprietario terriero
 26
 proprio 2 (2), 30 (2)
 proprio oggi 2 (2)
 proseguire 13 (2)
 prossimo 6 (2)
 proteggere 30 (2)
 la prova 29 (3)
 in prova 29 (3)
 provare 3 (2)
 proveniente 20
 la provvista 24
 fare provviste 24
 la pubblicità 22 (2)
 pubblico 22
 il pubblico 21 (2)
 le Puglie 26
 *pulire 18
 il pullman (inv.) 6 (2)
 la punta 25 (2)
 il punto 8 (2)
 in punto 8 (2)
 può darsi 28 (3)
 il pupo 27
 purché 24
 pure 8 (2)
 purtroppo 2

Q

qua 29 (2)
 di qua e di là 30 (2)

il quadro 13
 qualche 7 (2)
 qualcosa 2 (2)
 qualcuno 2 (3), 29
 quale? 10 (2)
 la qualità 11 (2)
 qualunque 15 (2)
 quando 3 (2)
 quanto? 2 (2)
 quanto fa? 2 (2)
 quaranta 2 (3)
 quarantamila 10 (2)
 quarantasei 10 (2)
 quarantasette 1
 quarantotto 3 (2)
 il quartiere 12 (2)
 il quartino 12 (3)
 quarto 4
 il quarto 5
 il quarto d'ora 9 (3)
 quasi 5 (2)
 quattordicesimo 14
 quattordici 14
 quattro 2
 quattrocentosettanta-
 cinque 3 (2)
 quegli 12 (3)
 quei 12
 quel 12 (2)
 quella tale 26 (2)
 quello 2 (2), 4
 questo 1 (2)
 qui 1 (2)
 quindicesimo 15
 quindici 6 (2)
 la quindicina 15
 quinto 5

R

la rabbia 9 (2)
 il raccolto 24 (3)
 raccomandare 29 (2)
 raccomandato 14 (2)
 la raccomandazione
 23 (2)
 raccontare 27
 radersi 25 (2)
 la radio (inv.) 21
 il raffreddore 19 (2)
 la ragazza 2 (3)

i ragazzi 5 (2)
 il ragazzo 5 (2)
 il raggio 20 (2)
 raggiungere 23 (2)
 la ragione 4 (2)
 avere ragione 4 (2)
 il ragioniere 12 (3)
 il ragù (inv.) 12 (3)
 rapidamente 29 (2)
 il rapido 6
 il rapporto 11 (2), 26
 il re (inv.) 22 (3)
 la realtà 22 (2)
 in realtà 22 (2)
 recitare 30 (2)
 recuperare 3 (2)
 la referenza 29
 il regalo 2 (2)
 la regina 22 (3)
 la regione 24 (2)
 il regno 27 (3)
 il regolamento 9 (2)
 regolato 4 (2)
 religioso 22
 remare 23 (2)
 il remo 23 (2)
 rendere 24 (2)
 il reparto 17 (2)
 la repubblica 3
 la resa dei conti 16 (3)
 il resoconto 17 (2)
 restare 5 (2), 12 (2)
 i resti 22
 il resto 4, 12 (2)
 la rete 21 (2), 23 (2)
 il reumatismo 19
 riabituarsi 30 (2)
 riaprire 7
 il ricambio 17
 ricco 13
 la ricetta 19 (2)
 ricevere 8
 il ricevimento 26
 la ricevuta 7 (2)
 richiamare 3 (2)
 la richiesta 16 (2)
 la richiesta di pagamento
 16 (2)
 ricordare 4 (2), 17 (2)
 ricordarsi 19 (2)

il ricostituente 19 (2)
 la ricotta 24 (2)
 ricoverare 20 (2)
 ridere 15 (3)
 riesserci 23 (2)
 rifiutare 21 (2)
 la riga 14
 rimanere 7, 27 (3)
 rimediare 20 (2)
 rimettersi 26 (3)
 rimorchiare 20 (3)
 il Rinascimento 13
 rinfrescarsi 23 (2)
 ringraziare 20
 ripassare 19 (2)
 ripetere 17 (2)
 ripetutamente 16 (2)
 riportare 20 (2)
 riposarsi 19 (2)
 il riposo 19 (2)
 la ripresa 12 (3)
 riprovare 3 (2)
 la riserva 21 (2)
 riservare 8 (2)
 il risparmio 7 (2)
 rispondere 16 (2)
 la risposta 16 (2)
 il ristorante 9 (2)
 il risultato 8 (2)
 risuolare 18
 il ritardo 2
 in ritardo 4 (2)
 ritirare 7 (2), 18 (2)
 ritornare 1
 il ritorno 1 (2)
 di ritorno 5
 la riunione 3 (3)
 in riunione 3 (3)
 riuscire 12
 la rivista 25 (2)
 la roba 11 (2)
 la roccia 23 (2)
 Roma 1
 il/la romano/a 10 (3)
 il Romano 22 (3)
 romantico 6 (2)
 il romanzo 21
 rompere 20 (2)
 la rosa 5
 rosso 2 (2)
 il rotolo 18 (2)
 il rotolo di foto 18 (2)
 rotto 8 (2)
 rubare 28 (2)
 il rubinetto 8 (2)
 il ruolo 30 (2)
 la ruota 4 (2)
 la ruota di scorta 4 (2)
 il russo 24
S
 il sabato 12
 la sabbia 23 (2)
 il sacchetto 10 (2)
 il sacco 17 (2)
 sacro 22
 la sala 5 (2)
 la sala da pranzo 5 (2)
 il salario 17 (2)
 il salario base 17 (2)
 saldare 16 (2)
 i saldi 18 (2)
 a saldo di 16 (2)
 il sale 5 (2)
 salire 9 (2), 24 (3)
 il salto 29 (2)
 fare un salto 29 (2)
 salutare 15 (2), 18 (2)
 la salute 30 (2)
 alla salute! 30 (2)
 il saluto 11 (2)
 il salvagente (inv.) 23 (3)
 salvare 23 (2)
 salve! 6
 salvo 28 (2)
 san = santo 10
 il sandalo 18 (2)
 il sangue 22 (2)
 sanguinoso 22 (2)
 sano 19 (2)
 sano e salvo 28 (2)
 santo 7 (2)
 sapere 7 (2)
 la saponetta 19 (2)
 la Sardegna 25
 sbagliarsi 19
 sbagliato 3 (2)
 sbandare 20
 la sbandata 20
 lo sbarco 27 (2)
 sbarrare 11 (2)
 sbarrato 13 (2)
 sbattere 20
 sbrigare 16
 scadente 16 (2)
 la scala 15 (2)
 lo scalino 11
 scalognato 28 (2)
 la scaloppina 24 (2)
 gli scampi 11 (2)
 scandaloso 26 (2)
 la scarpa 14 (2)
 la scarpata 20
 lo scarpone 8 (2)
 la scatola 14 (2)
 lo scavo 25
 scegliere 10 (2)
 lo scenario 27 (2)
 scendere 4 (2), 9 (2)
 la schedina 25 (2)
 lo schiavo 22 (2)
 lo sci 8 (2)
 lo sci d'acqua 23 (2)
 lo scialle 15 (2)
 sciare 6 (2)
 la sciocchezza 27 (2)
 sciocco 14 (2)
 fare lo sciocco 14 (2)
 lo sciopero 3
 lo scippo 28 (2)
 lo sciroppo 19 (2)
 scivolare 20
 lo scompartimento 6
 lo sconosciuto 3 (2)
 lo scontrino 3 (2)
 scoppiare 22 (2)
 scoprire 28
 scorbutico 30 (2)
 scorrere 22 (2)
 scorso 11 (3)
 scottare 23 (2)
 scozzese 1 (2)
 scritto 6 (2)
 la scrivania 10
 scrivere 11 (2)
 la scuola 2 (2)
 la scusa 18
 scusare 17 (2)
 scusi 1 (2), 3 (2)
 scusi tanto 3 (2)

la sdraio (inv.) 23 (2)
 se 1 (2)
 secco 25 (2)
 secondo 1 (2), 4 (2), 13 (2)
 secondo te 13 (2)
 il secondo 12 (2)
 il sedano 24 (2)
 sedersi 22 (2)
 la sedia 5 (2)
 sedicesimo 16
 sedici 14 (2)
 seduto 23 (2)
 la seggiovia 6 (2)
 il segno 27
 la segretaria 3 (3)
 seguire 8 (2)
 sei 3 (2)
 il semaforo 4 (2)
 sembrare 14 (3)
 semplice SS
 semplicemente 18 (2)
 sempre 3 (2), 12
 il Senato 21 (2)
 il senso 22 (3)
 il senso di orientamento 24
 sentire 8, 8 (2)
 sentire dire 19 (3)
 sentirsi bene 19
 sentirsi di (+ inf.) 20 (2)
 sentirsi male 19 (2)
 senza 2
 senz'altro 8 (3)
 la sera 5 (3)
 la serata 15 (2)
 serio 29
 servire 18 (2)
 il servizio 4 (2)
 sessantacinque 3 (2)
 sesto 6
 la seta 18 (2)
 sette 3
 settembre 12 (2)
 la settimana 6 (2)
 settimanale 6 (2)
 settimo 7
 sfarzoso 26
 sfidare 23 (2)
 sfiorare 23 (2)
 *sfoltire 25 (2)
 lo sfondo 8
 sfortunato 9 (3)
 lo shampoo (inv.) 25 (2)
 shockato 20 (2)
 sì 1 (2)
 si accomodi 3 (2)
 sia ... che 16 (3)
 la siccità 28 (3)
 la Sicilia 27
 siciliano 27 (2)
 il siciliano 27
 la sicurezza 28 (2)
 sicuro 4 (2)
 di sicuro 17 (2)
 la sigaretta 1 (2)
 il sigaro 14 (2)
 la signora 1 (2), 1 (3)
 il signore 1 (2), 1 (3)
 la signorina 1 (2)
 la signorina alla pari 29 (3)
 il silenzio 8
 silenzioso 22 (2)
 simile 26 (3)
 simpatico 6
 sincero 26 (2)
 il sindacalista 17 (2)
 il sindacato 17 (2)
 singolo 6 (2)
 la sinistra 5 (2)
 a sinistra 2 (2)
 sistemare 9 (2)
 lo skilift (inv.) 6 (2)
 smarrito 28 (2)
 il soccorso 20 (2)
 sociale 26
 la società 14, 16
 la società sportiva 14
 socievole 30 (2)
 soddisfare 17 (2)
 soddisfatto di 3 (2)
 soffrire di 19
 il soggiorno 5 (2)
 la sogliola 11 (2)
 sognare 25 (3)
 il sogno 25 (3)
 i soldi 7
 il sole 4 (3)

prendere il sole 11 (2)
 la solennità 22 (3)
 solito 4 (2)
 sollecitare 16 (2)
 il sollecito (di pagamento) 16 (2)
 il sollievo 9 (2)
 solo 1 (2), 8 (2), 16 (3)
 da solo 7 (2)
 fare da solo 7 (2)
 soltanto 27 (2)
 la soluzione 29 (2)
 la somma 25 (2)
 il sonno 23 (2)
 avere sonno 23 (2)
 sono le ... 2
 sopportare 30 (2)
 di sopra 5 (2)
 il soprabito 14 (2)
 soprattutto 23
 la sorella 1
 il sorpasso 20
 in sorpasso 20
 il sorriso 11 (2)
 la sorta 22 (2)
 sostenere 20 (2)
 sottile 24 (2)
 sotto 13 (2), 16 (2)
 il sottofiletto 24 (2)
 sottovoce 11
 sovrappensiero 28
 S.p.a. = Società per azioni 17
 spaesato 26 (2)
 gli spaghetti 12 (3)
 spagnolo 11 (3)
 lo spagnolo 11 (2)
 sparecchiare 5 (2)
 *sparire 18
 spaventarsi 19
 lo spavento 28 (2)
 lo spazio 5 (2)
 speciale 4 (2)
 la specialità 12 (2)
 specializzato 29 (2)
 la specializzazione 29 (2)
 specie 19
 *spedire 14 (2)
 sperare di 4

sperare di sì 12 (2)
 la spesa 10 (2)
 fare le spese
 10 (2)
 spesso 1 (2)
 spett. = spettabile
 16 (2)
 lo spettacolo 15
 lo spettatore 22 (3)
 mi spiace = mi
 dispiace 9 (2)
 spiacente 16 (2)
 la spiaggia 23
 in spiaggia 23 (2)
 gli spiccioli 12 (2)
 spiegare 16 (3)
 spingere 23 (2)
 lo spintone 28
 spiritoso 23 (2)
 splendido 22
 spogliarsi 19 (2)
 lo sport (inv.) 22 (2)
 lo sportello 7 (2)
 sportivo 14
 la sposa 26
 sposare 4
 lo sposo 26
 lo spumante 30 (2)
 lo spuntino 8 (3)
 la squadra 21 (2)
 squalificato 21 (2)
 squisito 8 (2)
 stabilito 17 (2)
 lo stadio 22 (3)
 la stagione 6 (2)
 stamattina 7
 la stampa 1 (2), 10 (2)
 stancarsi 19 (2)
 stanco 5 (2)
 stanotte 11 (2)
 la stanza 5 (2)
 stare 2 (2)
 stare per 15
 stasera 3 (2)
 la statale 20
 la statistica 17 (2)
 la stazione 4 (2)
 la stazione di servizio
 4 (2)
 la stella 21 (3)

la stenodattilografia 17
 la stenografare 17 (2)
 la sterlina 7
 sterzare 20
 lo sterzo 4 (2)
 stesso 10 (2)
 lo stile 11 (3)
 lo stipendio 17
 stirare 18
 lo stivale 14 (2)
 la stoffa 29 (3)
 lo stomaco 19
 la storia 9 (2), 27 (2)
 stracarico 24 (2)
 la strada 4 (2), 13 (2)
 stradale 13 (3)
 lo straniero 4 (3)
 strano 4
 strappare 28 (2)
 tenere stretto 28
 la striscia 4 (2)
 le strisce pedonali 4 (2)
 lo studente 29 (2)
 studiare 1 (2), 1 (3)
 lo studio 4, 5 (2)
 stufo 3 (2)
 stufo di provare 3 (2)
 stupido 21
 su 8 (2)
 in su 10 (2)
 subito 3 (3)
 succedere 4 (2)
 il successo 21 (2)
 il sud 7
 *s suggerire 27 (2)
 suggestivo 27 (2)
 sui 5
 sul 5, 5 (2)
 sull' 4
 sulla 4 (2)
 sulle 4 (2)
 suo, suoi 5 (2), 7
 la suocera 18 (2)
 i suoceri 12
 suonare 4 (2)
 il suono SS
 superare 20
 il supermercato 18
 il supplemento 9 (2)
 il/la supplente 12 (2)

la susina 24 (2)
 svegliare 19 (2)
 la svendita 18 (3)
 svenire 20 (2)
 sviluppare 18 (2)
 svizzero 7 (3)
 svolgersi 22

T
 il tabaccaio 14 (2)
 il tabacco 14 (2)
 il tacco 18 (2)
 tagliare 24 (2)
 il taglio 20 (2)
 il tailleur (inv.) 26
 tale 30 (2)
 il tamponamento 20 (3)
 tanti 11 (3)
 tanto 3 (2), 3 (3), 5 (2)
 il tappo 24 (2)
 tardi 3 (2)
 sul tardi 18 (2)
 la tariffa 20 (2)
 la tasca 28
 la tassa 21 (2)
 il tassì (inv.) 2 (2)
 la tavola 18 (2)
 la tavola calda 18 (2)
 il tavolino 5 (2)
 il tavolo 12 (3)
 il taxi (inv.) 5 (2)
 la tazza 5 (2)
 te 13 (2)
 il tè 4 (2)
 il tè al latte 8 (3)
 il tè al limone 4 (2)
 il teatro 13 (3)
 il teatro all'aperto 13 (3)
 il teatro dei pupi 27
 tedesco 11
 il tedesco 11 (2)
 telefonare 3
 la telefonata 3
 il/la telefonista 29 (2)
 il telefono 3 (2)
 al telefono 3 (2)
 per telefono 8 (3)
 il telegiornale 21 (2)
 il telegramma (pl. i tele-
 grammi) 25

la teleselezione 3 (2)
 la televisione 8 (2)
 il tempaccio 14 (3)
 il tempio 22 (3)
 i templi 27 (2)
 il tempo 1 (2), 2 (2)
 fare a tempo
 22 (2)
 fare in tempo
 15 (2)
 il temporale 14 (2)
 tenere 17 (2)
 tenere a 30
 tenero 24 (2)
 tenersi 22
 tentare 29
 il tentativo 29 (2)
 le terme 15 (2)
 il terminal (inv.) 2
 la terra 4 (2)
 per terra 8 (2)
 la terraferma 27 (2)
 il terreno 16
 terriero 26
 terzo 1 (3)
 la tesi (inv.) 12 (2)
 il tesoro 12 (2)
 la testa 6
 il tetto 16 (2)
 ti 7 (2), 11 (2)
 il tifoso 9 (2)
 la tinta 25 (2)
 fare la tinta 25 (2)
 la tintoria 18
 il tipo 4 (2), 28 (3)
 tirare 4 (2)
 toccare 17 (2)
 toccare a 17 (2),
 24 (2)
 togliere 20
 la tomba 22 (3)
 il topo 27 (2)
 il topo di biblioteca
 27 (2)
 il torinese 1 (3)
 Torino 1
 tornare 3 (2)
 la tosse 19 (2)
 tostato 8 (2)
 il totocalcio 25 (2)

tra 5
 tradizionale 26
 il traffico 3
 tragico 15 (2)
 il tram (inv.) 3
 la trama 15 (2)
 tramandare 27
 il trampolino 23 (2)
 tranne 26 (2)
 il tranquillante 19 (2)
 tranquillizzarsi 19 (2)
 tranquillo 15 (2)
 *trasferirsi 29
 trasmettere 21 (2)
 la trasmissione 21 (2)
 la trasmissione tele-
 visiva 21 (2)
 il trasporto 12 (2)
 trattarsi di 29 (2)
 la trattoria 12 (3)
 la traversa 13 (2)
 tre 2
 tredicesimo 13
 tredici 13
 tremendo 19
 il treno 6
 trenta 8 (2)
 trentadue 8 (3)
 trentamila 22 (3)
 trentatre 8 (3)
 trentesimo 30
 trentotto 8 (2)
 trentuno 3 (2)
 la triglia 12 (2)
 il trimestre 16 (3)
 triplice 17 (2)
 triste 30 (2)
 troppo 4, 13 (2)
 essere di troppo
 15 (2)
 la trota 12 (2)
 trovare 2 (2)
 tu 2 (2)
 il tubetto 19 (2)
 tuffarsi 23 (3)
 il tuffo 23 (2)
 tuo 6 (2)
 il tuono 14 (2)
 il/la turista 10 (2)
 fare il turista 10 (2)

turistico 7
 il turno 9 (2)
 tutti e due 5 (2)
 tutto 2 (2)
 la tv = televisione 21

U
 uffa! 6
 l'ufficio 7 (3)
 l'ufficio di polizia 28
 l'ufficio informazioni
 9 (2)
 ugualmente 17 (2)
 ultimo 9 (2), 21 (3)
 l'umidità 8 (2)
 un 1 (2)
 un' 4 (3)
 una 1
 è l'una 5
 undicesimo 11
 undici 8 (2)
 unico 25 (2)
 unito 16 (2)
 universale 22 (2)
 l'università 1
 uno 1, 3 (2)
 l'uomo (pl. gli uomini)
 16
 l'uovo (pl. le uova)
 24 (2)
 urgente 3 (3)
 l'urgenza 17 (2)
 d'urgenza 17 (2)
 l'urlo 22 (2)
 u.s. = ultimo scorso
 16 (2)
 l'usanza 30 (2)
 usare 4
 si usa 26
 l'usciera 28 (2)
 uscire 9
 l'uscita 2 (2)
 l'uscita di sicurezza
 28 (2)
 l'uva 24 (2)

V
 va bene 1 (2)
 la vacanza 1
 in vacanza 1 (2)

- vacillante 27 (3)
 vacillare 27 (3)
 il vagabondo 30 (2)
 il vagone ristorante
 9 (2)
 valere 23 (2), 27 (2)
 valere la pena di
 27 (2)
 la valigia 2 (2)
 fare le valigie 8 (3)
 la valle 8 (2)
 la valuta 7 (2)
 vanitoso 6
 il vanto 27 (2)
 il vaporetto 5 (2)
 vario 10 (2)
 il vassoio 5 (2)
 Vaticano 22 (2)
 ve = vi 17 (2)
 vecchio 5
 vedere 5
 non vedere l'ora
 di 6
 veloce 20 (2)
 la velocità 20 (2)
 vendere 9 (2)
 la vendita 16 (3)
 in vendita 16 (3)
 il venerdì 12
 Venezia 7
 la veneziana 11 (2)
 venire 8 (2)
 ventesimo 20
 venti 6 (2)
 venticinque 8 (3)
 venticinquesimo 25
 ventidue 22
 ventiduesimo 22
 la ventina 14 (2)
 ventinove 29
 ventinovesimo 29
 ventiquattresimo 24
 ventiquattro 21
 ventisei 26
 ventiseiesimo 26
 ventisette 27
 ventisettesimo 27
 ventitre 1
 ventitreesimo 23
 il vento 23 (3)
- ventottesimo 28
 ventotto 28
 ventunesimo 21
 ventuno 8 (2)
 veramente 3 (3)
 verde 12 (2)
 il verde 5 (2)
 la verdura 24 (2)
 la vergogna 24 (2)
 verificare 16
 la verità 5 (2)
 vero 1 (2)
 il versamento 7 (2)
 versare (su) 7
 verso 3 (2), 4 (2)
 vestire 6 (2)
 vestirsi 19
 i vestiti 2 (2)
 il vestito 14 (2)
 il vestito da uomo
 18 (2)
 la vetrina 10 (2)
 il vetro 20 (2)
 il vetturino 22 (2)
 vi 8 (2), 22
 via 7 (2)
 la via 13 (2)
 via aerea 14 (2)
 la via legale 16 (2)
 viaggiare 1 (2)
 il viaggiatore 9 (2)
 la viaggiatrice 30 (2)
 il viaggio 3 (2)
 in viaggio 4
 il viaggio di nozze 6 (2)
 vicino 13 (3)
 vicino (a) 2 (2)
 il vicino 11 (2)
 il vicino di casa 28 (3)
 il vigile 13 (3)
 in vigore 21 (2)
 la villetta 5
 vincere 25 (2)
 la vincita 25 (2)
 il vino 5
 viola 18 (2)
 violento 21 (2)
 la visita 13 (2)
 visitare 7
 il visitatore 13
- il viso 25 (2)
 la vista 5
 visto che 20 (2)
 la vita 8
 in fin di vita 19 (3)
 la vitamina 19 (2)
 il vitello 10 (2), 24 (2)
 il vitto 29 (2)
 vitto e alloggio 29 (2)
 viva . . . ! 27 (2)
 vivere 5 (2)
 vivo 30 (2)
 farsi vivo 30 (2)
 la vocale SS
 la voce 26
 a mezza voce 26
 la voglia 13 (2)
 avere voglia 13 (2)
 voi 2 (2)
 il volante 4 (2)
 volentieri 13 (2)
 volere 4
 volere dire 4 (2)
 il volo 1 (2)
 al volo 29 (2)
 il volontario 29 (2)
 la volta 3 (2)
 per volta 11 (3)
 qualche volta 7 (2)
 la vongola 11 (2)
 vorrei 6 (2)
 vorremmo 8 (2)
 vostro 13 (2)
 Vs = Vostro 16 (2)
 il vulcano 27 (2)
- W**
 il whisky 1 (2)
- Z**
 zero 21 (2)
 la zia 10 (3)
 lo zio 5 (2)
 zitto 15 (2)
 lo zoccolo 23 (2)
 la zona 12 (2)
 lo zucchero 29 (3)
 la zuppa inglese 12 (2)